

# NEW Hello & Treasure Island

By A Group Of Supervisors

**1<sup>st</sup>**  
**Sec.**  
2025

SECOND TERM  
عام - أزهر

الصف الأول الثانوي  
الفصل الدراسي الثاني



تطبيق  
التعلم التفاعلي

Specifications for First Year Secondary (2<sup>nd</sup> Term) English Examination  
2024 - 2025

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية لمادة اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الثانوي  
الفصل الدراسي الثاني للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٤ / ٢٠٢٥

Time : Two hours and a half 2024 / 2025 30 Marks

**A Vocabulary and Structure [14 Marks]**

**1 Choose the TWO [2] correct answers out of the FIVE [5] options given :** (2 Marks)

**TWO (2)** multiple response questions based on vocabulary, with **FIVE (5)** options each are provided. Students are asked to choose the **TWO (2)** correct answers out of the **FIVE (5)** options given.

(One mark each-half a mark for each option)

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :** (12 Marks)

**TWELVE (12)** multiple choice questions, with **FOUR (4)** options each (6 vocabulary and 6 structures) are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer out of the **FOUR (4)** options given.

(One mark each)

**B Reading [7 Marks]**

**3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

An unseen text of about **200 - 220** words is provided. This may be a story, a factual text, a letter, or an e-mail. Students are asked to answer **SEVEN (7)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each.

The questions **MUST** test each of the following reading comprehension skills :

- \* giving the main idea
- \* skimming and scanning
- \* summarizing
- \* explaining events, procedures, concepts, ... etc.
- \* making inference and prediction
- \* comparing and contrast ideas, opinions, ... etc.
- \* evaluating characters, opinions, ... etc.

(One mark each)



## C Translation [4 Marks]

### 4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d : (2 Marks)

A short English text of **TWO (2)** meaningful sentences of about **10 - 12** words each, is provided. **FOUR (4)** Arabic translation options are also given. Students are asked to choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d.

### b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d : (2 Marks)

A short Arabic text of **TWO (2)** meaningful sentences of about **10 - 12** words each, is provided. **FOUR (4)** English translation options are also given. Students are asked to choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d.

## D Novel [1.5 Marks]

### 5 Answer the following questions :

Students are asked to answer **THREE (3)** open ended critical thinking questions. Their responses should be provided with reasonable justifications.

*(Half a mark each)*

## E Writing [3.5 Marks]

### 6 Write an essay of about **ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY [150]** words on the following topic :

Students are asked to write an essay of about **ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150)** words on a given topic appealing to their age, interests, likes, aspirations, etc. The title of the essay should be self-explanatory (i.e. easy to understand). No guidance is given.

**(One mark for relevance of ideas – Half a mark for choice of vocabulary – Half a mark for grammar – Half a mark for punctuation – Half a mark for spelling – Half a mark for organization)**

# CONTENTS



قاموس المعاصر  
الناطق

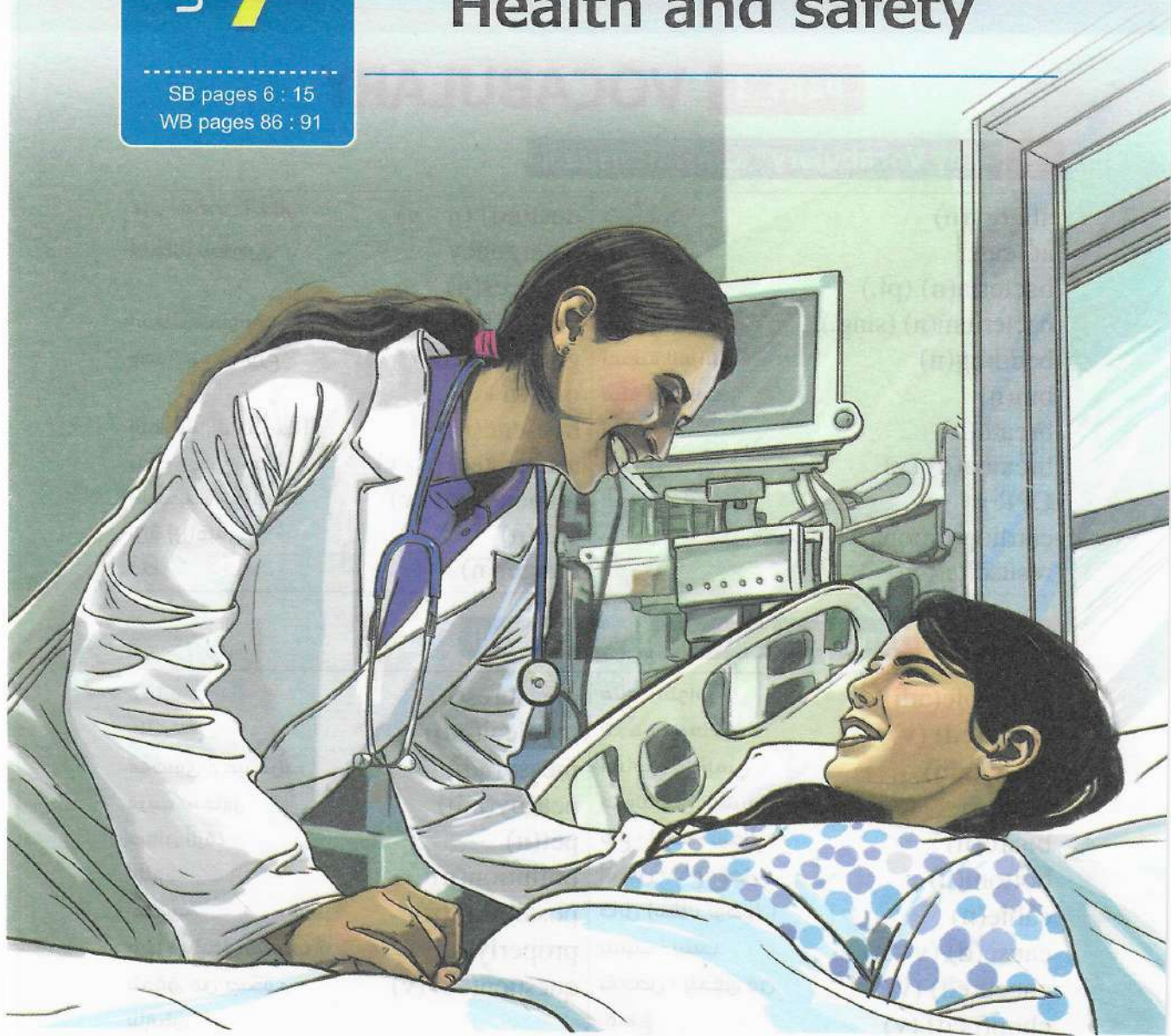
Module			page
<b>3</b>	<b>Education</b>		
UNIT	<b>7</b>	Health and safety	9
UNIT	<b>8</b>	Robots	48
UNIT	<b>9</b>	A good education	92
	<b>Revision 3</b>		134
<b>4</b>	<b>The world of work</b>		
UNIT	<b>10</b>	What's your job ?	140
UNIT	<b>11</b>	Amazing people	182
UNIT	<b>12</b>	Hard work	220
	<b>Revision 4</b>		255
	<b>Monthly assessments</b>		259
<b>STORY</b>	<b>Treasure Island</b>		265



# UNIT 7

SB pages 6 : 15  
WB pages 86 : 91

## Health and safety



**Objectives :** \_\_\_\_\_ الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

✧ **Reading** : Leaflet about hygiene around the home

✧ **Writing** : An email giving advice

✧ **Listening** : How to give first aid

✧ **Speaking** : Giving advice

✧ **Language** : Should/shouldn't, must/mustn't

✧ **Critical thinking** : Interpreting research : the importance of hygiene





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

allergy(n)	حساسية	dust(ed) (n - v)	غبار - ينفخ الغبار
at least	على الأقل	emergency	خَدَمَاتُ الطَّوَائِفِ
bacteria(n) (pl.)	بكتريا (جمع)	services(n)	
bacterium(n) (sing.)	بكتريا (مفرد)	first aid(n)	إسعافات أولية
bedding(n)	أغطية الفراش	grow - grew -	ينمو - يزداد - يزرع
bin(n)	سَلَّةُ مهملات	grown (v)	
breath(n)	النفس	hygiene(n)	النظافة (الشخصية)
breathe(d) (v)	يتنفس	research(ed) (n - v)	بَحْثٌ - يجري بَحْث
CPR =	إنعاش قلبي رئوي	respond(ed) (v)	يستجيب - يجب
cardiopulmonary		soil(n)	تربة (زراعية)
resuscitation		danger(n)	خَطَر

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

available(adj)	مُتاح - متوافر	measures(n)	معايير
avoid(ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتحاشى	medical(adj)	طبي
basic (adj)	أساسي / رئيسي	messy(adj)	فوضوي / غير مُرتَّب
blog(n)	مُدونة على الإنترنت	nearby(adj)	قريب / مجاور
board(n)	لوح - لوحة - سطح	pet(n)	حيوان أليف
bottom(n)	أسفل - قاع - نعل	pollution(n)	التلوث
cable(n)	كابل (سلك توصيل)	possibility(n)	إمكانية
cause(d) (v - n)	يسبب - سبب	properly(adv)	جيداً - بشكل مناسب
check(ed) (v)	يفحص - يتحقق من	question(ed) (v)	يتحقق من صحة - يناقش
chop(ped) (v)	يُقطّع		
cleaner (n)	مادة مُنظّفة - عامل نظافة	regularly(adv)	بانتظام
contact(ed) (n - v)	ملامسة / مخالطة - تواصل - يتواصل	remove(d) (v)	يُزيل
		replace(d) (v)	يستبدل - يحل محل
contain(ed) (v)	يحتوي علي	rule(n)	قاعدة
cough(ed) (v)	يَسْغَل - يَكُح	safety(n)	الأمان
dirt(n)	قذارة / اتساخ	scientific(adj)	علمي
disease(n)	مرض	separate (d) (adj - v)	منفصل - يفصل
DOs and DON'Ts	الأوامر والمحظورات	sneeze(d) (v)	يعطس
electrical(adj)	كهربائي	soapy(adj)	به صابون - صابوني



equipment(n)	مُجَدَّات / أجهزة	special(adj)	خاص
extra(adj)	إضافي	sponge(n)	إِسْفَنْجَة
follow(ed) (v)	يتبع - يلي - يلتزم بـ	spreading(n)	انتشار
gardening(n)	العمل في البستان	suggestion(n)	اقتراح
gloves(n)	قُفَّاز (جواني)	tissue(n)	منديل ورقي
ingredients(n)	مكونات - عناصر	topic(n)	موضوع - فكرة
interpret(ed) (v)	يُفَسِّر - يترجم	trust(ed) (v - n)	يثق بـ - الثقة
law(n)	قانون	warm(ed)(adj - v)	دافئ - يَدْفئ
leaflet(n)	كُتَيْب - نشرة	waste(d) (n - v)	فضلات - يهدر / يبدد

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>allergy(n)</b> الحساسية	a medical condition <b>حالة طبية</b> in which you become ill or in which your skin becomes red and painful <b>مؤلم</b> because you have eaten or touched a particular substance <b>مادة معينة</b>
<b>bacteria(n)</b> البكتريا	very small living things that cause diseases <b>امراض</b>
<b>bedding(n)</b> اغطية الفراش	sheets <b>ملايات</b> , covers <b>أغطية</b> etc. that you put on a bed
<b>breathe(v)</b> يتنفس	to take air in and out of your body
<b>CPR</b> الإنعاش القلبي الرئوي	= <b>Cardiopulmonary resuscitation</b> : something you do to help someone take air in and out of their body
<b>danger(n)</b> الخطر	the possibility <b>إمكانية</b> of being hurt or killed
<b>DOs and DON'Ts</b> الأوامر والمحظورات	things that you should and should not do in a particular <b>محدد</b> situation
<b>dust(n)</b> الغبار	dry powder <b>مسحوق</b> consisting of extremely small bits of dirt that is in buildings on furniture, floors etc. if they are not kept clean
<b>emergency services(n)</b> خدمات الطوارئ	basic medical help given quickly
<b>first aid(n)</b> إسعاف أولية	simple medical treatment <b>علاج</b> that is given as soon as possible to someone who is injured <b>مصاب</b> or who suddenly becomes ill
<b>hygiene(n)</b> النظافة (الشخصية)	keeping yourself and the things around you clean
<b>research(n)</b> بحث / أبحاث	a systematic process and objective investigation <b>بحث موضوعي</b> to obtain valid facts

<b>respond(v)</b>	يستجيب	to do something when someone talks to you
<b>soil(n)</b>	التربة	the top layer of the earth in which plants grow

## Exercises On Vocabulary

### • Understand

#### • Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

##### 1 Definitions

- ..... is sheets, covers etc. that you put on a bed. (السيوط - أبوتيج ٢٠٢٤)  
a. Sleeping      b. Bedding      c. Cheating      d. Covering
- ..... is a systematic process and objective investigation to obtain valid facts. (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٤)  
a. First aid      b. Tissue      c. Bacteria      d. Research
- The word "....." means the possibility of being killed or hurt.  
a. hunger      b. danger      c. anger      d. vinegar
- ..... means the things that you should and should not do in a particular situation.  
a. DOs and DON'Ts      b. Do and does  
c. Pros and cons      d. Ups and downs
- ..... is the top layer of the earth in which plants grow.  
a. The earth      b. Soil      c. Rock      d. Stone
- ..... are very small living things that cause diseases.  
a. Bacterium      b. Bacteria      c. Cells      d. Tissues
- To ..... is to take air in and out of your body.  
a. evacuate      b. take      c. breath      d. breathe
- ..... is something you do to help someone take air in and out of their body.  
a. UK      b. CPR      c. USA      d. UN
- To ..... is to do something when someone talks to you.  
a. offer      b. chop      c. contain      d. respond
- ..... is a medical condition in which you become ill or in which your skin becomes red and painful because you have eaten or touched a particular substance.  
a. Aid      b. Allergy      c. Asleep      d. Damage

##### 2 Key Vocabulary

- The ..... in our field is very fertile. It is suitable for growing vegetables. (الاسكندرية - المنتزه أول ٢٠٢٤)  
a. seal      b. sail      c. soil      d. sale
- The body often ..... to stress by becoming ill. (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. calls      b. answers      c. responds      d. asks



13. Scientists do ..... to find better medicines for diseases. (دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. burning      b. soil      c. research      d. breathing
14. One of my children has a/an ..... to cow's milk. (الشرقية - الابراهيمية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. first aid      b. hygiene      c. evacuation      d. allergy
15. For the sake of ....., we must cut our fingernails really short. (الغربية - سمود ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. hygiene      b. nonsense      c. fun      d. facility
16. It was difficult for me to ..... because of the dusty air. (أسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. hail      b. heal      c. breath      d. breathe
17. When I visited the garden after two years, the trees there had already ..... taller.  
 a. grown      b. breathed      c. responded      d. researched
18. The boys could help the injured man because they had learnt about ..... (سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. danger      b. first aid      c. hygiene      d. emergency
19. The government declared a state of ..... after the flood. (الشرقية - بلبس ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. war      b. emergency      c. horror      d. excitement
20. The table is covered in ..... It needs to be cleaned.  
 a. rocks      b. air      c. dust      d. metals
21. You should clean your kitchen floor at ..... once a week. (الشرقية - الصاحية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. last      b. first      c. past      d. least
22. It's important to change your ..... at least once a week. (أسيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. position      b. decision      c. bedding      d. opinion
23. Not all types of ..... are harmful. Some are really useful.  
 a. allergy      b. bacteria      c. bedding      d. hygiene
24. Ayman took a deep ..... then jumped into the pool. (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. breeze      b. breathe      c. breath      d. breathless
25. We do ..... to help someone take air in and out of their body. (أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. breathe      b. CPR      c. CPU      d. breeze

### 3 Important Vocabulary

26. Use a tissue when you sneeze to stop the bacteria ..... (القليوبية - الخصوص ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. complaining      b. smelling      c. spreading      d. breathing
27. The government is improving the ..... measures on all the railways. (الاسكندرية - الجُمرَك ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. threat      b. safety      c. risk      d. danger
28. We never ..... advice from people we love and respect. (البحيرة - الدلتجات ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. question      b. ask      c. give      d. cause
29. To keep healthy, we shouldn't eat food that ..... a lot of fat. (الجزيرة - منشأة الفناطر ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. consists      b. decreases      c. encloses      d. contains

30. People should check their electrical equipment..... . (الدقهلية - بني عبيد ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. luckily b. especially c. gradually d. regularly
31. I always ask my father's ..... when I have a problem. (الغربية - شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. device b. advise c. advice d. advises
32. We can't make a cake without sugar. It is an important ..... . (البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. tool b. compound c. ingredient d. factor
33. We must book in advance. There is only a limited number of tickets ..... . (القاهرة - المرج ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. possible b. avoidable c. unavailable d. available
34. I think it's a ..... of money to buy this expensive car. (الاسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. waist b. benefit c. waste d. challenge
35. Try to ..... contact with people who have infectious diseases أمراض مُعدية  
 a. avoid b. contain c. interpret d. separate
36. Hygiene reduces the ..... of being ill.  
 a. help b. link c. possibility d. suggestion
37. I believe what you say because I ..... you.  
 a. hate b. doubt c. distrust d. trust
38. Smoking ..... a lot of harm to your health.  
 a. questions b. sneezes c. causes d. removes
39. No one is allowed to shout at others in our house. It is an important family ..... .  
 a. rule b. ruler c. role d. member
40. I ..... her silence صمت as anger.  
 a. avoided b. contained c. interpreted d. separated

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

carry	bacteria	تنقل العدوى البكتيرية		a shower	يستحم
contain	bacteria	تحتوي على بكتيريا	have	bacteria	تحتوي على بكتيريا
do	CPR	يقوم بعمل الإنعاش القلبي الرئوي		an allergy to	لديه حساسية من
feel	clean	يبدو نظيفاً	keep	... clean	يحافظ علي ... نظيفاً
follow	the rules	يتبع القواعد	make	... harder	يجعل ... أكثر صعوبة
get	dirty	يتسخ	post	... online	ينشر ... على الإنترنت
	advice	ينصح	spend	time with	يقضي وقتاً مع
give	an extra clean	يقوم بعملية نظافة إضافية	stay	clean	يحافظ علي نظافته
	first aid	يقوم بعمل الإسعافات الأولية	take	air in and out	يتنفس



## 2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
available	مُتاح - متوافر
danger	الخطر
dirty	متسخ
follow	يتبع / يلتزم بـ
interpret	يُفسّر / يوضّح
messy	فوضوي / غير مُرتّب
respond	يستجيب - يتجاوب مع
respond	يجيب - يرد علي
safe	آمن
safety	الأمان
	obtainable, accessible, free
	risk, threat
	unclean, filthy
	obey, commit to, pursue, chase
	clarify, make clear, explain
	disordered, untidy, confused
	act in response to
	answer, reply to
	secure
	security

## 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
available	غير متاح - مشغول
bottom	قمة
danger	الأمان
follow	يخالف
interpret	يُحَيّر / يُربك
messy	نظيف - مُرتّب
respond	يتجاهل
	unavailable, busy, engaged
	top, peak, summit, surface
	safety, security
	break, disregard
	confuse
	clean, tidy, orderly
	ignore

## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

allergy		
allergy(n)	حساسية	- I have <b>allergy</b> to wool.
allergen(n)	مادة مُسبّبة للحساسية	- To me, wool is an <b>allergen</b> .
allergic(adj)	لديه حساسية	- I am <b>allergic</b> to wool.
bacteria		
bacteria(n)	بكتيريا	- Some <b>bacteria</b> are useful.
bacteriology(n)	علم البكتيريا	- He studies <b>bacteriology</b> .
bacterial(adj)	بكتيري	- She has a <b>bacterial</b> infection. عدوي
breathe		
breathe(v)	يتنفس	- Healthy people <b>breathe</b> normally.
breath(n)	النفس	- Healthy people have normal <b>breath</b> .
breathing(n)	التنفس	- <b>Breathing</b> provides the body with oxygen.

dust		
dust(v)	ينفض التراب	- I <b>dust</b> the windows regularly.
dust(n)	الغبار / التراب	- I remove <b>dust</b> from the windows regularly.
dusty(adj)	مُغْبَر / مُتْرِب	- The windows are <b>dusty</b> . I need to clean them.
danger		
endanger(v)	يُعَرِّض للخطر	- Never <b>endanger</b> your life.
danger(n)	الخطر	- Never put yourself in <b>danger</b> .
dangerous(adj)	خطير	- Never put yourself in <b>dangerous</b> situations.
grow		
grow(v)	يزرع	- We <b>grow</b> potatoes in this field.
grow(v)	ينمو / يترعرع	- Potatoes <b>grow</b> well in this field.
growth(n)	النمو / الزيادة	- The <b>growth</b> of potatoes in this field is good.
growing(adj)	متزايد / نام	- There's a <b>growing</b> interest in using technology for education.
respond		
respond(v)	يستجيب	- She <b>responded</b> to my email.
response(n)	استجابة	- I received her <b>response</b> to my letter.

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a home for / to	موطن لـ	No more dust!	لا مزيد من الغبار
as often as you can	كثيراً قدر المُستطاع	once a week	مرة في الأسبوع
breathe a word	يفشي سر	research into hygiene	بحث عن النظافة الشخصية
contact with pets	مخالطة الحيوانات الأليفة	do research on the same topic	يقوم بأبحاث على نفس الموضوع
full of	مملوء بـ	scientific research	البحث العلمي
in an emergency	في حالة الطوارئ		
it's most important	من المهم جداً		
stop the bacteria spreading	يمنع انتشار البكتيريا		

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

belong to	ينتمي إلي / - يخص	protect ... against / from	يحمي ... من
come back	يعود / يرجع	respond to	يستجيب لـ / يتجاوب مع
drink from	يشرب من	return from	يعود من
find about	يعرف عن	shout at	يصيح في (يزعق لـ)
go into	يدخل	take ... off	يخلع/ ينزع (ملابس / ريش/ شعر)
lie on	يستلقي علي	take off	تقلع الطائرة
live on	يعيش على - يتغذى علي	talk to	يتحدث إلي / مع
move ... away from	ينقل ... بعيداً عن	move around	يتجول في أرجاء



## 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

### allergy / sensitivity

- **allergy (n)** حساسية  
- I have an **allergy** to wool. الصوف.
- **sensitivity (n)** الحساسية (تخص أي عضو بالجسم / المشاعر)  
- Sama has **sensitivity** to milk.
- **sensitive (adj)** شخص حساس  
- A **sensitive** child would cry if you shout at them.

### bacteria / virus

- **bacteria (n)** بكتيريا (كائنات حية دقيقة منها الضار ومنها النافع)  
- This disease is caused by a type of **bacteria**.
- **viruses (n)** فيروسات (كائنات دقيقة تسبب أمراض خطيرة)  
- This disease is caused by the AIDS **virus**.

### miss / Miss / mess / messy

- **miss (ed) (v)** يفقد - يفقد / يفوته  
- I **miss** my grandmother very much. أفتقد  
- Ali **missed** the school bus. فاتته
- **Miss (n)** آنسة (لقب ل (غير) المتزوجة يوضع قبل اسم العائلة)  
- Sama received a call from **Miss** Zaki.
- **mess (n)** فوضوي - لخبطة  
- Everything is on the floor. What a **mess**!
- **messy (adj)** فوضوي - ملخبط  
- Why don't you tidy your **messy** room?

### properly / property

- **properly (adv)** بشكل صحيح - بطريقة ملائمة  
- You must do your jobs **properly**.
- **property (n)** ممتلكات - أملاك  
- The thief stole some **property**.

## Exercises On Vocabulary Study

- ★ **MRQ** : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :  
1. "I asked her what the time was, but she didn't respond." The closest meanings to 'respond' are ..... .  
(الاسكندرية - غرب الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. ask                      b. reply                      c. request  
d. question              e. answer

2. "When we returned from our holiday, the house didn't feel clean because there was ..... on all the furniture.  
a. dirt                      b. mist                      c. dust  
d. bacterium              e. dice
3. Zeina replaces kitchen sponges every two weeks because they can ..... bacteria. (أسيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. carry                      b. sneeze                      c. respond  
d. suggest                      e. contain
4. Don't ..... a word of that to anyone. It is a top-secret conversation between us. (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٤)  
a. breathe                      b. wrap                      c. hear  
d. listen                      e. say
5. My mother was always happy because I didn't leave my room ..... . (الجيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. clean                      b. untidy                      c. tidy  
d. messy                      e. comfortable
6. "The ship sank at the bottom of the sea." The antonym of the word 'bottom' is ..... . (أسيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. sanitation                      b. base                      c. top  
d. tape                      e. surface
7. "The journalist asked the minister to interpret what he means." The synonym of 'interpret' is ..... . (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. confuse                      b. clarify                      c. chew  
d. explain                      e. understand
8. As a good student, you must always ..... school rules. (الدقهلية - نبروه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. break                      b. disrespect                      c. follow  
d. obey                      e. neglect
9. I visited my friend when I knew that he ..... ill. (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. had                      b. became                      c. did  
d. looked                      e. made

• ☆ **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I can't stop sneezing because I have an ..... to your pets. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. allergy                      b. allergic                      c. alley                      d. allergens
2. I can't eat strawberries, I'm ..... to them. (الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. allergy                      b. hygienic                      c. sanitary                      d. allergic
3. They couldn't ..... because of the smoke of the fire. (القاهرة - ٦ أكتوبر ٢٠٢٣)  
a. use                      b. breeze                      c. breathe                      d. food



4. Bacteria is to "....." as "feet" to "foot". (القاهرة - التبين ٢٠٢٤)
- a. bacteria      b. bacterias      c. bacterium      d. bacterial
5. Make sure the place does not..... dirty. (الاسكندرية - الجُمُرك ٢٠٢٤)
- a. come      b. get      c. make      d. put
6. The first aid you have ..... to the injured boy has saved his life.
- a. kept      b. said      c. given      d. felt
7. This place ..... clean.
- a. keeps      b. says      c. gives      d. feels
8. "....." is to "ignore" as "argument" is to "agreement".
- a. Respond      b. Package      c. Tidy      d. Orderly
9. Smoking is ..... for your health.
- a. endangers      b. danger      c. dangerous      d. dangerously
10. Factories that cause pollution must be moved ..... cities.
- a. away from      b. away      c. into      d. in
11. They have done important research ..... how to avoid catching coronavirus.
- a. for      b. of      c. to      d. into
12. The engine of my car does not work ..... .
- a. proper      b. properly      c. property      d. a & c

### PART III

## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### Hygiene <sup>(1)</sup> at home :

#### Seven DOs and DON'Ts <sup>(2)</sup> for a healthy life

##### 1. Take your shoes off <sup>(3)</sup>

The bottoms <sup>(4)</sup> of your shoes can carry a lot of bacteria into your house. You should always take your shoes off at the door.



Lesson 2 SB page 8

- (1) النظافة الشخصية
- (2) الثوامر والمحتظورات
- (3) اخلع حدائك
- (4) أسفل - أدنى
- (5) لا مزيد من
- (6) الغبار
- (7) يُسبَّب
- (8) الجلد

##### 2. No more <sup>(5)</sup> dust <sup>(6)</sup>

Dust quickly comes back again after you've cleaned. However, dust can make it difficult to breathe and it can cause <sup>(7)</sup> skin <sup>(8)</sup> problems. You should clean your house or flat as often as you can.

### 3. Wash the kitchen floor

Food and drinks can easily fall on the kitchen floor **at least** <sup>(10)</sup> **once** <sup>(11)</sup> a week. You should use warm, **soapy water** <sup>(12)</sup> so you can **remove** <sup>(13)</sup> all the bacteria.



### 4. Change your bedding

We spend a lot of our time **asleep** <sup>(14)</sup> in bed. You should change your **bedding** <sup>(15)</sup> at least once every week so bacteria can't live in it.

### 5. Wash your hands after spending time with your pets

**Research** <sup>(16)</sup> has **shown** <sup>(17)</sup> that **contact** <sup>(18)</sup> with **pets** <sup>(19)</sup> early in life can protect you against **allergies** <sup>(20)</sup>. But animals can also carry bacteria. If you touch your pet, you shouldn't touch anything **else** <sup>(21)</sup> until you've washed your hands.

### 6. Stay clean in the garden

You should wear **gloves** <sup>(22)</sup> if you're going to touch **soil** <sup>(23)</sup> in the garden because it can **contain** <sup>(24)</sup> bacteria. You should wash your hands when you've finished **gardening** <sup>(25)</sup> too.

### 7. Don't forget to keep your bins clean

A lot of bacteria can **grow** <sup>(26)</sup> in your **bin** <sup>(27)</sup>. You shouldn't leave your bin open.

### Hygiene rules around the world

In the **UK** <sup>(28)</sup>, you must put your food **waste** <sup>(29)</sup> in a **separate** <sup>(30)</sup> bin. In Thailand, you must take your shoes off before going into someone's house.

In the USA, you should **offer** <sup>(31)</sup> to help clean up after dinner at a friend's house.

(9) الأرضية

(10) على الأقل

(11) مرة واحدة

(12) ماء بالصابون

(13) يُزال

(14) نائم

(15) أغطية الفراش

(16) البحث

(17) يُظهر

(18) ملامسة

(19) الحيوانات الأليفة

(20) الحساسية

(21) آخر

(22) قفاز (جواني)

(23) التربة

(24) يحتوي على

(25) العمل في البستان

(26) ينمو

(27) النشارة

(28) المملكة المتحدة

(29) فضلات

(30) منفصل

(31) يعرض

### How clean is your home?

Most people like to keep their homes clean, but there are many places that we don't think about and so they become full of **dirt** <sup>(1)</sup> and bacteria.



Research shows that the **deep** <sup>(2)</sup> **cuts** <sup>(3)</sup> in **chopping boards** <sup>(4)</sup> are often a home for bacteria because people don't clean them **properly** <sup>(5)</sup>.

Lesson 1 WB page 86

(1) قذارة - اتساخ

(2) عميق - غائر

(3) جروح

(4) ألواح التقطيع

(5) جيدًا - بشكل مناسب



Bacteria often move around our homes when we touch things, so phones, tablets and computer keyboards often have a lot of bacteria on them, too. **However**<sup>(6)</sup>, bacteria **really**<sup>(7)</sup> love warm, **wet**<sup>(8)</sup> places and so your kitchen **sponge**<sup>(9)</sup> probably has more bacteria than anything else in your home.

Experts say that it's most important to wash our hands **regularly**<sup>(10)</sup>. If we **touch**<sup>(11)</sup> animals, we should wash our hands, and we need to use a **tissue**<sup>(12)</sup> when we **sneeze**<sup>(13)</sup> to stop the bacteria **spreading**<sup>(14)</sup> in the air. They suggest using plastic chopping boards and giving them an **extra**<sup>(15)</sup> clean once a week. We should **replace**<sup>(16)</sup> kitchen sponges every two weeks, and we can buy **special**<sup>(17)</sup> **cleaners**<sup>(18)</sup> for phones, tablets and computers.

(6) مع ذلك

(7) حقاً

(8) مبلل - رطب

(9) إسفنجة

(10) بانتظام

(11) يلمس

(12) منديل ورقي

(13) يعطس

(14) انتشار

(15) إضافي

(16) يستبدل

(17) خاص

(18) منظفات

## 2 Listening Text

**Nurse :** Today, I'm going to tell you what to do if you find a person who is **lying on the ground**<sup>(1)</sup> and not moving. Call the **emergency services**<sup>(2)</sup> **immediately**<sup>(3)</sup>. Then you must check if there are any **dangers**<sup>(4)</sup> near to the person, like **electrical cables**<sup>(5)</sup>. If there are any dangers, move the person away from them.

When you know they're safe, shout "Hello !" or "Wake up!" and see if the person **responds**<sup>(6)</sup>. If the person doesn't respond to you, put your face next to their face so you can check their **breathing**<sup>(7)</sup>. If the person isn't breathing, the emergency services will tell you how to **do CPR**<sup>(8)</sup> so you can help the person start to breathe again.

Lesson 1 SB page 6



(1) راقد / مستلقى على الأرض

(2) خدمات الطوارئ

(3) فوراً

(4) مخاطر

(5) كابلات كهربائية

(6) يستجيب

(7) تنفس

(8) يقوم بعمل إنعاش قلبي رئوي

## PART IV LANGUAGE

should / shouldn't - must / mustn't

### 1 should / shouldn't + inf.

- ex. - You **should** work hard.  
- You **shouldn't** get up late.

١ تُستخدم لتقديم النصيحة :

٢ تُستخدم فى صيغة الاستفهام لطلب النصيحة :

- ex. - **Should** I **take** a rest after school ?  
- What **should** I **do** to get high marks ?

٣ تُستخدم لعمل اقتراحات :

- ex. - You **should travel** by plane. It's much faster.

٤ تُستخدم لإبداء الرأى الشخصي :

- ex. - She **should join** a sports club. It will help her keep fit.

٥ لاحظ بناء الجملة فى الصيغ المختلفة :

- ex. - Sama **should be** careful to pass the driving test. (إثبات)  
- Sama **shouldn't be** careless to pass the driving test. (نفي)  
- **Should** Sama **be** careful to pass the driving test ? (سؤال ب هل)  
- Why **should** Sama **be** careful ? (سؤال ب أداة استفهام)

٦ لاحظ بناء الجملة فى المبني للمجهول :

Obj. مفعول + **should / shouldn't** + **be** + **p.p.**

- ex. - You **should** revise your essay again. (معلوم)  
- Your essay **should be revised** again. (مجهول)

## 2 must / mustn't + inf.

١ تعبر عن قاعدة عامة أو نص القانون :

- ex. - Drivers **must follow** traffic rules.  
- You **mustn't smoke** in hospitals.

٢ تعبر عن ضرورة أو إلزام من داخل الشخص مع (I / We) :

- ex. - I **must go and buy** some bread before the bakery is closed.  
- We **mustn't go** out without telling our parents.

٣ تستخدم فى الدعوة القوية أو التحذير من شيء خطير (مع الأشخاص المقربين) :

- ex. - You **must come and try** mum's food. I'm sure you will like it. (دعوة)  
- You **mustn't make** friends with this bad person. (تحذير)

٤ تستخدم فى تقديم نصيحة قوية لشخص مقرب :

- ex. - You **must stop** smoking. It's destroying your health.  
- You **mustn't smoke**. It's harmful for health.

٥ لاحظ بناء الجملة فى الصيغ المختلفة :

- ex. - You **must stop** using your mobile while driving. (إثبات)  
- You **mustn't use** your mobile while driving. (نفي)  
- **Must** we **stop** using our mobile while driving ? (سؤال ب هل)  
- What **must** we **stop** doing while driving ? (سؤال ب أداة استفهام)



٦ لاحظ صيغة المبني للمجهول :

Obj. مفعول + must / mustn't + be + p.p.

- ex. - Everyone **must follow** the traffic rules. (معلوم)  
 - The traffic rules **must be followed** (by everyone). (مجهول)

### ملحظات إضافية Extra Notes

١ تستخدم ( **should have + p.p.** ) في لوم شخص على عدم فعل شيء كان ينبغي أن يفعله :  
 - I blame you for not cleaning your room.  
 = You **should have cleaned** your room.

٢ تستخدم ( **shouldn't have + p.p.** ) في لوم شخص على فعل شيء كان ينبغي ألا يفعله :  
 - I don't think it was a good idea to get up so late.  
 = You **shouldn't have got up** so late.

### ملحظات هامة Important Notes

١ طرُق أخرى لإعطاء النصيحة :

#### Something to do

- You ought to + inf. ....
- It's better to + inf. ....
- It's desirable to + inf. ....
- It's advisable to + inf. ....
- I advise you to + inf. ....
- My advice to you is to + inf. ....
- You ('d) had better + inf. ....
- It will be a good idea to + inf. ....
- It would be sensible to + inf. ....
- The best thing to do ..... is to + inf. ....
- If I were you, I'd + inf. ....
- It would be better if + ماضى بسيط

#### Something not to do

- You ought not to + inf. ....
- It's better not to + inf. ....
- It's undesirable to + inf. ....
- It's inadvisable to + inf. ....
- I advise you not to + inf. ....
- My advice to you is not to + inf. ....
- You had better not + inf. ....
- It will be a good idea not to + inf. ....
- It would be insensible to + inf. ....
- The best thing to do ..... is not to + inf. ....
- If I were you, I wouldn't + inf. ....
- It wouldn't be better if + ماضى بسيط

- You **should do** your best to pass the exam.
- = **It is advisable to do** your best to pass the exam.
- **You shouldn't eat** too much food.
- = **If I were you, I wouldn't eat** too much food.

## ٢ لاحظ الطرق المختلفة للتعبير عن الضرورة :

1 ..... مصدر **have to / has to + inf.**

- تعبر (**have to**) عن الزام خارجي مثل الالتزام بالقوانين أو القواعد فى مواقف وحالات محددة (أي لا يوجد اختيار للفرد) :
- I **have to** arrive at work at 9 sharp. My boss is very strict.
- He **has to** pass his exams or the university will not accept him.
- لاحظ أن نفي (**have / has to**) هو (**don't / doesn't have to**) :
- ليس ضرورياً أن / لست مضطراً ل. **don't / doesn't + have to + inf.**
- You **don't have to** get up early on holidays. (**Not: You haven't to**)
- He **doesn't have to** leave now. (**Not: He hasn't to**)
- لاحظ الفرق بين (**don't / doesn't have to**) و (**mustn't**) :
- You **mustn't** leave now. (غير مسموح لك أن تغادر الآن)
- You **don't have to** leave now. (لكن القرار لك)
- لاحظ أن صيغة الماضي ل (**must / has to / have to**) هي :

- **had to + inf.** (كان من الضروري أن / كان لابد أن)
- I **had to** break the door because I had lost my keys.
- Rodayna **didn't have to** do the shopping. (**Not: Rodayna hadn't to**)
- لاحظ استخدام (**need to / needs to**) للتعبير عن الضرورة :

2 ..... مصدر **need to / needs to + inf.**

- I **need to** go to bed earlier.
- He **needs to** do something about his old house.
- لاحظ أن نفي (**need / needs to**) هو :
- ليس ضرورياً أن / لست مضطراً ل. **don't / doesn't need to + inf. ...**
- **= needn't + inf. ...**
- You **don't need to** carry all these bags.
- You **needn't** carry all these bags. (**Not: needn't to carry**)
- لاحظ عدم استخدام (**to**) بعد (**needn't**) كما فى المثال السابق.
- لاحظ الفرق بين (**didn't have to**) و (**needn't have + p.p.**) :

- لم يفعل الشيء لأن ذلك لم يكن ضرورياً **... didn't have to + inf.**
- فعل الشيء ثم اتضح أن ذلك لم يكن ضرورياً **... needn't have + p.p.**
- I **didn't have to** buy cheese because we have much. (لم اشترى)
- I **needn't have** bought cheese. We have much. (اشترى)

3 ..... مصدر **It is necessary for + to + inf.** / ضمير مفعول

- It is necessary for Amir **to** arrive early.
- It is necessary for us **to** follow the rules.



4 It is a necessity (a must) for + فاعل / ضمير مفعول + to + inf. مصدر....

- It is a necessity for Amir to arrive early.
- It is a must for us to follow the rules.

٢ لاحظ الطرق المختلفة للتعبير عن المنع أو التحذير:

1 mustn't + inf. مصدر.....

- You mustn't park here.

2 (be) not allowed / It is against the law + to + inf. مصدر .....

- You aren't allowed to park here. = Parking here isn't allowed.
- = It's against the law to park here.

3 (be) not permitted to + inf. مصدر ....., = It isn't permitted to + inf.

- You aren't permitted to park here. = Parking here isn't permitted.
- = It's not permitted to park here.

4 It is banned + to + inf. مصدر ..... = (be) banned from + (inf. + ing) ...

- It is banned to park here. = You are banned from parking here.

5 It is prohibited + to + inf. مصدر.....

= (be) prohibited from + (inf. + ing) .....

- It is prohibited to park here. = You are prohibited from parking here.

6 It is forbidden / illegal + to + inf. مصدر.....

= (be) forbidden from + (inf. + ing) .....

- It is forbidden to park here. = You are forbidden from parking here.

## Exercises On Language

• Apply

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. You should ..... vegetables before you cook them. (الاسكندرية - العجمي ٢٠٢٤)
- a. wash      b. be washed      c. to wash      d. washing

2. I've already watered the plants; you ..... to do it again.

- a. needn't      b. shouldn't      c. don't need      d. mustn't (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)

3. I ..... wear a suit to work. It's the dress code in my company.

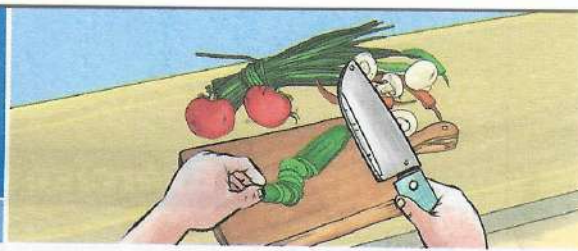
- a. must      b. should      c. have to      d. mustn't (الدقهلية - نبروه ٢٠٢٤)

4. Nada has got a message from her family. She ..... reply soon or they'll start to worry. (الدقهلية - بني عبيد ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. mustn't b. doesn't have to  
 c. needs to d. had to
5. You ..... use your phone while you're driving. It's dangerous. (الاسكندرية - غرب الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. must b. can c. mustn't d. should
6. You ..... to smoke while you are using any kind of public transport. (الغربية - شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. allowed b. didn't allow  
 c. aren't allowed d. hadn't allowed
7. You ..... buy a pen. I'll lend you one. (الاسكندرية - المنتزه ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. have b. needn't c. don't have to d. b & c
8. They ..... eat that bread. It's green and has a bad smell. (أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. should b. aren't c. must d. mustn't
9. It is illegal to break the law; we all ..... obey it. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. mustn't b. oughtn't c. must d. ought
10. Said ..... his friend yesterday. Now, it is too late. (القاهرة - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. should call b. shouldn't have called  
 c. should have called d. shouldn't call
11. He ..... at the little girl. She was so scared. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. should shout b. should have shouted  
 c. shouldn't have shouted d. ought to have shouted
12. You ..... park your car here. It's forbidden. (أسيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. mustn't b. must c. might d. should
13. At my sports club, everyone ..... wear flat shoes. It is an important rule. (أسيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. have to b. must to c. has to d. need to
14. It's a/an ..... to study hard to get high marks. (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. advice b. necessary c. must d. should
15. Adel cut his leg and ..... go to hospital for treatment. (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. should b. needs to c. had to d. has to

## 2 Check your understanding

16. I advise my brother not to eat a lot of carbohydrates. This means he ..... eat a lot of carbohydrates. (الشرقية - الابراهيمية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. would rather b. should c. ought not d. had better not
17. Cheating in exams is strictly forbidden. This means you ..... cheat in exams. (الأقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. must d. should
18. When driving, we must stop at the red light. It's a/an ..... (الدقهلية - بني عبيد ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. advice b. invitation c. law d. suggestion





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

blanket(n)	بطانية - غطاء	evacuate(d) (v)	يُخلى / يغادر (مكان)
burn - burned / burnt (v)	يحرق - يحترق	immediately(adv)	حالاً / على الفور
burn (n)	خزق	injured (adj)	مُصاب
calm(adj)	هادئ	wrap(ped) (v)	يُغلف (يلف) - يُغطّي
emergency (n)	حالة طوارئ		

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

apologise(d) (v)	يعتذر	hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي - يؤلم
argument(n)	جدال - خلاف	living thing (n)	كائن حي
back(n)	الظهر	offer(ed) (n - v)	عَرَض - يعرض
borrow(ed) (v)	يستعير / يقترض	plaster(n)	شريط لاصق
complain(ed) (v)	يشكو	pressure(d) (n - v)	ضغط - يضغط
cut (n - v)	جرح - يجرّح	realise(d) (v)	يُدرك
damage (n)	ضرر / تلف	serious(adj)	خطير - جاد
damage(d) (v)	يُضر / يتلف	smell - smelled/	يشم - يُصدر رائحة
explain(ed) (v)	يوضّح - يشرح	smelt (v)	
fire (n)	حريق - لهب	smell (n)	رائحة
fire(d) (v)	يفصل من العمل	smoke(d) (n - v)	دُخان - يُدخّن
helmet(n)	خوذة		

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
blanket(n) بطانية	a warm cover on a bed
burn(n) خزق	damage ضرر to the body caused by fire or heat
evacuate(v) يُخلى / يغادر (مكان)	- to leave a place because it is not safe - to send people from a dangerous place to a safe place
immediately(adv) حالاً / على الفور	very quickly, without waiting
wrap(v) يُغلف (يلف) - يُغطّي	to fold paper or cloth tightly around something to cover it completely.

## Exercises On Vocabulary

## • Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## 1 Definitions

- When you ..... something, you fold paper or cloth tightly round it to cover it completely. (القاهرة - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. circle      b. envelope      c. contain      d. wrap
- To ..... is to send people away from a dangerous place to a safe place. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. evaluate      b. evacuate      c. evacuation      d. evacuee
- A ..... is a warm cover on a bed.  
a. blanket      b. pillow      c. sheet      d. bedding
- A ..... is damage to the body caused by fire or heat.  
a. research      b. breath      c. fire      d. burn
- ..... means very quickly, without waiting.  
a. At least      b. Asleep      c. Immediately      d. Properly

## 2 Key Vocabulary

- The hills were covered with a thick ..... of snow. (الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. blanket      b. bank      c. blink      d. blank
- We spent the evening ..... up the Christmas presents. (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. boiling      b. wrapping      c. crossing      d. pressing
- When toxic fumes began to drift towards our homes, we were told to ..... (الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. eradicate      b. emancipate      c. evacuate      d. initiate
- A boy and another seriously ..... person were evacuated by air ambulance. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. injure      b. injured      c. injury      d. harmful
- An ambulance ..... took the injured man to the nearest hospital. (الاسكندرية - المنتزه اول ٢٠٢٤)  
a. immediately      b. sleepily      c. messily      d. dirtily
- You need sunscreen or your skin will be .....  
a. wrapped      b. complained      c. evacuated      d. burnt
- Trash ..... need to be evacuated regularly.  
a. pins      b. pans      c. bins      d. pains
- You are unnecessarily worried. Keep ..... and everything will be OK.  
a. quite      b. calm      c. immediate      d. harmful

## 3 Important Vocabulary

- I ..... how difficult it is going to be, but we must try. (الدقهلية - السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٤)  
a. recognise      b. remind      c. realise      d. memorise



15. Sara ..... that she was mistaken. So, she had to apologise. (الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. told b. recognized c. denied d. realized
16. I need a medical ..... to cover the cut. (الجيزة - أبو النمرس ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. poster b. report c. plaster d. blanket
17. It wasn't fair to ..... this hard-working secretary. (الفيوم - طامية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. damage b. fire c. offer d. smoke
18. We often see ..... in the morning, and we can't see the ground. (الأقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. sun b. mast c. mist d. moon
19. She often ..... about not feeling appreciated at work. (البحيرة - ايتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. suggests b. realizes c. complains d. concentrates
20. After the crash, there had been much ..... caused to my car. (بورسعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. damages b. injury c. damage d. hurt
21. He suffers from some pain in his .....  
 a. back b. helmet c. blanket d. emergency
22. These people need much help because the ..... has destroyed their house completely.  
 a. report b. sponge c. tissue d. fire
23. You must wear a/an ..... when riding a motorbike.  
 a. back b. helmet c. blanket d. emergency
24. "Cutting down trees causes much damage to the environment."  
 The word 'damage' here is a/an .....  
 a. verb b. adverb c. noun d. pronoun
25. The ..... you put on a child has bad effects on them.  
 a. damage b. fire c. plaster d. pressure

## PART II

## VOCABULARY STUDY

1

### Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

have	get	angry	يغضب	make	a mistake	يخطئ
		an argument with	يقع في خلاف مع		sure	يتأكد
		problems	لديه مشاكل	put	pressure on	يضغط علي
		an accident	يقع له حادث	receive	advice	يتلقى النصيحة
take		exams coming up	لديه امتحانات قريباً	say	sorry	يعتذر
		action	يتصرف	stay	calm	يحافظ بهدونه

2

### Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
argument	جدال - خلاف
calm	هادئ
cut	جرح
	disagreement, dispute, debate
	peaceful, relaxed, quiet
	injury, wound

evacuate	يُخَلِّي (مكان)	remove, move out, clear, empty, take away
leave	يغادر	quit
immediately	حالاً/على الفور	instantly, at once
remove	يزيل	clear, stop
serious	خطير	dangerous, hazardous
wrap	يُغَلِّف (يلف) - يُغَطِّي	cover, bundle up, package

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
argument	إتفاق / توافق
evacuate	يبقي/يظل
immediately	فيما بعد
serious	آمن
wrap	يكشف/يزيل الغلاف
worried	هادئ

### 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

evacuate	
evacuate (d)(v)	- We evacuated the burning house quickly.
يُجَلِّي - يُفَرِّغ	
evacuation(n)	- The evacuation of the burning house was necessary.
الإجلاء - التفريغ	
evacuee(n)	- The evacuees from the burning house are all safe.
مُجَلِّي	

### 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at / on the beach	على الشاطئ	forget about it	ينسي الأمر
at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	if possible	إذا كان ذلك ممكناً
be sorry for	يأسف علي	keep a person still	يبقي الشخص ساكناً
close to	قريب من	on fire	مُشْتَعِل

### 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

ask for	يطلب	get to	يصل إلي
come up	يَخْدُث	go out	يخرج
complain about	يشكو من	help with	يساعد في
cover ... with	يغطي ... بـ	offer to	يعرض أن
decide on	يختار / يحدد	put ... on	يضع ... علي - يرتدي
evacuate ... from	يُجَلِّي/يُفَرِّغ ... عن	think about/of	يفكر في
evacuate ... to	ينقل ... إلي	travel around	تنتشر في - يتجول في
warn about / against	يحذر من		



## Exercises On Vocabulary Study

- ★ **MRQ** : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "In case of fire, keep calm and evacuate the building quickly." The synonyms for 'evacuate' are ..... and .....  
 a. leave                      b. quit                      c. observe  
 d. ignore                      e. neglect
2. "You should be calm to deal with this problem." The word 'calm' has a similar meaning to .....  
 a. tired                      b. relaxed                      c. peaceful  
 d. excited                      e. angry  
 (القلوية - غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٤)
3. The synonyms of the verb 'realise' are ..... and .....  
 a. cover                      b. understand                      c. misunderstand  
 d. remain                      e. be aware  
 (الشرقية - مشتول السوق ٢٠٢٤)
4. "There is always an argument because of spending too much money." The synonyms of 'argument' are ..... and .....  
 a. agreement                      b. debate                      c. harmony  
 d. disagreement                      e. understanding  
 (الدقهلية - ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٤)
5. "Doctors are worried about the possible spread of the disease." The antonyms of the word "worried" are ..... and .....  
 a. anxious                      b. astonishing                      c. cautious  
 d. relaxed                      e. calm
6. The present was beautifully ..... with gold paper.  
 a. remained                      b. evacuated                      c. wrapped  
 d. confused                      e. covered
7. "Helicopters were used to evacuate people from their homes." The synonyms of the word "evacuate" are .....  
 a. clear                      b. take away                      c. fill  
 d. pack                      e. evaluate
8. "For our safety, we should cover our cuts not to be infected or polluted." The synonyms of the word "cuts" are .....  
 a. organs                      b. members                      c. wounds  
 d. remedies                      e. injuries
9. "Eiad should use soapy water to remove all the bacteria." "Remove" gives the meaning of .....  
 a. carry                      b. clear                      c. contain  
 d. stop                      e. contact

- ★ **MCQ** : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You've ..... a bad mistake, Peter.  
 a. made                      b. done                      c. thought                      d. reminded  
 (الاسكندرية - وسط الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

2. Large areas of the forest are reported to be ..... fire. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. in b. on c. for d. to
3. Stop complaining ..... everything and solve your problems. (الاسكندرية - العجوي ٢٠٢٤)  
a. as b. about c. with d. onto
4. My friend can't decide ..... his goal!  
a. in b. to c. on d. for
5. He is upset. Don't ..... more pressure on him.  
a. put b. get c. have d. make
6. He bowed his head and ....., "Sorry".  
a. kept b. said c. gave d. filled
7. The police found that the ..... of people from the area near the burning factory necessary.  
a. evacuate b. evacuation c. respond d. response
8. He is a loving father who is close ..... his children.  
a. of b. from c. with d. to
9. It is the right thing to ..... an injured person still.  
a. keep b. do c. give d. tell
10. I thanked her when she offered ..... me.  
a. helping b. to help c. for helping d. help
11. I'll call you if .....  
a. is possible b. possible c. possibly d. b & c

## PART III

## READING &amp; LISTENING

## Reading Texts

To : ..... (name)

Lesson 3 SB page 10

Subject : Advice

Dear .....,

How are you? I'm well, but I'm writing to ask for some advice. Do you remember my **neighbour**<sup>(1)</sup>, Mrs Zeinab? She had an **accident**<sup>(2)</sup> last year and now she doesn't go out much. It isn't easy for her to clean. I went to her flat yesterday and the bins were **full**<sup>(3)</sup>. The floor and kitchen were **dirty**<sup>(4)</sup>, too. She **complained**<sup>(5)</sup> about her **back**<sup>(6)</sup> hurting and I think she needs help, but I have a lot of exams **coming up**<sup>(7)</sup>. What do you think I should do?

I hope you can help me.

Best wishes,

.....

(1) جار / جارة

(2) حادث

(3) مملوء

(4) مُتسخ - غير نظيف

(5) يشكو

(6) الظهر

(7) تقترب



To : Amir  
Subject : Help !

Lesson 3 WB page 88

Hi Amir,

How are you? I hope you had a good weekend at the beach. Samy told me about the **argument**<sup>(1)</sup> you had with Hany. I think it would be a good idea to say that you are sorry for getting angry. Stay **calm**<sup>(2)</sup> and **explain**<sup>(3)</sup> that he should ask you before he borrows your things. I'm sure he will **realise**<sup>(4)</sup> that he made a **mistake**<sup>(5)</sup> and he will say sorry too. Why don't you talk to him tomorrow?

I suggest talking to him in the morning because he is usually busy on Sunday afternoons.

Now I hope you can help me with my problem. Do you remember that I was **planning**<sup>(6)</sup> to clean my house at the weekend? Well, I was busy and I forgot about it! 😞 The problem is that my parents are coming home tomorrow and the house is really dirty. There's dust **everywhere**<sup>(7)</sup> and there's a **strange**<sup>(8)</sup> **smell**<sup>(9)</sup> in the kitchen!

What should I do? Help!

Regards,

Maher

(1) جدال - خلاف

(2) هادئ

(3) يوضح - يشرح

(4) يدرك

(5) خطأ

(6) يخطط

(7) في كل مكان

(8) غريب

(9) رائحة

## PART IV

## LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

تنويه

### Exercises On Language

Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. I can give you a lift to the airport. You ..... to take a taxi. (القاهرة - المرح ٢٠٢٣)  
a. needn't      b. don't need      c. must      d. have

2. You ..... turn this music down before your dad gets angry. (البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. need      b. ought      c. had better      d. must to

3. You ..... allowed to drive at more than 110 kph on the motorway. (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)  
a. aren't      b. don't      c. haven't      d. hadn't

4. Emad cut his leg and ..... go to hospital for treatment. (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)  
a. should      b. needs to      c. had to      d. has to

5. Students ..... follow the rules of the school. (الجيزة - بولاق الدكرور ٢٠٢٣)  
a. can                      b. must                      c. may                      d. might
6. There is a "No Smoking" sign. We ..... smoke here. (اسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. shouldn't                      b. should                      c. mustn't                      d. must
7. You ..... come and try mum's food. I'm sure you will like it. (اسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. should                      b. must                      c. have to                      d. ought to
8. We ..... learn computer skills at school because they are very useful.  
a. mustn't                      b. should                      c. can't                      d. don't
9. You ..... do the shopping now. I'll do it later. (الجيزة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٣)  
a. mustn't                      b. needn't                      c. must                      d. have to
10. You ..... make noise in the library. It isn't allowed. (المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٣)  
a. needn't                      b. mustn't                      c. had better                      d. ought to
11. Vegetables should ..... before you cook them.  
a. wash                      b. be washed                      c. to wash                      d. washing
12. You must ..... your mother with the housework. She looks tired.  
a. help                      b. be helped                      c. to help                      d. helping
13. Your mother must ..... with the housework. She looks tired.  
a. help                      b. be helped                      c. to help                      d. helping
14. You ..... go to the Pyramids when you are in Giza. They're great.  
a. mustn't                      b. need                      c. should                      d. shouldn't
15. A: You ..... drink any coffee. It's not good for your weak heart.  
B: OK, doctor.  
a. mustn't                      b. shouldn't                      c. must                      d. should
16. You ..... lies, son!  
a. shouldn't telling                      b. mustn't tell                      c. should tell                      d. must tell
17. I ..... obey my parents all the time.  
a. mustn't                      b. don't have to                      c. must                      d. 'll have to be
18. To drive a car, one ..... get a licence first.  
a. mustn't                      b. must                      c. shouldn't                      d. should
19. If you are still in Egypt, you ..... attend my wedding. You are my closest friend.  
a. ought                      b. must                      c. shouldn't                      d. mustn't
20. I'm taking an early train tomorrow. I ..... drink too much coffee.  
a. should                      b. must                      c. mustn't                      d. need to

## 2

## Special cases

21. Your essay has some mistakes. It ..... again. (البحيرة - الدلتا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. should revise                      b. should have revised  
c. shouldn't be revised                      d. should be revised



22. The car ..... . You are starting to lose control. (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
- a. must be stopped      b. should not stop  
c. must to stop      d. should have stopped
23. We ..... run to the museum because it was already closed when we got there. (الفيوم - اطسا ٢٠٢٣)
- a. needn't have      b. didn't have to      c. don't have to      d. don't need to
24. It is advisable to do exercise. You ..... to follow a diet.
- a. shouldn't      b. should      c. mustn't      d. don't have
25. A: Do you think I can cycle on the pavement? B: No, you ..... .
- a. must      b. mustn't      c. should      d. aren't
26. Haven't they given you the money back yet? They ..... that last week.
- a. should have done      b. shouldn't have done  
c. should do      d. shouldn't do
27. You ..... the second project before you finished the first one completely.
- a. shouldn't start      b. should start  
c. should have started      d. shouldn't have started
28. A: I'm really tired. B: You ..... to bed earlier last night.
- a. should go      b. shouldn't go  
c. should have gone      d. shouldn't have gone
29. A: I'm often tired during the day. B: You ..... to bed earlier.
- a. should go      b. shouldn't go  
c. should have gone      d. shouldn't have gone
30. It would be ..... to go on smoking.
- a. advisable      b. better      c. sensible      d. insensible
31. My advice to you ..... friends with those bad people.
- a. is to make      b. is not to make      c. is to be made      d. is not to be made
32. I'm your boss. You ..... leave without my permission.
- a. have to      b. mustn't      c. shouldn't      d. must

### 3 Check your understanding

33. When driving, you must always stop at the red light. It is a/an ..... . (الفيوم - اطسا ٢٠٢٣)
- a. law      b. invitation      c. advice      d. suggestion
34. Which of the following structures is correct and logical?
- a. You mustn't get up late on holidays.  
b. You mustn't get up early on holidays.  
c. You haven't to get up late on holidays.  
d. You don't have to get up early on holidays.
35. "I have to wear my uniform to work." ..... .
- a. This is a personal obligation التزام      b. This is a personal necessity  
c. I have no choice      d. It is up to me



للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الاسئلة تنويه

PART I

GRAMMATICAL HINTS

١ عند استخدام كلمة (research) كاسم بمعنى (بحث / أبحاث) فهي لا تُعَدّ ولا تأخذ (s) الجمع وتُعامل معاملة المفرد:

- ex. - ..... research needed a lot of time and effort.  
a. It                      b. This                      c. These                      d. Those  
- Your research ..... very important.  
a. has                      b. have                      c. is                      d. are

٢ عند استخدام كلمة (research) كفعل بمعنى (يقوم بعمل أبحاث على) فإنها تساوي :

research (ed) (v) = do research on / into

- ex. - Professor Mustafa is researching some new medicines.  
= Professor Mustafa is doing research on / into some new medicines.

٣ كلمة (rubbish) بمعنى (قمامة) هي اسم لا يُعَدّ ولا يأخذ (s) الجمع ويُعامل معاملة المفرد :

- ex. - Rubbish ..... bacteria multiply quickly.  
a. make                      b. have made                      c. are made                      d. makes

٤ كلمة (bacteria) هي اسم جمع ويأخذ فعل جمع دائماً أما المفرد منه فهو (bacterium) :

- ex. - These bacteria ..... killed by heating.  
a. is                      b. are                      c. has been                      d. was

٥ يُستخدم الفعل (burn) بمعنى (يُحرق - يحترق / يُضئ) :

- ex. - The candle burnt for six hours.      يحترق / يُضئ  
- He burnt some old paper.      يُحرق

٦ الأسماء التي تتكون من جزئين أو طرفين مثل (trousers - gloves - shoes ...etc.) دائماً جمع وتأخذ فعل جمع :

- ex. - My shoes ..... to be polished.  
a. needs                      b. is needed                      c. has needed                      d. need

٧ الأسماء التي تتكون من جزئين أو طرفين مثل (trousers - gloves - shoes ...etc.) يمكن أن تأخذ فعل مفرد إذا سبقها كلمة (pair) :

- ex. - This pair of shoes ..... to be polished.  
a. needs                      b. is needed                      c. have needed                      d. needing

٨ لاحظ استخدام (a / an) بمعنى (كُل / في كُل / لكل) في التعبير التالي :

once / twice / three times ... + a / an + noun اسم

- ex. - I take this medicine once a week. (= every week)  
- His employer pays him five dollars an hour. (= every hour)



اسم noun + a / an + تعبيرات كمية / مسافة

ex. - He was driving at 80 kilometres an hour. (= per / every hour)

٩ كلمة (allergy) بمعنى (حساسية) تأخذ حرف الجر (to) :

ex. - I have an allergy ..... penicillin.

a. from b. to c. with d. at

١٠ يُستخدم التعبير (at least) بمعنى (على الأقل) أو (على أقل تقدير / في أسوأ الأحوال) :

ex. - I drink at least two litres of water a day. علي الأقل

- I may not be able to visit you, but at least I will call you. في أسوأ الأحوال

١١ البادئة (en) تحول الاسم (danger) إلى فعل بمعنى (يُعرض للخطر) بينما الناهية (ous) تحول (danger) إلى صفة بمعنى (خطير) :

danger(n)	الخطر
endanger(v)	يُعرض للخطر
dangerous(adj)	خطير

ex. - A careless driver puts passengers' lives in danger.

- A careless driver endangers passengers' lives.

- A careless driver is dangerous for passengers' lives.

١٢ الفعل (grow) بمعنى (يزرع) فعل متعدي (أي أنه يحتاج مفعول)، لكن بمعنى (يصبح / ينمو) فهو فعل لازم :

ex. - Farmers in this area grow cotton and sugar cane. يزرع

- The tree grew tall. نمت

١٣ تُستخدم (else) بمعنى (آخر) بعد الكلمات التالية :

- someone - anyone - everyone - no one  
- somebody - anybody - everybody - nobody  
- something - anything - everything - nothing  
- somewhere - anywhere - everywhere - nowhere

ex. - I don't want to go to the park. I want to go somewhere else.

- Did you say anything else at the meeting ?

١٤ تُستخدم (else) بمعنى (أيضاً) بعد أدوات الاستفهام مثل (What - Where - Who...) :

ex. - Who else called me?

- What else have you eaten?

١٥ لاحظ التعبير التالي :

... make it + adj. صفة + to + inf. ... يجعل من ال ... أن

ex. - Too much smoke makes it harder to breathe.

- Studying hard makes it easy to pass an exam.

١٦ لاحظ كيفية استخدام الفعل (spend) بمعنى (ينفق مال):

spend money on + n. / (inf. + ing)

- ex.** - She spent a lot of money **on new clothes**.  
- She spent a lot of money **on buying** new clothes.

١٧ ولاحظ كيفية استخدام الفعل (spend) بمعنى (يقضي وقت) :

**spend time** + (inf. + ing) / adj.

- ex.** - Ahmed spent two weeks **revising** physics.  
- Sama spent five hours **asleep** in her bed.

١٨ لاحظ أن :

- ex. - It's a waste of time / money + (inf. + ing) ..... المال / الوقت مضيعة  
- It's a waste of money buying this expensive car.

١٩ لاحظ التعبير التالي : ... صفة **adj.** + مفعول **obj.** + فعل **verb** ...

- ex.** - She **left** the door open.  
- Mum always **keeps** the kitchen floor clean.

٢٠ لاحظ كيفية استخدام الفعل (stop) بمعنى (يمنع / يوقف):

stop + obj. مفعول + from + (inf. + ing) = stop + obj. + (inf. + ing)

- ex.** - Cleaning kitchens stops bacteria from spreading.  
- Cleaning kitchens stops bacteria spreading.

٢٦ كلمة (soil) تعني (التربة) وتعني أيضاً (الوضع أو البيئة المناسبة لانتشار / لنمو شيء ما):

- ex. - Plants grow well in fertile **soil** تربة خصبة.  
- Ignorance and poverty الجهل والفقر provide fertile **soil** بيئة للإرهاب for terrorism.

## Exercise On Language Hints

☛ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This team ..... a new vaccine مصل to COVID-19.  
a. researches                      b. does research into  
c. searches                        d. a & b
2. I was driving at a speed of 60 km ..... hour.  
a. a                                  b. an                                  c. all                                  d. of
3. My son has a severe allergy ..... woolen blankets.  
a. by                                b. off                                c. to                                d. a & c
4. Perhaps I won't be able to return all your money tomorrow, but at ..... I will pay back half of it.  
a. less                              b. least                              c. list                              d. last
5. People who lived with COVID- 19 patients were really ..... .  
a. dangers                        b. dangerously                        c. endangered                        d. a & c



6. "My cousin Ali has grown tall." The verb 'grown' in this sentence means ..... .  
 a. increased in height                      b. planted  
 c. shrank                                      d. lengthened
7. I don't want coffee. I'd like to have something ..... .  
 a. else                      b. also                      c. too                      d. as well
8. Your objection to the plan made it difficult for me ..... it.  
 a. accept                      b. accepted                      c. accepting                      d. to accept
9. Close the window before going to bed. Don't leave it ..... .  
 a. open                      b. opens                      c. opening                      d. to open
10. We stopped him ..... at her again.  
 a. shouting                      b. from shouting                      c. a & b                      d. to shout
11. We spent a lot of money ..... our new house.  
 a. are decorating                      b. to decorate                      c. on decorating                      d. b & c
12. We spent three months ..... our new house.  
 a. decorating                      b. to decorate                      c. on decorating                      d. b & c

## PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (البجيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)

Do you skip breakfast? Millions of people do, and if you are one of them, you are putting your ability to think and learn in danger. Skipping breakfast can cause you to be hungry, and tired, by the middle of the morning. Why is that? First, when you wake up, you have not eaten for about eight hours. Your body's fuel, called glucose, is low. Eating breakfast raises the level of glucose in your brain. Your brain requires an endless flow of glucose to do mental work.

Our body can bear not to eat during the night thanks to the energy it keeps in the **liver** and in the muscles. However, this energy is limited. It runs out after about 8 hours in children and up to 12 hours after the last meal in adults. After this period of fasting, the body needs other energy to perform all its functions.

So, eating breakfast will give you more energy when you are at school. What if you don't have enough time for breakfast or if you are not hungry when you wake up? Having something for breakfast is better than nothing. Drink some milk or juice. Then catch a nutritious snack later on in the morning.

Yoghurt, cheese, and fruit are good choices. What if you don't like breakfast foods? Then eat healthy foods you do like. Even cold pizza can provide you with power. Therefore, there's no reason to skip this essential meal.

1. Your brain requires a ..... supply of glucose to do its function.  
a. limited      b. partial      c. gradual      d. continuous
2. The underlined pronoun "its" refers to the .....  
a. energy      b. period      c. body      d. adults
3. We can infer from the passage that the 'liver' is a .....  
a. meal      b. part of the body  
c. kind of food      d. problem
4. What does eating breakfast do to your brain?  
a. It makes you think better.      b. It makes you sleep well.  
c. It decreases your energy.      d. It makes your brain lazy.
5. If you don't have time for breakfast, you should .....  
a. skip it and wait for lunch  
b. eat lunch and dinner twice  
c. make a sandwich to eat at school  
d. have a drink at home and then a snack at school
6. The aim of this text is to tell people about .....  
a. why we should skip breakfast  
b. people's breakfast habits  
c. encouraging people to eat glucose  
d. the benefits of having breakfast
7. According to the passage, breakfast .....  
a. can be skipped to control the body weight  
b. increases the sense of hunger all day  
c. helps the body perform all its functions  
d. isn't useful for the function of the liver

## 2 كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني Email Writing

كتابة مجموعة من التعليمات بغرض إعطاء النصيحة المتعلقة بالصحة:

- |                                                 |                                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ١ كتابة العنوان                                 | ٢ ا طرح الموضوع أو الفكرة الرئيسية                                          |
| ٣ اختر حوالى ستة أفكار عن الموضوع               | ٤ رتب الأفكار حسب الأهمية                                                   |
| ٥ عبر عن الأفكار ببساطة ووضوح                   | ٦ اختر بعض صيغ إعطاء النصح أو الأمر مثل:                                    |
| ٧ اختر بعض الصيغ الترتيبية (كلمات التسلسل) مثل: | - ... should / shouldn't, must/mustn't ... / (Drive / Don't drive ... etc). |
|                                                 | - First of all, Next, Thirdly .....                                         |



## Model email

✪ Write an email of about 150 words on “How to keep healthy” :

**From :** (Sender's email address)

**To :** (recipient email address .....)

**Subject :** How to keep healthy

**Dear** .....,

Have you ever imagined يتخيل how it is like being unhealthy or unfit? You have surely seen someone suffer because of health problems. Health is a treasure that only patients appreciate يُقدّر its value قيمة. No one can be happy in their lives unless they enjoy good health. If you want to keep healthy, you need to eat good food, do exercise and get enough sleep.

The food you eat plays an important role in keeping you healthy. You need to eat the right quantities. It is necessary to have balance توازن in your meals. You should eat proteins, carbohydrates and fats. Fruit and vegetables are necessary to give you the vitamins you need. It is inadvisable to eat more than enough. Following a diet is very important.

Exercise is not less important than good food in keeping you healthy and fit. It helps you get rid of التخلص من the fats you don't need. It keeps your body flexible and lively. You don't need to do violent عنيف exercise. You can just go for a walk for half an hour every day.

Sleep is also very necessary. Your body needs about eight hours of sleep every day. This helps the body to refresh its energy. One can't go on يستمر في work without having enough sleep.

Finally, health is a crown تاج on the heads of healthy people that only patients can see. One should do their best to have good health.

**Best wishes,**

.....

### 3 Writing

✪ Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words to your friend ismail@exam.com on the following topic:

*"How to keep hygiene at home"*

Your email is nour1976@elmoaser.com

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 4 Translation الترجمة

## ● A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Vitamins are very necessary for good health. It is known that lack of vitamins may cause serious diseases. Foods that contain vitamins are called protective foods.

(البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)

- a. إن الفيتامينات ضرورية جداً من أجل صحة جيدة، ومن المعروف أن نقصها قد يسبب أمراضاً خطيرة، والأطعمة التي تحتوي على فيتامينات تسمى بالأطعمة الوقائية.
- b. إن الفيتامينات ضرورية جداً للحصول على صحة جيدة، ومن المعروف أن زيادتها قد يسبب أمراضاً خطيرة، والأطعمة التي تحتوي على فيتامينات تسمى بالأطعمة الوقائية.
- c. إن الفيتامينات ضرورية جداً من أجل صحة جيدة، ومن المعروف أن نقصها قد يسبب أمراضاً معدية، والأطعمة التي تحتوي على فيتامينات تسمى بالأطعمة الوقائية.
- d. إن الفيتامينات ضرورية جداً من أجل صحة جيدة، ومن المعروف أن نقصها قد يسبب أمراضاً خطيرة، والأطعمة التي تحتوي على فيتامينات تسمى بالأطعمة بنائية.

2. Education is essential for students of different ages all over the world. It is the process of obtaining knowledge, values, skills and positive habits.

(الاسماعيلية - التل الكبير ٢٠٢٤)

- a. إن التعليم ضروري للطلاب من مختلف الأعمار في جميع أنحاء العالم، فهو عملية اكتساب المعرفة والقيم والمهارات والعادات الإيجابية.
- b. إن التعليم ضروري للطلاب من نفس الأعمار في جميع أنحاء العالم، فهو عملية اكتساب المعرفة والقيم والمهارات والعادات الإيجابية.
- c. إن التعليم ضروري للطلاب من مختلف الأعمار في جميع أنحاء العالم، فهو عملية تحقيق المعرفة والقيم والمهارات والعادات الإيجابية.
- d. إن التعليم ضروري للطلاب من مختلف الأعمار في جميع أنحاء العالم، فهو عملية إكساب المعرفة والقيم والمهارات والعادات الإيجابية.

## ● B. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

١. يعتقد البعض أن حظر التدخين في الأماكن العامة يقلل من وجوده بالتدريج، بينما يقول آخرون أن هذا لا يكفي وأن هناك حاجة إلى تدابير أخرى.

- a. Some believe that banning smoking in public places reduces its presence gradually. Others say that this is not enough and that other measures are needed.
- b. Some believe that not banning smoking in public places reduces its presence regularly. Others say that this is enough and that other measures are needed.
- c. Some believe that not banning smoking in public places reduces its presence gradually. Others say that this is enough and that no other measures are needed.
- d. Some believe that legalizing smoking in private places reduces its presence gradually. Others say that this is not enough and that other measures are needed.



٢. تُعتَبر ممارسة الرياضة واحدة من أهم العوامل للوقاية من الأمراض والحفاظ على لياقتنا الذهنية والجسدية.  
(الجيزة - كراسة ٢٠٢٤)

- Exercising is regarded as one of the most important factors in preventing diseases and maintaining our mental and physical fitness.
- Exercising is regarded as one of the most important factors in preventing diseases and maintaining our mental and physical fitness.
- Exercising is regarded as one of the least important factors in preventing diseases and maintaining our mental and physical fitness.
- Exercising is regarded as one of the most important factories in preventing diseases and maintaining our mental and physical fitness.

## PART III

## JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

للفائقين فقط

### evacuate

- evacuate (d) (v)** يُخلى السكان من مكان - يُخلى الناس  
- Thousands of people were **evacuated** from their homes because of the floods الفيضان.
- evacuate ... from** يُخلى ... من  
- The government **evacuated** the poor families **from** their old houses to protect them.
- evacuate ... to** يُخلى ... إلى  
- The government **evacuated** the poor families **to** new houses.
- evacuation (n)** إجلاء - إخلاء المكان  
- The **evacuation** of the people from the burning house was not easy.

### respond

- respond (ed) (to / with / by) = react (ed) (v)** يستجيب (ل) - يتجاوب (مع)  
- The government **responded** to the problem by building new roads.
- respond (to / that) (v)** يجيب (علي) - يرد (علي)  
- Give me five minutes to **respond** to the email.
- respond (to) (v)** يتحسن (نتيجة ل) -  
- He **responded** well to the treatment علاج in this hospital.
- response (to) (n)** استجابة (ل) - رد (علي)  
- The manager's **response** to my suggestion was encouraging مُشجّع.  
- I am waiting for your **response** to my offer.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- a positive response رد إيجابي - استحسن - a negative response رد سلبي
- get / receive a response يتلقى رد - يلقي استجابة
- in response to ردأ علي - استجابة ل
- responsive (to) (adj)** غير مستجيب ل - مُستجيب ل - متجاوب مع
- My headache was **responsive** to this medicine.

## wrap

## • wrap (ped) (v)

يُغَطِّي - يُغَلِّف - يحيط بـ - يُدَثِّر

- Rodayna **wrapped** the present in colourful paper.
- He **wrapped** a bandage **ضمادة** around his injured arm.

## • wrap / wrapper / wrapping (n)

غِطَاء - إِزَار - ورق أو بلاستيك تغليف

- Remove the **wrap / wrapper / wrapping** of the present carefully.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- **keep something under wraps** يُبْقِي ... سِرًّا
- He **kept his illness under wraps** because he didn't want his family to be sad.
- **take the wraps off something** يُفْشِي سِرًّا
- He **took the wraps off his new invention** and it was published in all newspapers.

## Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

## • ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Which of the following is correct?
 

a. I saw an asleep person.	b. I saw some asleep people.
c. I saw some asleep persons.	d. I saw some people asleep.
- They're doing ..... into the causes of swine flu **انفلونزا الخنازير**.
 

a. a research	b. research	c. researches	d. searching
---------------	-------------	---------------	--------------
- Bacteria is to ..... as feet is to foot.
 

a. bacteria	b. bacterias	c. bacterium	d. bacterial
-------------	--------------	--------------	--------------
- Walking for half an hour every morning is good exercise to ..... calories **السعرات الحرارية**.
 

a. make	b. burn	c. gain	d. increase
---------	---------	---------	-------------
- Strong ..... must be kept away from children.
 

a. diseases	b. attractions	c. cleaners	d. infections
-------------	----------------	-------------	---------------

## Advanced Exercise on Language

## ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- ..... to smoke in a petrol station.
 

a. You shouldn't	b. It is a must	c. You are banned	d. It is banned
------------------	-----------------	-------------------	-----------------
- I ..... using my mobile at home.
 

a. am forbidden from	b. am banned
c. am allowed to	d. am prohibited
- It is a ..... to get a doctor at once.
 

a. necessary	b. a necessity	c. must	d. should
--------------	----------------	---------	-----------
- He ..... at 10, but he was almost half an hour late.
 

a. should arrive	b. didn't arrive
c. should have arrived	d. shouldn't arrive
- All the reports ..... before the end of last September.
 

a. should have written	b. should have been written
c. should write	d. shouldn't write



# Test on Unit 7

● Understand

● Apply

● Create

تنويه

التقييمات  
الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار إلكتروني

## 1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. Your room is messy. It is not ..... . (الاسكندرية - الجُمُرك ٢٠٢٤)  
a. clean                      b. former                      c. needy  
d. tidy                        e. untidy
2. "The air we breathe is polluted." The synonyms of the word 'breathe' are ..... and ..... . (البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٤)  
a. separate                  b. inhale                      c. exhale  
d. take in                    e. smoke

## 2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Celebrities don't often ..... to fans emails. (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)  
a. receive                    b. respond                    c. answer                    d. sent
2. I don't have a/an ..... to chocolate; I can eat it. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. energy                    b. allergy                    c. power                    d. relief
3. We can prevent a lot of skin diseases by following good ..... . (البحيرة - الدلتا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. allergy                    b. clearance                    c. hygiene                    d. blog
4. During the examination, the doctor told me to ..... in deeply and then exhale. (الغربية - سفنود ٢٠٢٤)  
a. check                    b. take                    c. breathe                    d. grow
5. When his breathing stopped, the doctor did him ..... to make him breathe again. (الشرقية - بلبيس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. CRP                    b. GPS                    c. CPR                    d. CBC
6. Doctors ask patients to take a deep ..... while being examined.  
a. breeze                    b. breathe                    c. breath                    d. breathless
7. You ..... try this cake. It's really delicious. (الجيزة - كرداسة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. mustn't                    b. don't have to                    c. must                    d. had to
8. You look tired, John. I think you ..... a few days off.  
a. mustn't take                    b. must be taken                    c. shouldn't take                    d. should take
9. You ..... clean the windows. I've already cleaned them. (الجيزة - أبو النمرس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. need to                    b. should                    c. needn't                    d. have to
10. You ..... allowed to drive at more than 110 km/h on this motorway.  
a. hadn't                    b. don't                    c. haven't                    d. aren't
11. Why did you take a taxi? You were early enough. You ..... that.  
a. didn't have to do                    b. had to do  
c. needn't have done                    d. have to do
12. It is a/an ..... to sleep early to get up early. (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. necessary                    b. must                    c. advisable                    d. unnecessary



• 3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (البديرة - الممودية ٢٠٢٤)

Octopuses are extremely intelligent. They have even learnt a few tricks to get them out of sticky situations. For example, they are afraid of a predator. As octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves, they hide in the sand on the bottom of the ocean floor. The octopus is like a chameleon because it can change the colour of its skin to match the sand.

Some octopuses like to stay in more shallow water where there are rocks and coral. However, octopuses can squeeze themselves into small spaces between the rocks to get out of reach of predators. Another way an octopus can use to hide is by shooting ink. An octopus uses a part of its body called a siphon to shoot ink into the water. The ink forms a cloud that hides the octopus. It's like a magician doing a vanishing act.

If an octopus is being attacked, it can actually make itself look like a venomous sea snake. It will bury itself in the sand, keeping two arms visible. If an octopus is in trouble, it can break off one of its arms. The arm will then change colours and squirm around the water to distract the predator while the octopus swims away to safety. Amazingly, the octopus's arm will grow back.

1. A ..... is an animal that attacks and kills octopuses.  
a. prey                      b. predator                      c. chameleon                      d. magician
2. When an octopus is in a sticky situation, that means it's .....  
a. easy                      b. in danger  
c. covered in stick                      d. unable to move
3. The octopus and the chameleon are similar as both .....  
a. swim in the same way                      b. eat the same food  
c. catch small fish                      d. can change their skin colour
4. The octopus can separate one of its arms to .....  
a. distract the predator                      b. renew it  
c. catch a prey                      d. lay eggs
5. The octopus can shoot ink into the water which .....  
a. kills the attackers                      b. helps it hide from the attackers  
c. attracts preys                      d. pollutes the water
6. Octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves .....  
a. so, they are eating easily when attacking predators  
b. moreover, they are not brave  
c. that's why they are about to extinct  
d. however, they have other ways to keep enemies away



7. The best title for this passage is “.....” .

- a. The Magician Octopuses                      b. The Sea World and the Predator
- c. The Seabed                                      d. The Sea Ink

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

It is essential for us to follow the rules of hygiene to protect ourselves from many kinds of infectious diseases.

(البحيرة - الدلتجات ٢٠٢٤)

- a. من الضروري لنا أن نتبع قواعد النظافة العامة لنحمي أنفسنا من كل أنواع الأمراض المعدية.
- b. من الضروري لنا أن نتبع قواعد النظافة البيئية لنحمي أنفسنا من بعض أنواع الأمراض المعدية.
- c. من الضروري لنا أن نتبع قواعد النظافة الشخصية لنحمي أنفسنا من أنواع عديدة من الأمراض المعدية.
- d. من الضروري لنا أن نتبع قواعد النظافة الشخصية لنحمي أنفسنا من أنواع معدية من الأمراض العديدة.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

(أسيوط - القوسية ٢٠٢٤)

يمكن للغبار أن يجعل التنفس صعباً، لذا عليك بتنظيف بيتك قدر استطاعتك.

- a. Dust can make it difficult to breath, so you should clean your house as often as you can.
- b. Dust can make it difficult to breathe, so you should clean your house as often as you can.
- c. Dust can make it difficult to breathe, so you should clear your house as often as you can.
- d. Dust can make it difficult at breathe, so you should clean your house as often as you can.

5. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Ben Gun refused to enter the fort with Jim ?

.....

2. Doctor Livesey proved to be generous. Show how.

(أسيوط - القوسية ٢٠٢٤)

.....

3. What do you think of Silver as a negotiator ?

.....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

(أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

*“What hygiene DOs and DON'Ts we should follow for a healthy life”*

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....



# UNIT 8

SB pages 16 : 25

WB pages 92 : 97

## Robots

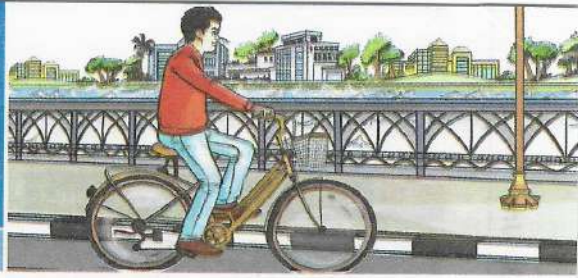


**Objectives :** \_\_\_\_\_ الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- ★ **Reading** : Online posts about the advantages of new technology
- ★ **Writing** : An essay about the advantages and disadvantages of having technology in the house
- ★ **Listening** : Discussion on how technology can improve learning

- ★ **Speaking** : Discussing consequences
- ★ **Language** : Zero, first and second conditionals
- ★ **Critical thinking** :  
Is technology always good?
- ★ **Respect for diversity** :  
People have different views related to technology





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

benefit(ed) (n-v)	فائدة - يستفيد	hybrid(adj)	هجين
click(ed) (v-n)	ينقر - نفرة (على الماوس)	hybrid vehicle	سيارة هجينة (ذات مصدرين للطاقة)
click (n)	صوت طقطقة	invent(ed)(n)	يخترع - يخلق
familiar(adj)	مشهور - مألوف - علي علم بـ	invention(n)	اختراع
find out (phr. v)	يكتشف - يعرف	navigate(d)(v)	يُوجّه - يُبحر - يقود
get around (phr. v)	يسافر - يتجول - ينتشر	robot(n)	إنسان آلي
go out (phr. v)	يخرج - يقابل بالخارج	the internet(n)	شبكة المعلومات الدولية
GPS = Global Positioning System	نظام تحديد المواقع الدولي	vehicle(n)	مركبة - وسيط / وسيلة

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

abroad(adv)	خارج البلاد	fortunately(adv)	لحسن الحظ
air-conditioning(n)	(نظام) تكييف الهواء	global(adj)	عالمي
annoying(adj)	مزعج	lead - led - led(v)	يؤدي إلي - يقود
blog(ged) (v-n)	يُدوّن - مَدَوْنَة	luxurious(adj)	فخم - فاخر
button(n)	زرّ	luxury(n)	الرفاهية
charge(d) (v)	يشحن	position(ed)(n-v)	موقع - مكانة - يحدد موقع
communicate(d) (v)	يتواصل - يتصل	positioning(n)	تحديد المكان
concentrate(d) (v)	يركّز	post(ed) (n-v)	منشور (على الإنترنت) - ينشر
consequences(n)	نتائج - توابع	project(n)	مشروع - بحث
direction(n)	اتجاه - ارشاد	result(n)	نتيجة
distance(n)	مسافة	shopping list(n)	قائمة التسوق
electric(adj)	كهربائي - يعمل بالكهرباء	smart(adj)	ذكي
electricity(n)	الكهرباء	statement(n)	بيان
engine(n)	مُحرّك	terrible(adj)	فظيع
exactly(adv)	بدقة - بالضبط	useful(adj)	مفيد
fail(ed)(v)	يفشّل - يرسّب	waste(d) (v)	يُسرف - يبدد
feel like (phr. v)	يشعر وكأنه - يرغب في	wheel (n)	إطار (سيارة/دراجة ...)

## 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>click(ed)(v)</b> ينقر (على الماوس)	to press <b>ا يضغط</b> a button <b>زر</b> on a computer mouse to choose something from the screen that you want the computer to do
<b>familiar(adj)</b> معروف	well-known <b>مشهور</b> to you and easy to recognize <b>يتعرف علي</b>
<b>find out(phr.v)</b> يكتشف - يعرف	to learn something that you didn't know before
<b>get around(phr.v)</b> يسافر - يتجول	to travel from place to place
<b>go out(phr.v)</b> يخرج مع ضُحبه	to leave your home to do something fun with other people
<b>internet(n)</b> شبكة الإنترنت	a network of computer systems that allows users all over the world to exchange information
<b>invention(n)</b> اختراع	a useful machine, tool, instrument <b>جهاز</b> , etc. that has been invented
<b>navigate(d) (v)</b> يحدد اتجاهه	to find which way you need to go when you are travelling from one place to another
<b>vehicle(n)</b> مركبة	a machine <b>آلة</b> with an engine <b>مُحرِّك</b> that is used to take people or things from one place to another, such as a car, bus, or truck
<b>hybrid vehicle</b> سيارة هجينة	a vehicle with an engine that uses both petrol and electricity

## Exercises On Vocabulary

## • Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

## 1 Definitions

- A ..... car is a vehicle with an engine that uses both petrol and electricity.  
(الجيزة - كرداسة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. hypersensitive    b. plant    c. mixed    d. hybrid
- To ..... is to travel from place to place.  
(البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)  
a. find out    b. go out    c. get around    d. feel like
- The ..... is a network of computer systems that allows users all over the world to exchange information.  
a. website    b. blog  
c. internet    d. mobile computer



4. To ..... is to press a button on a computer mouse to choose something from the screen that you want the computer to do.  
a. benefit      b. invent      c. click      d. translate
5. .... means well-known to you and easy to recognize.  
a. Familiar      b. Clear      c. Stressful      d. Technological
6. To ..... is to leave your home to do something fun with other people.  
a. find out      b. get around      c. go out      d. feel like
7. A/An ..... is a useful machine, tool, instrument, etc. that has been invented.  
a. vehicle      b. invention      c. quiz      d. invitation
8. To ..... is to find which way you need to go when you are travelling from one place to another.  
a. brainstorm      b. find out      c. notice      d. navigate
9. To ..... is to learn something that you didn't know before.  
a. find out      b. get around      c. go out      d. feel like

## 2 Key Vocabulary

10. ...., which stands for Global Positioning System, is a radio navigation system. (أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. GTS      b. GVS      c. GPS      d. NGS
11. GPS is short for Global ..... System. (الإسكندرية - شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. Population      b. Positioning      c. Press      d. Philosophy
12. The city roads are always noisy for being full of all kinds of ..... roaring all the time. (أسيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. planes      b. vehicles      c. ships      d. animals
13. Plants and animals produced by modifying genes with other types are called ..... (الدقهلية - أجا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. mix      b. hybrid      c. vehicle      d. scientific
14. One of the many ..... of travelling abroad is learning how to cope with everyone. (الغربية - سمند ٢٠٢٤)  
a. inventions      b. navigations      c. benefits      d. controls
15. It's nice to see a ..... face. I was afraid I wouldn't know anyone here. (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. regular      b. familiar      c. similar      d. general
16. My dad uses ..... if he doesn't know which road to take. (الإسكندرية - غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. vehicle      b. app      c. translation      d. GPS
17. If you want to watch the new film, just ..... on this link. (شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. click      b. visit      c. stick      d. tick
18. Do you agree that the internet is the greatest .....? (الإسكندرية - الجمر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. exploration      b. invention      c. invitation      d. recovery
19. The ..... has made instant communication and online marketing possible.  
a. invention      b. navigation      c. internet      d. GPS

20. We went ..... for a walk then we went to a restaurant. (الاسماعيلية - التل الكبير ٢٠٢٤)  
a. out                      b. in                      c. on                      d. with
21. News soon got ..... that he had resigned. (الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. over                      b. off                      c. around                      d. down
22. GPS is used for ..... (الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. application                      b. evaluation  
c. navigation                      d. accommodation
23. Salma was very angry when she ..... that I had eaten her chocolate. (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)  
a. found out                      b. went out                      c. led to                      d. got around
24. Currently, ..... can move and do jobs that humans used to do. (بورسعيد - جنوب بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤)  
a. machinery                      b. wheels                      c. vehicles                      d. robots
25. Early explorers used to ..... their way using the stars. (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. navigate                      b. evacuate                      c. look                      d. click
26. Your answers should be ..... to succeed. (السيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. click                      b. clearly                      c. clear                      d. keen

### 3 Important Vocabulary

27. His low mark in the last exam was the ..... of his carelessness. (الشرقية - الصالحية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. cause                      b. result                      c. reason                      d. affection
28. Many people can't afford ..... life such as music lessons and fun tours. (الدقهلية - السنبلوين ٢٠٢٤)  
a. basic                      b. potential                      c. familiar                      d. luxurious
29. The ..... of your bad deeds will affect your future. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)  
a. causes                      b. sequences                      c. consequences                      d. efforts
30. Most young people dream of travelling ..... to make money. (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. aboard                      b. a board                      c. abroad                      d. broad
31. To operate this machine, just press this ..... (القاهرة - التبين ٢٠٢٣)  
a. desk                      b. button                      c. patron                      d. bitty
32. I'm happy with my friend's positive ..... on my project. (الجيرة - بولاق الدكرور ٢٠٢٣)  
a. comments                      b. offers                      c. collections                      d. links
33. GPS helped the police ..... the stolen car.  
a. charge                      b. concentrate                      c. locate                      d. waste
34. Can you ..... this letter for me on your way home?  
a. network                      b. attach                      c. spend                      d. post
35. Healthy food, doing sport and getting enough sleep ..... to enjoying good health.  
a. cause                      b. improve                      c. lead                      d. appear



36. The minister is making a ..... on the exam system tomorrow.  
a. statement      b. consequence      c. button      d. luxury
37. A quiet place helps you ..... on your study.  
a. charge      b. concentrate      c. position      d. waste
38. Make sure you have ..... your tablet before an electronic exam.  
a. charged      b. concentrated      c. positioned      d. wasted
39. Being the son of a wealthy businessman, he enjoyed a life of .....  
a. statement      b. consequence      c. button      d. luxury

## PART II

## VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

<b>cause</b>	a problem	يسبب مشكلة	<b>discuss</b>	consequences	يناقش النتائج
<b>do</b>	exercise	يقوم بتمرينات	<b>give</b>	opinions about / on / of	يعبر عن رأيه في
	... faster	يقوم بـ ... بشكل أسرع		directions	يعطي الاتجاهات
	things	يقوم بأشياء	<b>go</b>	online	يدخل على الانترنت
<b>drive</b>	an engine	يشغل محرك		long distances	يسافر / ينطلق لمسافات طويلة
<b>get</b>	an answer to	يجد إجابة / حل لـ		abroad	يسافر للخارج
	lost	يتوه	<b>have</b>	free time	لديه وقت فراغ
	nervous	يتعصب - يتوتر	<b>make</b>	a comment	يعلق
	somewhere	يصل مكان ما		things	يصنع أشياء

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
consequences	نتائج
familiar	مشهور
familiar	مقرب
get around	يسافر - يتجول
get around	يتغلب على
results, effects	consequences
well known, common	familiar
close, dear	familiar
travel	get around
overcome, get over, solve	get around

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
consequences	أسباب
familiar	unfamiliar, strange, odd, unknown
	غير مشهور - غير مألوف

## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

benefit		
<b>benefit(v)</b>	يستفيد - يفيد	- We <b>benefit</b> from modern technology a lot. - Modern technology <b>benefits</b> us a lot.
<b>benefit(n)</b>	استفادة - منفعة	- Modern technology has a lot of <b>benefits</b> .
<b>beneficial(adj)</b>	مفيد - إيجابي	- Modern technology is <b>beneficial</b> .
click		
<b>click(v)</b>	ينقر (على الماوس)	- <b>Click</b> on the link below for more information.
<b>click(n)</b>	نقرة (على الماوس) - صوت طقطقة	- I heard the <b>click</b> of the mouse.
familiar		
<b>familiarize(v)</b>	يتعلم - يُعَلِّم	- Mr Mohammed <b>familiarized</b> us with the uses of "should" and "must".
<b>familiarity(n)</b>	المعرفة - الدراية	- Mr Mohammed increased our <b>familiarity</b> with the uses of "should" and "must".
<b>familiar(adj)</b>	على دراية بـ	- Mr Mohammed made us <b>familiar</b> with the uses of "should" and "must".
hybrid		
<b>hybridise / -ize(v)</b>	يُهجِّن	- Scientists <b>hybridise</b> poultry الدواجن.
<b>hybridisation(n)</b>	التهجين	- Are you for or against the <b>hybridisation</b> of poultry?
<b>hybrid(adj)</b>	هجين	- This type of poultry is <b>hybrid</b> .
navigate		
<b>navigate(v)</b>	يحدد اتجاه - يبحر	- GPS helps you to <b>navigate</b> safely.
<b>navigation(n)</b>	الملاحة - تحديد الاتجاه	- GPS makes <b>navigation</b> safe.

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

argue (that) + جملة	يطالب - يثبت أن	for this reason	لهذا السبب
be familiar with	لديه معرفة بـ	know how to	يعرف كيف
discussion on how	مناقشة عن كيفية	live abroad	يعيش خارج البلاد
even if	حتى لو	make a difference to	يحسن - يصنع الفارق في
even more useful	أكثر إفادة بكثير	putting parts together	تجميع الأشياء
find ... useful to / for	يكتشف أن ... مفيد لـ	with a click of a button	بضغط زر



6

## Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree with	يتفق مع	go down	ينخفض - يهبط
communicate with	يتواصل مع	help with	يساعد في
concentrate on	يركز على	lead to + (n. / inf. + ing)	يؤدي إلى
connect to	يتصل بـ	talk about	يتحدث عن
find out (about)	يكتشف - يعرف (عن)	walk around	يتجول في أرجاء

7

## Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

## discover - invent - explore - find out

- **discover (ed) (v)** يكتشف (شيء كان موجود ولكنه غير معروف)
  - Columbus **discovered** America.
  - Discover (a medicine / the femtosecond)
- **invent (ed) (v)** يخترع / يبتكر (شيء لم يكن موجود من قبل)
  - Do you know who **invented** smart phones ?
- **explore (d) (v)** يستكشف شيء أو مكان غريب ويعرف شيء عنه
  - I want to **explore** that forest.
  - I need more time to **explore** this plan.
- **find out (phr.v)** يكتشف (مصادفة أو بشكل غير مقصود)
  - While I was watering the plants in the garden, I **found out** that there was a rabbit hole جحر.

## do things - make things

- **do things** يقوم بأشياء (يفعل)
  - I have many things to do.
- **make things** يصنع أشياء
  - This vase is one of the best things you have made.

## Exercises On Vocabulary Study

- **MRQ** : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "The internet helps us to make global friends." The synonyms of 'global' are ..... and .....

(الجيزة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)

- a. national      b. worldwide      c. local  
d. international      e. famous

2. Brilliant scientists ..... new devices all the time to make life easier.

(القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٤)

- a. create                      b. discover                      c. explore  
d. invite                      e. invent

3. "I'll do my best to get around this problem" The phrasal verb 'get around' means .....

(القليوبية - قها ٢٠٢٤)

- a. overcome                      b. travel                      c. invest  
d. solve                      e. persuade

4. "After five years of suffering from COVID-19, the symptoms have become quite familiar to most humans." The synonyms of the word 'familiar' are .....

(الدقهلية - بني عبيد ٢٠٢٤)

- a. known                      b. special                      c. previous  
d. medical                      e. common

5. The word "consequences" has the same meaning as .....

(أسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. reasons                      b. causes                      c. roots  
d. effects                      e. results

6. It is possible to say you ..... or ..... things, but the meaning is different.

(الفيوم - طامية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. are                      b. do                      c. make  
d. be                      e. were

7. It is good to ..... a comment expressing your opinion under the post.

(سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. leave                      b. take                      c. make  
d. do                      e. get

8. All the countries in the world should cooperate to ..... the problem of climate change.

(الجيزة - الدقي ٢٠٢٤)

- a. save                      b. overcome                      c. support  
d. encourage                      e. face

9. The youth shouldn't ..... their time playing computer games.

(أسيوط - ابو تيج ٢٠٢٤)

- a. close                      b. waste                      c. save  
d. spend                      e. win

★ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To evolve in life, you have to get ..... your challenges. (الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. up                      b. lost                      c. around                      d. away

2. Robots can ..... a lot of things that can help us in our daily life. (البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)

- a. do                      b. go                      c. give                      d. take

3. Although the internet has a lot of advantages, it has also ..... a lot of problems. (القاهرة - المرج ٢٠٢٣)

- a. resulted                      b. caused                      c. reasoned                      d. ceased



4. When I ..... lost in a strange city, I ask a passer-by to help me find my destination.  
a. take                      b. get                      c. go                      d. do
5. "A lot of people in Cairo use the underground to get around." The phrasal verb 'get around' in this sentence means .....  
a. travel                      b. overcome                      c. get over                      d. b & c
6. Scientists have ..... this type of poultry الدواجن in laboratories from different types.  
a. hybeard                      b. hybrid                      c. hybridised                      d. hybridisation
7. GPS helps travellers with ..... in strange places.  
a. navigate                      b. navigated                      c. navigation                      d. navigator

### PART III

## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

Lesson 1 SB page 16

**What is the best invention that we have today and why is it so great? Please leave your comments<sup>(1)</sup> below.**

**Baher 12 minutes ago**

The internet is the best **invention**<sup>(2)</sup> that we have today. You can find information about anything you're **interested**<sup>(3)</sup> in. It's really useful if you need to **find out**<sup>(4)</sup> something for a school **project**<sup>(5)</sup>, for example. I'd never be able to do my homework **without**<sup>(6)</sup> it! The internet also **makes**<sup>(7)</sup> life easier in your **free time**<sup>(8)</sup>.

You can buy anything you want **online**<sup>(9)</sup> with a **click**<sup>(10)</sup> of a **button**<sup>(11)</sup>. You can also **communicate**<sup>(12)</sup> with your friends easily, **even if**<sup>(13)</sup> they live **abroad**<sup>(14)</sup>.

**Khadeeja 23 minutes ago**

In my opinion, **GPS**<sup>(15)</sup> (Global Positioning System) is the best invention. GPS helps you to **navigate**<sup>(16)</sup> your journey from one place to another. You can use it when you visit a town that you aren't **familiar with**<sup>(17)</sup>. In the past, people needed **maps**<sup>(18)</sup> to **get around**<sup>(19)</sup>, but GPS is more useful because it just tells you what to do. If you don't know how to **get somewhere**<sup>(20)</sup>, the **technology**<sup>(21)</sup> will tell you **exactly**<sup>(22)</sup> where to go.

(1) تعليقات

(2) اختراع

(3) مهتم

(4) يكتشف

(5) مشروع - بحث

(6) بدون

(7) يجعل

(8) وقت فراغ

(9) على الإنترنت

(10) نقرة

(11) زر

(12) يتواصل

(13) حتى لو

(14) خارج البلاد

(15) نظام تحديد

(16) المواقع

(17) يحدد الاتجاه

(18) على علم بـ

(19) خرائط

(20) يتجول

(21) يصل إلى مكان ما

(22) التكنولوجيا

(23) بدقة - بالضبط

**Rami** 40 minutes ago

Most cars, buses and other vehicles need **petrol**<sup>(23)</sup>, but petrol is becoming more expensive. What would we do if we didn't have petrol? **Fortunately**<sup>(24)</sup>, we now have **hybrid vehicles**<sup>(25)</sup>. Hybrid vehicles use both petrol and **electricity**<sup>(26)</sup> to drive the engine. For this reason, the vehicle uses a lot less petrol. There are also cars that are only electric. At the moment, they cannot go long distances, although they are useful to travel short **distances**<sup>(27)</sup>, like to school or to the shops.

(23) البنزين

(24) لحسن الحظ

(25) مركبات هجينة

(26) الكهرباء

(27) مسافات

### Match the people to the inventions.

Lesson 1 WB page 92

**Marwan** : I love riding on my bicycle but I don't have much time and I need to get to places quickly.

**Nadia** : I'm really busy and I love cooking, but I also have a terrible memory! I forgot to buy the things I need.

**Manal** : I love travelling and discovering new cultures and meeting new people.



1. **The TL8** will help you communicate when you go abroad. Choose a language and when you speak, the translation will appear on your phone. **Manal**
2. **The Direct 1** is for people who like to travel on two wheels. It connects to your bicycle and gives you directions as you cycle around town. You will never get lost on your bike again! **Marwan**
3. Do you ever forget to buy things that you need? **The FrigiNote** goes in your fridge and sends a shopping list to your phone. **Nadia**

## 2 Listening Text

Lesson 2 SB page 19

**Ahmed** : Well, **the reason**<sup>(1)</sup> that we have the internet is so that people in different countries can talk to each other very easily and **get answers**<sup>(2)</sup> to their questions very quickly. Although we need this fast and easy **communication**<sup>(3)</sup>, it can **lead to**<sup>(4)</sup> problems if people spend too much time talking online and don't work or study enough. I wouldn't say that the internet has caused a lot of problems, but I think it has caused some.



(1) السبب

(2) يحصل على إجابات

(3) الاتصال

(4) يؤدي إلى



**Mustafa :** The problem with the internet is that it makes people feel like they aren't good enough. If you go online, you see all these photos of beautiful people on **luxury**<sup>(5)</sup> holidays and you think "Why isn't my life like that ?" This makes some people really unhappy. Perhaps we should all **concentrate on**<sup>(6)</sup> our own lives and our own friends and not use the internet anymore.

(5) فخامة - متعة

(6) يركز على

## PART IV LANGUAGE

### Zero, First and Second Conditionals

#### 1 Zero Conditional : الحالة الشرطية الصفرية :

##### Formation التكوين

١ تتكون الحالة الشرطية الصفرية من :

جملة مضارع بسيط , جملة مضارع بسيط + **If / When** عندما إذا

ex. - If / When we **mix** red and yellow, we **get** orange.  
= We **get** orange if / when we **mix** red and yellow.

٢ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «هل» كالتالي :

**If / When** + جملة مضارع بسيط , **do / does + subj. + inf. .... ?**

ex. - If / When we **mix** red and yellow, **do** we **get** orange?  
= **Do** we **get** orange if / when we **mix** red and yellow?

٣ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «أداة استفهام» كالتالي :

**If / When** + جملة مضارع بسيط , **Q.W. أداة استفهام do / does + subj. + inf. .... ?**

ex. - If / When we **mix** red and yellow, what **do** we **get**?  
= What **do** we **get** if / when we **mix** red and yellow?

##### Uses استخدامات

١ التعبير عن الحقائق العامة :

ex. - If / When we **freeze** water, it **turns** into ice.

٢ التعبير عن العادات الثابتة أو المواقف التي لها نتيجة منطقية :

ex. - If / When **I'm** late for work, I **take** a taxi.  
- If / When I **go** to bed late, I **feel** tired the next morning.

٣ مع الحقيقة التي تخص موقف معين أو محددة بوقت معين يُفضل أن نستخدم الحالة الأولى وليس الحالة الصفيرية :

- ex. - If you **drop** glass, it **breaks**. (حقيقة عامة - حالة صفيرية)  
- If you **drop this** glass, it **will break**. (موقف محدد - حالة أولى)

٤ لاحظ أن المضارع البسيط قد يكون مثبت أو منفي :

- ex. - If / when we **put** water in a freezer, it **doesn't turn** into steam. بخار

٥ لاحظ أن المضارع البسيط قد يكون معلوم أو مجهول :

- ex. - If / When water **is put** in a freezer, it **doesn't turn** into steam.

## 2 First Conditional :

الحالة الأولى :

### Formation التكوين

١ تتكون الحالة الشرطية الأولى من :

**If / Unless** + إذا لم / **will + inf. + ....** , جملة مضارع بسيط

- ex. - If he **works** hard, he **will earn** a lot of money.  
= He **will earn** a lot of money if he **works** hard.  
= **Unless** he **works** hard, he **won't** earn a lot of money.  
= He **won't** earn a lot of money unless he **works** hard.

٢ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «هل» كالتالي :

**If / Unless** + **will + subj. + inf. .... ?** , جملة مضارع بسيط

- ex. - If he **works** hard, **will** he **earn** a lot of money?  
= **Will** he **earn** a lot of money if he **works** hard?

٣ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «أداة استفهام» كالتالي :

**If / Unless** + **will + subj. + inf. .... ?** , جملة مضارع بسيط Q.W. أداة استفهام

- ex. - If he **works** hard, what **will** he **earn**?  
= What **will** he **earn** if he **works** hard?

### Uses استخدامات

١ التعبير عن مواقف قابلة للحدوث في المستقبل :

- ex. - If I **have** enough money, I **will buy** a car.

٢ يمكن استخدام (can – may – might – must – should) بدلاً من (will) للتعبير عن القدرة أو الاحتمال أو الضرورة أو النصيحة في المستقبل في جملة جواب الشرط :

- ex. - If you **feel** tired, you **should stop** the car and take a rest. (نصيحة)  
- If I **want** to come first, I **must study** hard. (ضرورة)



## If - In case

- تعني (if) أن الحدث سيقع فقط إذا توفر شرط معين :

**ex.** - I'll buy some sandwiches if I feel hungry. (سأشتري فقط إذا شعرت بالجوع)

- بينما تُستخدم (in case) بمعنى (في حالة) لتدل على القيام بشئ تحسبًا للحاجة إليه مستقبلاً :

**ex.** - I'll buy some sandwiches in case I feel hungry.

(سأشتري في كل الأحوال تحسبًا لأنني قد اشعر بالجوع فيما بعد)

## Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ استخدم المضارع البسيط وليس المستقبل في فعل الشرط بعد (if) :

**ex.** - If Ahmed (will call - calls) me, I will tell him the truth.

٢ استخدم المضارع البسيط بعد (if) إذا كانت جملة جواب الشرط تتكون من أحدي الصيغ التالية:

1. inf. / don't + inf. / never + inf. ....

(صيغة الأمر)

**ex.** - If anyone (finds - found - had found - will find) my mobile, please take it to the manager's office.

- Don't run away if you (will see - see - saw - seen) a dog in the street.

2. Let's + inf. ....

**ex.** - Let's go to the cinema if you (will be - are - were - had been) bored شاعر بالملل.

3. had better ('d better) + inf. ....

**ex.** - If mum (has - had - had had - will have) too much housework, you'd better help her.

4. would rather ('d rather) + inf. ....

**ex.** - I'd rather revise for tomorrow's exam if I (will want - want - wanted - had wanted) to get high marks.

5. can / could you + inf. ....?

- في حالة الطلب المهذب :

**ex.** - If I (will need - need - needed - had needed) money, could you lend me some?

6. It is + صفة + to + inf. ....

**ex.** - It is easy to get married if I (will find - find - found - had found) a good flat.

٣ استخدم (will + inf.) في جملة جواب الشرط إذا كان فعل الشرط أحد الصيغ التالية:

1. If + subj. + (would like / would love / would prefer)

**ex.** - If you'd like to travel by plane, I (get - will get - would get - would have got) a ticket for you.

2. If + subj. + am / is / are + inf. + ing (مضارع مستمر للمستقبل)

**ex.** - If you're travelling to Aswan next week, I (go - will go - would go - would have gone) with you.

## 3. If + subj. + have / has + p.p. (مضارع تام)

ex. - If you **have done** your homework, I (let - **will let** - would let - would have let) you go out.

## 3 Second Conditional :

الحالة الثانية :

## Formation التكوين

١ تتكون الحالة الشرطية الثانية من :

If / Unless - إذا لم + جملة ماضى بسيط + .... would + inf. ....

ex. - If he **studied** more, he **would get** better marks.  
= He **would get** better marks if he **studied** more.  
= He **wouldn't get** better marks unless he **studied** more.

٢ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «هل» كالتالى :

If / Unless + جملة ماضى بسيط , would + subj. + inf. .... ?

ex. - If he **studied** more, **would** he **get** better marks?

٣ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «أداة استفهام» كالتالى :

If / When + جملة ماضى بسيط , Q.W. , would + subj. + inf. .... ?

ex. - If he **studied** more, what **would** he **get**?  
= What **would** he **get** if he **studied** more?

## Uses استخدامات

١ تعبر الحالة الثانية عن مواقف غير محتملة الحدوث فى المستقبل :

ex. - I'm extremely overweight. If I **lost** much weight, I **would run** in tomorrow's marathon.

- فى المثال السابق يقول المتحدث أنه زائد جدًا فى الوزن، ولو أنه فقد الكثير من الوزن سيشارك فى ماراثون الغد، لكن هذا غير منطقي لأنه لا أحد يفقد الكثير من الوزن فى يوم واحد - أما إذا كان الموقف محتملاً فنستخدم الحالة الأولى، لاحظ المثال التالى :

- I'm fit. If I **have** the chance, I **will run** in tomorrow's marathon.

٢ التعبير عن مواقف تخيلية مستحيلة الحدوث فى المضارع أو المستقبل :

ex. - If people **had** wings, they **would fly** like birds.

٣ إعطاء النصيحة بالصيغة (If I were) :

ex. - You **should study** hard.  
= If I **were** you, I **would study** hard.

٤ يمكن استخدام (could - might) بدلًا من (would) للتعبير عن الإمكانية أو الاحتمال أو النصيحة والافتراض :

ex. - If I **were** a bird, I **could fly** high in the sky.



## Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

- ١ لاحظ إمكانية استخدام (was / were) مع المفرد في حالة التخيل و النصيحة :  
- I have much work today. If I **was / were not** busy, I **would play** football.
- ٢ الأفعال (cut - put - hit - shut - read) لا تتغير عند تصريفها وتعتبر في الماضي البسيط إذا لم يضاف لها (s) مع (he - she - it) :  
- If he **read** today's newspapers, he (will - **would**) know the latest news.
- ٣ إذا كان فعل الشرط (had + noun) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية و نختار (would + inf.) :  
- If I **had a car**, I (will drive - **would drive** - would have driven) you to the airport.
- ٤ إذا كان فعل الشرط (had to + inf.) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية و نختار (would + inf.) :  
- If she **had to work**, she (will look - **would look** - would have looked) for a job as a secretary.
- ٥ إذا كان جواب الشرط (would have + noun) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية و نختار ماضي بسيط :  
- If my son (pass - **passed** - had passed) the exam, he **would have a present**.
- ٦ إذا كان جواب الشرط (would have to + inf.) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية و نختار ماضي بسيط :  
- If Nada (gets - **got** - had got) late, she **would have to take** a taxi.

### Remember

## 4 Third Conditional :

الحالة الثالثة :

<b>Statement</b> الجملة الخبرية	<b>If + subj. + had + p.p. .... , subj. + would / could / might + have + p.p. ....</b>  <b>ex.</b> - If he <b>had trained</b> hard, he <b>would / could / might have won</b> yesterday's match. = He <b>would / could / might have won</b> yesterday's match if he <b>had trained</b> hard.
<b>Yes / No Question</b> السؤال بـ «هل»	<b>Would / Could / Might + subj. + have + p.p. + if + subj. + ... had + p.p. ....?</b>  <b>ex.</b> - If he <b>had trained</b> hard, <b>would he have won</b> yesterday's match ? = <b>Would he have won</b> yesterday's match if he <b>had trained</b> hard ?
<b>(Wh-) Question</b> السؤال بأداة استفهام	<b>Q.W. + would / could / might + subj. + have + p.p. .... + if + subj. + ... had + p.p. ....?</b>  <b>ex.</b> - If he <b>had trained</b> hard, what <b>would he have done</b> ? = What <b>would he have done</b> if he <b>had trained</b> hard ?

## Uses استخدامات

١ تستخدم الحالة الثالثة لتخيل عكس ما حدث في الماضي :

ex. - I worked hard on this project. If I **hadn't worked** hard, I **wouldn't** have succeeded.

٢ تستخدم الحالة الثالثة للتعبير عن الندم على شيء حدث في الماضي :

ex. - The traffic policeman fined me yesterday. If I **had left** my car in the parking area, I **wouldn't have been** fined.

## General Notes on Conditionals ملاحظات عامة على الجمل الشرطية

١ يمكن استخدام الروابط التالية بدلاً من (if) ويأتي بعدها جملة :

جملة + بشرط أن = **providing (that) = provided (that)** طالما = **If = as long as**

ex. - **If** he takes the medicine, he will get better.  
- **As long as** he takes the medicine, he will get better.

٢ يمكن استخدام حروف الجر والظروف التالية بدلاً من (if) ويأتي بعدها (inf. + ing / noun) :

جملة + = **with / by / in case of + noun / (inf. + ing)**

ex. - **If** she comes first, she will get a car as a present.  
- **In case of coming** first, she will get a car as a present.  
- **With your help**, I'll succeed. = (If you help me, I'll succeed.)

٣ يمكن استخدام (unless) بدلاً من (if) مع مراعاة النفي والإثبات حسب المعنى :

ex. - **If** she sleeps early, she **will** get up early.  
- **Unless** she sleeps early, she **won't** get up early.

٤ يمكن استخدام (without / but for) بدلاً من (unless) ويأتي بعدها (inf. + ing / noun) :

جملة + = **Without / But for** لولا / بدون + (inf. + ing) / noun

ex. - **Unless** he has enough money, he won't buy this flat.  
- **Without (having) enough money**, he won't buy this flat.

٥ يمكن استخدام (If it weren't for) بدلاً من (unless) في الحالة الثانية ويأتي بعدها (inf. + ing / noun) :

جملة ماضى بسيط + = **If it weren't for + (inf. + ing) / noun**

ex. - **Unless**he had enough money, he wouldn't buy this flat.  
- **If it weren't for (having)** enough money, he wouldn't buy this flat.

٦ لاحظ صيغ إعطاء النصيحة

**If I were you, I'd + inf. = You + should / had better / ought to + inf.**

ex. - **You'd better** eat healthy food.  
- **If I were you, I would eat** healthy food.



٧ لاحظ استخدام (should) بدلاً من (If) في الحالتين الشرطية الأولى والثانية :

If + subj. + inf. ... = Should + subj. + inf. ...

- ex. - If Hamza helps me, I'd do it well.  
= Should Hamza helps me, I'll do it well

If + subj. + inf. ... = Should + subj. + inf. ...

- ex. - If Adham had much time, he would help me.  
= Should Adham have much time, he would help me.

٨ لاحظ استخدام (Were) بدلاً من (If) في الحالة الثانية :

Were + subj. + (to + inf. ) ... = If + subj. + inf. ...

- ex. - If you told me, I would understand.  
- Were you to tell me, I would understand.

لاحظ أنه إذا كانت (were) فعلًا أساسيًا للجملة لا تستخدم (to + inf.) بعد الفاعل :

- ex. - If I were a good footballer, I would be famous.  
- Were I a good footballer, I would be famous.

٩ لاحظ استخدام (Had) بدلاً من (If) في الحالة الثانية عندما تكون فعلًا أساسيًا للشرط :

Had + subj. + ... = If + subj. + had + ...

- ex. - If I had enough time, I would help you.  
- Had I enough time, I would help you.

كما يمكن استخدام (Had) بدلاً من (If) في الحالة الشرطية الثالثة :

Had + subj. + p.p. = If + subj. + had + p.p.

- ex. - If he had already left, I would have called him.  
= Had he already left, I would have called him.

١٠ لاحظ صيغة المفعول لأجله (causative) في الجمل الشرطية :

(حالة ثانية) p.p. .... + مفعول + had + obj. + مفعول لأجله + subj. + If

(حالة ثالثة) p.p. .... + مفعول + had had + obj. + مفعول لأجله + subj. + If

- ex. - If he had his camera repaired, he would lend it to me.  
- If he had had his camera repaired, he would have lent it to me.

١١ يمكن استخدام (p.p.) أو صفة بعد (if) كما يلي :

صفة + if + p.p. / adj. ... -

p.p. / p.p. + be ... + she / he / that / this / it + if ... -

- ex. - I will buy another fan if needed.  
= I will buy another fan if that is needed.  
- She wouldn't use her mobile at work again if warned.  
= She wouldn't use her mobile at work again if she was warned.  
- I would have helped you if possible.  
= I would have helped you if it had been possible.

## Exercises On Language

● Apply

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- If I ..... help with a school project, I look online. (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. needed      b. need      c. will need      d. had needed
- If a piece of iron ..... in the open air, it rusts. (الإسكندرية - وسط الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. leave      b. is left      c. leaves      d. was left
- If Ali joined the school trip, he ..... a happy day. (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)  
a. would be      b. would has      c. would have      d. had had
- If Mazen had enough money, he ..... that mobile phone. (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. will buy      b. would buy  
c. would have bought      d. buys
- If he had travelled to Egypt, he ..... wonderful places. (الجيزة - الدقي ٢٠٢٤)  
a. will see      b. would see  
c. had seen      d. would have seen
- ..... training hard, you can't win the match. (الجيزة - كرداسة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. Unless      b. If      c. Without      d. Should
- If Ali had to get up early, he ..... to bed early. (الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. would go      b. will go      c. would have gone      d. go
- If our car ....., we'd have gone on a picnic. (البحيرة - الدلتا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. had checked      b. has been checked  
c. had been checked      d. checked
- If you ..... more care, you would have minimized your mistakes.  
a. were      b. had      c. had had      d. had been
- If he let me go early, I ..... come on time. (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. will      b. would      c. would have      d. can
- How..... Noha feel if she read this novel again? (الإسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. does      b. did      c. would      d. will
- If she cut her finger, she ..... go to hospital. (الدقهلية - ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٤)  
a. will      b. may      c. might      d. might have



13. Rodayna wouldn't have been a doctor ..... studying hard hadn't been an important thing to her.  
a. unless      b. without      c. in case of      d. if
14. Should my father ..... me, I would achieve my goal. (السيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤)  
a. encourage      b. encourages      c. encouraged      d. encouraged
15. .... he to study hard, he would get high marks. (الاسماعيلية - التل الكبير ٢٠٢٤)  
a. If      b. Had      c. Would      d. Were
16. .... staying up affects my health badly, I'll sleep earlier from now on. (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)  
a. If      b. Without      c. In case of      d. Unless
17. The referee will wear two watches on both hands ..... one of them stops. (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٤)  
a. unless      b. in case of      c. if      d. in case
18. If I had written work, I ..... it at once. (الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. will do      b. would do      c. had done      d. would have done
19. If I had money, I'd donate some to charity. Unfortunately, I ..... any.  
a. hadn't      b. don't have      c. didn't have      d. hadn't had
20. If I were busy, I wouldn't come to the party. This means that I ..... busy. (الشرقية - الابراهيمية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. am not      b. am      c. was not      d. was

أحرص علي إقتناء

EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق



## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

advantages (n)	مزايا	feedback (n)	تغذية راجعة - تقييم
app = application (n)	تطبيق	quiz (zed) (n - v)	مسابقة أسئلة - امتحان
application (n)	طلب التحاق		قصير - يستجوب
chat(ted) (v - n)	يدرّش - درّشة	translation (n)	ترجمة
disadvantages (n)	عيوب		

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

account (n)	حساب (مصرفي / على الإنترنت)	negative (adj)	سلبى
admit(ted) (v)	يقر بـ - يعترف بـ	offer (ed) (v)	عرض - يعرض
argue(d) (v)	يجادل - يناقش	online (adj / adv)	على الإنترنت
brainstorm(ed) (n-v)	العصف الذهني - يستثير الفكر	philosopher (n)	فيلسوف
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	popular (adj)	محبوب - ذو شعبية
collection (n)	مجموعة	positive (adj)	إيجابى
comment(n)	تعليق	press(ed) (v - n)	يضغط - ضغطة
completely (adv)	تمامًا	press(n)	الصحافة
conclusion (n)	ختام - خلاصة	printing (n - adj)	الطباعة - مطبوع
cost-cost (v - n)	يتكلف - التكلفة	progress(n)	التقدم
details (n)	تفاصيل	seem(ed) (v)	يبدو
device(n)	جهاز - أداة	share(d) (v)	يشارك - ينشر على الإنترنت
documentary (n-adj)	برنامج وثائقي - توثيقي	software(n)	برامج رقمية
download(ed) (v - n)	يُنزل - التنزيل (من الإنترنت)	stress(n)	الضغط العصبي / الإجهاد
electronic (adj)	إلكترونى	stressful(adj)	شاق / مُجهّد - مُزعج
extreme(adj)	شديد - متطرف	studies (n)	دراسات
guess(ed) (v)	يخمن	summary(n)	ملخص
human being	إنسان	technological(adj)	تكنولوجى
imagine(d) (v)	تخيل	technology(n)	التكنولوجيا
memory(n)	الذاكرة	tip(n)	نصيحة



### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>app(n)</b> تطبيق	software برنامج on your smartphone
<b>chat(v)</b> يدرش	to communicate with other people online
<b>feedback(n)</b> تغذية راجعة	information about how well or badly you did something
<b>quiz(n)</b> مسابقة أسئلة	questions to find out how much you know
<b>translation(n)</b> ترجمة	words changed into another language

## Exercises On Vocabulary

### • Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Definitions

- The information about how well or badly you did something is called .....  
(القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. invention      b. feedback      c. advantages      d. disadvantages
- A ..... is some questions to find how much you know. (الاسكندرية - الجُمُرك ٢٠٢٤)  
a. tip      b. quiz      c. map      d. guess
- A/An ..... is a software on your smartphone. (الاسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٣)  
a. memory card      b. app      c. email      d. device
- To ..... is to communicate with other people online.  
a. evacuate      b. stress      c. chat      d. comment

#### 2 Key Vocabulary

- The students answered all the questions in the ..... and then checked their score. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. feedback      b. invention      c. quiz      d. computer
- One of the so many ..... of this small car is that it does not use much petrol. (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)  
a. disadvantages      b. demerits      c. advantages      d. downsides
- Free mobile ..... include advertisements.  
a. applications      b. apps      c. a & b      d. feedback
- My ..... was rejected as I did not have the needed skills.  
a. application      b. app      c. a & b      d. feedback
- Being honest is not a/an .....  
a. disadvantage      b. merit      c. advantage      d. upside
- The police are still ..... the suspects. (الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. recommending      b. admitting      c. quizzing      d. chatting
- He enjoys ..... with his online friends in his free time. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. cycling      b. printing      c. benefiting      d. chatting

12. If you want to get the best of your team members, try to give positive ..... to them. (البحيرة - الدلتجات ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. punishment      b. feedback      c. progress      d. application
13. "I had a ten-minute chat with my friend." In this sentence, 'chat' is a/an ..... (الفيوم - طامية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. noun      b. verb      c. adverb      d. adjective

### 3 Important Vocabulary

14. I left the company because I was always under ..... (الدقهلية - نبروه ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. stress      b. stressful      c. stressed      d. pressed
15. I was shocked when I saw the ..... on the post. Many people didn't like my opinion. (الدقهلية - ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. communications      b. comments      c. movements      d. directions
16. I watched a/an ..... on technology last night. I must say it was interesting. (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. robot      b. invention      c. documentary      d. contact
17. Employees get together and ..... ideas to solve some problems they face. (الأقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. brainstorm      b. avoid      c. admit      d. bargain
18. Most young people prefer ..... news websites to printed newspapers.  
 a. traditional      b. paper      c. offline      d. online
19. Colour ..... is better; but costly مُكلفَة, so publishers prefer black and white.  
 a. comment      b. offer      c. collection      d. printing
20. The players of our team find it difficult to play well in the ..... heat of some African countries.  
 a. extreme      b. stressed      c. online      d. beneficial
21. A: Did Ahmed leave the exam room? B: I ..... not.  
 a. affect      b. crash      c. do      d. guess
22. You end your essay with the .....  
 a. title      b. introduction      c. body      d. conclusion
23. She is not strong enough to do all this ..... work.  
 a. extreme      b. stressful      c. familiar      d. beneficial
24. Applications are ..... that helps you do some jobs on a computer or mobile.  
 a. device      b. summary      c. software      d. progress
25. A: Do you have a / an ..... on Telegram? B: No, but I have one on Facebook.  
 a. account      b. press      c. button      d. progress
26. I think the ..... is not enough. You need to read the whole report.  
 a. device      b. summary      c. software      d. progress
27. My two daughters ..... some qualities. They both are intelligent, hard-working and helpful.  
 a. share      b. cycle      c. communicate      d. save
28. Sama has made clear ..... in her studies.  
 a. device      b. summary      c. software      d. progress



## PART II

# VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

<b>find</b>	an answer to	يُجد إجابة / حل	<b>do</b>	well/badly	يؤدي بشكل جيد / سيء
<b>give</b>	... better understanding	يساعد ... على فهم أفضل	<b>lose</b>	interest in	يفقد اهتمامه بـ
	... an address	يعطي ... عنوان	<b>make</b>	progress	يحقق تقدم
	specific examples	يعطي أمثلة محددة	<b>offer</b>	a chart	يرسم لوحة أو جدول بيانات
<b>take</b>	time/many years	يستغرق وقت / سنوات كثيرة	<b>offer</b>	advantages	يقدم مميزات
			<b>have</b>	an effect on	له أثر على
<b>press</b>	a button	يضغط زر	<b>have</b>	tests	لديه اختبارات
			<b>have</b>	fun	يمرح - يلهو

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
advantages	مزاي - إيجابيات
extreme	شديد / متطرف
response	استجابة / رد فعل
quiz	مسابقة اسئلة
steer	يوجه / يقود
stressful	شاق / مُجهّد - مُزعج
	merits, upsides, benefits
	radical, extremist, unreasonable, fanatical
	feedback, reaction
	test, exam
	direct, control, drive
	exhausting, hard, tough, tiring, disturbing

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
advantages	disadvantages, demerits, downsides, problems
expert	inexpert
extreme	moderate, mild, tolerant
online	offline, disconnected
stressful	relaxing, easy
surprising	usual, common, everyday, ordinary
مزاي - إيجابيات	مساوي - عيوب
خبير	عديم الخبرة
شديد / متطرف	معتدل
متصل بالانترنت	غير متصل بالانترنت
شاق / مجهد - مزعج	مريح / سهل
مذهل	عادي

### 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

chat		
<b>chat(v)</b>	يحدثش	- I <b>chatted</b> with some friends.
<b>chat(n)</b>	حدثشة	- I had a <b>chat</b> with some friends.
<b>chatting(n)</b>	الحدثشة	- <b>Chatting</b> may waste our time.

invention		
<b>invent(v)</b>	يخترع	- Do you know who <b>invented</b> the mobile phone?
<b>invent(v)</b>	يخلق / يُولف	- Liars <b>invent</b> stories to trick others.
<b>invention(n)</b>	اختراع	- The computer is a useful <b>invention</b> .
<b>inventor(n)</b>	مُخترع	- Do you know who is the <b>inventor</b> of the mobile phone ?
<b>inventive(adj)</b>	مُبدع / مُبتكر	- Mr Ashraf is an <b>inventive</b> teacher.
translation		
<b>translate(v)</b>	يترجم	- I <b>translate</b> from English into Arabic.
<b>translation(n)</b>	ترجمة	- <b>Translation</b> from one language to another is not easy for some students.
<b>translator(n)</b>	مُترجم	- <b>Translators</b> do not earn much money.
<b>translated(adj)</b>	مُترجم	- <b>Translated</b> scientific texts are sometimes difficult to understand.

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

be seen as	يُنظر إليه كـ - يُعتَقَد أنه	on their own	بمفردهم - دون مساعدة
for or against	مع أو ضد	personal details	التفاصيل الشخصية
free time	وقت فراغ	put ... in order of ...	يرتب ... حسب
help me find	يساعد في إيجاد	reason for	سبب لـ
I guess not	لا أعتقد ذلك	stop people enjoying	يمنع الناس من الاستمتاع بـ
In conclusion	الخلاصة هي	that seems extreme	ذلك يبدو موقف متشدد
make life easier	يجعل الحياة أسهل	the printing press	الصحافة المطبوعة
on the one hand	من ناحية	I would argue that	يمكنني أن أقول أن
on the other hand,	من الناحية الأخرى		

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

add ... to	يضيف ... إلى	live without	يحيى بدون
change ... into	يحوّل ... إلى	think about	يُفكّر في
do without	يفعل ... بدون - يستغني عن	turn on	يُشغّل
feel about	يشعر تجاه	write ... down	يُدوّن - يُسجّل

## 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

translate - interpret	
• <b>translate (d) (v)</b>	يترجم (كلام مكتوب أو شفهي)
- I have <b>translated</b> a lot of film scripts into Arabic.	
• <b>interpret (ed) (v)</b>	يترجم فوري (مع إمكانية التفسير)
- Dr Amr <b>interprets</b> the coach's instructions to the players.	



## download - upload

- **download (ed) (v)** يَنْزِلُ ملف  $\neq$  **upload (ed) (v)** يرفع ملف  
- I **downloaded** some books about farming.
- **download (n)** ملف مُنزَّل من الانترنت  $\neq$  **upload (n)** ملف مرفوع على الانترنت  
- She keeps her **downloads** in this folder.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- download ... from من يَنْزِلُ
- download to / onto إلى يَنْزِلُ
- upload ... to على يرفع

## Exercises On Vocabulary Study

- **MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :**

1. "What are the disadvantages of mobile phones?" The synonyms of the word 'disadvantages' are .....  
a. merits                      b. demerits                      c. pros  
d. benefits                      e. cons
2. "When I told him the news, his response was only a smile." The word 'response' means .....  
a. feedback                      b. sanitation                      c. reaction  
d. intention                      e. solution  
(الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)
3. "Many students competed in the quiz." The synonyms of 'quiz' are .....  
a. exam                      b. test                      c. reply  
d. support                      e. game  
(القاهرة - غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٤)
4. "I had a stressful day at work, which made me exhausted." The word 'stressful' can be replaced by .....  
a. tiring                      b. relaxing                      c. legal  
d. disturbing                      e. comfortable  
(الشرقية - بلبيس ٢٠٢٤)
5. "Looking after small children can be stressful." The antonyms of 'stressful' are .....  
a. easy                      b. tiring                      c. wasteful  
d. obvious                      e. relaxing  
(الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)
6. "I found that the boat was difficult to steer." The synonyms of 'steer' are .....  
a. stare                      b. direct                      c. miss  
d. control                      e. lose  
(الجيزة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤)
7. The antonyms for the word 'surprising' are ..... and .....  
a. amazing                      b. unusual                      c. unique  
d. usual                      e. common  
(الجيزة - أبو النمرس ٢٠٢٤)

★ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our teacher wanted us to ..... a quiz about the last lesson. (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٤)  
a. make                      b. do                      c. give                      d. resign
2. He has a stressful job as a teacher. "Stressful" is the same meaning of ..... (الجيزة - الدقي ٢٠٢٤)  
a. easy                      b. relaxing                      c. exciting                      d. hard
3. I'm sure you will solve this problem ..... your own. (الاسكندرية - المنتزه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. from                      b. with                      c. on                      d. by
4. We add the prefix "....." to form the antonym of the word "expert". (الجيزة - بولاق الدكرور ٢٠٢٣)  
a. un-                      b. dis-                      c. in-                      d. ir-
5. We are trying to ..... a reasonable answer to this question.  
a. do                      b. cause                      c. find                      d. go
6. He was surprised when I told him how badly his son had ..... in the exam.  
a. left                      b. done                      c. got                      d. taken
7. As a student, I don't have enough time to ..... online for fun.  
a. have                      b. cause                      c. find                      d. go
8. Teachers ..... specific examples to make their points clear.  
a. offer                      b. give                      c. do                      d. cause
9. I need someone to ..... this research into English.  
a. translate                      b. translation                      c. translator                      d. translated
10. I need a ..... to help me with this research.  
a. translate                      b. translation                      c. translator                      d. translated
11. The new decision is seen ..... a step خطوة towards developing education.  
a. by                      b. as                      c. from                      d. on
12. The government plans to change this desert area ..... a new town.  
a. over                      b. by                      c. into                      d. from
13. I have ..... interest in watching football matches because of blind fanaticism التعصب الأعمى among fans.  
a. had                      b. got                      c. lost                      d. gained

### PART III

## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### Is technology always a good thing?

Lesson 3 WB page 94

This question has been asked for many years but has anyone found an answer? On the one hand, there are always **dangers**<sup>(1)</sup> with new technology. More than two thousand years ago, a **Greek**<sup>(2)</sup> **philosopher**<sup>(3)</sup> called Socrates was worried that writing things down would stop students using their **memories**<sup>(4)</sup>.

- (1) مخاطر
- (2) يوناني
- (3) فيلسوف
- (4) الذاكرة



In the 16<sup>th</sup> century<sup>(5)</sup>, following the invention of the printing press<sup>(6)</sup>, a Swiss<sup>(7)</sup> philosopher called Conrad Gessner thought that books would give people too much information.

And in the 20<sup>th</sup> century, many people thought that the radio would make it difficult for students to think about their studies<sup>(8)</sup>.

On the other hand<sup>(9)</sup>, technology usually offers some advantages<sup>(10)</sup>. Books and writing are seen as positive<sup>(11)</sup> things today and most people think that their advantages are more important than any disadvantages.

In conclusion<sup>(12)</sup>, perhaps it takes many years before we can see clearly<sup>(13)</sup> whether new technology is good or bad.

- (5) قرن (١٦٠٠م)
- (6) الصحافة المطبوعة
- (7) سويسري
- (8) دراسات
- (9) على الجانب الآخر
- (10) مميزات
- (11) إيجابي
- (12) ختام - خلاصة
- (13) بوضوح

### The advantages and disadvantages<sup>(1)</sup> of technology Lesson 4 SB page 21

I like technology<sup>(2)</sup> a lot and I use it every day. It helps me find information for my school work and I can buy things easily online. But technology isn't always a good thing. It can lead to<sup>(3)</sup> a lot of stress<sup>(4)</sup> and it can stop<sup>(5)</sup> people enjoying their free time.

**Karim**

I don't know what I would do without technology! It makes life easier and you can do things so much faster. And how would we travel without technology? You can travel from Cairo to London in just<sup>(6)</sup> five hours in a plane!

**Dina**

- (1) عيوب
- (2) التكنولوجيا
- (3) يؤدي إلى
- (4) الضغط
- (5) يمنع / يوقف - يتوقف
- (6) فقط / فحسب

### Put the conversation in the correct order. Start with "a" Lesson 4 WB page 95

- a. Hala** : Hi, Randa. Did you watch the documentary on technology last night ? I must say that it was really surprising !
- b. Randa** : I don't use GPS, so that's OK. But can you imagine life without the internet ?
- c. Randa** : Yes. I have to admit that's true. I never share my personal information online. And now my brother won't even turn on his phone.
- d. Hala** : That seems extreme. I think we should be fine if we are careful. I would argue that we need to think carefully about the information we share.

**e. Hala** : No, I guess not. On the one hand, it's very useful for many things. But on the other hand, we should be careful about what we do with our personal details and who we give them to.

**f. Hala** : Yes, I understand why he thinks that. The documentary said internet companies are collecting information about us. For example, they know where we go because they can find that information is in our GPS.

**g. Randa** : No, I didn't but my brother told me about it this morning. Now he's worried that his phone is collecting information about him.

1. ....a.....      2. ....g.....      3. ....f.....      4. ....b.....  
5. ....e.....      6. ....c.....      7. ....d.....

## 2 Listening Text

### Lesson 3 SB page 20

**Amal** : **Technology**<sup>(1)</sup> is so useful when you're learning something, Hana ! You can find the information you need really quickly. If you don't understand a word when you're reading a **text**<sup>(2)</sup>, you can find the **translation**<sup>(3)</sup> for it.

**Hana** : **You're right**<sup>(4)</sup>, Amal, but does that really help you to learn ? I think that if you learn something, you remember it and you can use it when you're talking or writing. Technology can't help you remember things or write texts.

**Amal** : Well, **not exactly**<sup>(5)</sup>, but if you use a **language app**<sup>(6)</sup>, for example, you can do **quizzes**<sup>(7)</sup> about new words to help you remember them. And there are apps that give you **feedback**<sup>(8)</sup> on your writing so you can do it better next time.

**Hana** : I understand what you're saying. That's just not the way I learn. I prefer using a pen and paper and **making notes**<sup>(9)</sup> in my notebook. I don't need a **smartphone**<sup>(10)</sup>.

**Amal** : **That's Ok**<sup>(11)</sup>. Everyone's different. **For me**<sup>(12)</sup>, the best thing about using technology to learn is that you can **chat**<sup>(13)</sup> to people from all over the world online. That's really nice when you're doing your homework on your own. If you have questions, they'll help you.

(1) التكنولوجيا

(2) نص

(3) ترجمة

(4) أنت على صواب

(5) ليس بالضبط

(6) تطبيق لغوي

(7) امتحانات قصيرة

(8) تغذية راجعة - نتيجة

(9) يدون ملاحظات

(10) هاتف ذكي

(11) هذا جيد

(12) في رأيي / بالنسبة لي

(13) يرددش



## Exercises On Language

● Apply

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

## 1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. What ..... do if you get lost in a big city is to check your GPS.  
a. you will      b. will you      c. would you      d. you would
2. Grandma usually ..... a short nap if she feels tired. (سوهاج - جهينة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. will take      b. takes      c. took      d. take
3. If you ..... what I say, ask your mother. (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)  
a. won't believe      b. didn't believe      c. don't believe      d. hadn't believed
4. If you asked me, I ..... you. (الغربية - زفتي ٢٠٢٣)  
a. help      b. am helping      c. would help      d. will help
5. If she ..... the competition, she'd probably win a prize.  
a. will enter      b. enters      c. entered      d. had entered
6. He wouldn't take a taxi if someone ..... for him at the airport.  
a. had waited      b. waited      c. has waited      d. waiting
7. If I ..... a holiday, I would have a swim in the sea.  
a. had had      b. have had      c. had      d. don't have
8. .... he felt tired, he'd go to bed early.  
a. But for      b. With      c. If      d. Without
9. They won't come to the party ..... we invite them.  
a. without      b. unless      c. in case of      d. if
10. If I ..... enough money for the project, I wouldn't have to borrow from the bank.  
a. had had      b. didn't have      c. had      d. have
11. If people don't get enough food, they ..... weak.  
a. became      b. would become  
c. become      d. would have become
12. I'd fly if I ..... a bird.  
a. will be      b. had been      c. were      d. am
13. I'd have been pleased with you if you ..... the homework.  
a. hadn't done      b. had done      c. would do      d. do

## 2 Special cases

14. .... her courage, the kid wouldn't have been saved. (البحيرة - الدلجات ٢٠٢٣)  
a. If      b. Unless      c. In case of      d. Without

15. If he read the news, he ..... everything about the terrible accident.  
a. may know      b. will know      c. would know      d. know

(البجيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)

16. .... Malak to read the book, she would get much information.

(الغربية - سمود ٢٠٢٣)

- a. If      b. Unless      c. Were      d. Should
17. I'd rather start now if I ..... to finish in time.  
a. have      b. don't have      c. had      d. had had
18. If this trip cost much money, I ..... join it.  
a. am not      b. don't      c. won't      d. wouldn't
19. It's important to take your medicine if you ..... ill.  
a. are felt      b. feel      c. felt      d. had felt
20. We'd better train hard if we ..... to win the match.  
a. had wanted      b. wanted      c. want      d. don't want
21. If you had to leave now, I ..... you a lift.  
a. give      b. will give  
c. would give      d. would have given
22. Don't drink tea if you ..... to sleep early.  
a. had wanted      b. wanted      c. want      d. are wanted
23. If she'd like to come with us, she ..... permission إذن from her parents.  
a. need      b. will need      c. would need      d. would have need
24. If she has finished the reports, she ..... the office.  
a. leave      b. would leave      c. would have left      d. can leave
25. If I ..... tired, I would have to take a rest.  
a. feel      b. don't feel      c. felt      d. had felt
26. Let's go for a walk if you ..... to stay at home.  
a. want      b. don't want      c. didn't want      d. hadn't wanted
27. I ..... you if you are studying for your next exams.  
a. won't visit      b. would visit  
c. wouldn't have visited      d. visit
28. Can you lend me some money if you ..... enough ?  
a. don't have      b. have      c. had      d. had had

### 3 Check your understanding

29. "If I come first this year, I'll get a reward". This means .....  
a. It is impossible that I come first      b. I will probably come first  
c. It is not likely that I come first      d. I did not come first
30. "If I came first this year, I'd get a reward". This means .....  
a. it's impossible that I will come first      b. I will probably come first  
c. it is not likely that I will come first      d. I did not come first





للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

تنويه

PART I

GRAMMATICAL HINTS

١ لاحظ التعبيرات التالية مع (help) :

help + obj. المفعول + inf. = help + obj. مفعول + to + inf.

ex. - My teacher helped me ..... the lesson.

- a. understanding    b. to understand    c. understand    d. b & c

help + inf. / to + inf.

ex. - She agreed to help ..... the housework.

- a. do    b. to do    c. doing    d. a & b

help + obj. مفعول + with + n.

ex. - I promised to help mum with the cooking.

٢ لاحظ التعبيرات التالية مع (make) :

make يجعل + obj. مفعول + adj. صفة

ex. - Your call has made me .....

- a. happily    b. happiness    c. happy    d. happening

make + obj. مفعول + inf. (معلوم)

obj. المفعول + be + made + to + inf. (مجهول)

ex. - Mr Hossam made Omar ..... the essay again.

- a. write    b. to write    c. writing    d. to writing

ex. - Omar was made ..... the essay again.

- a. write    b. to write    c. writing    d. to writing

٣ لاحظ استخدام التعبيرات التالية :

- on the one hand من ناحية

- on the other hand من الناحية الأخرى

(للتعبير عن الرأي المخالف)

ex. - Smartphones have advantages and disadvantages. On the one hand, they have made life and communication easier. On the other hand, they have made people lazy.

٤ لاحظ استخدام (to + inf.) بعد أدوات الاستفهام :

- ex. - I am really confused متحير. I don't know what to do.  
 - Can you tell me where to park my car ?  
 - I asked her how to feed the baby.

٥ لاحظ الفرق بين :

- on his / her ... own بمفرده / دون مساعدة = by himself / herself ... = alone  
 - of his / her ... own ملكه / يخصه

- ex. - He has a private car. He has a car ..... his own.  
 a. with                      b. of                      c. from                      d. on  
 - No one lives with her. She lives ..... her own.  
 a. with                      b. of                      c. from                      d. on

٦ لا تجمع (hundred - thousand - million...) بعد الأرقام أو (a few - many - several ...)

- ex. - The Pharaohs had a great civilization five ..... years ago.  
 a. a thousand                      b. thousands                      c. thousand                      d. few thousand

٧ تُستخدم (such) بمعنى (مثل هذا) قبل اسم أو صفة يتبعها اسم :

- ex. - I can't eat such food.  
 - They never miss such important meetings.

٨ لاحظ أن :

called = who / which / that is called

- ex. - I have a daughter called Rodayna.  
 = I have a daughter who is called Rodayna.

٩ يمكن أن تُستخدم (following) كحرف جر بمعنى (بعد) :

- ex. - Following the birth of her second son, she decided to leave her job.  
 = After the birth of her second son, she decided to leave her job.

١٠ لاحظ الصيغة التالية للنفي المُطلق :

... not + ... + ever again. لم / لن ... مرة أخرى على الإطلاق

- ex. - I promised that I wouldn't smoke ..... again.  
 a. never                      b. ever                      c. every                      d. any

١١ لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

The reason that + جملة + is so that ... السبب في ... هو لكي ...

- ex. - The reason that he works hard ..... so that he can pass his exams.  
 a. have                      b. has                      c. was                      d. is

١٢ كلمة (internet) غالباً تسبقها (the) :

- ex. - The internet has made information exchange easier تبادل.  
 (Not: Internet has ...)



١٢ كلمة (the internet) يسبقها حرف الجر (on) للتعبير عن القيام بشيء على شبكة الإنترنت :

ex. - I had a lot of friends on the internet. (Not: ... by the internet)

١٤ كلمة (online) تُستخدم كصفة أو كظرف بمعنى (مُتصل بالإنترنت / على الإنترنت / عن طريق الإنترنت) :

ex. - Online shopping is now common. (صفة)

- You can buy anything you want online. (ظرف)

١٥ لاحظ أن (lead to) والتي تعني (يؤدي إلي) يأتي بعدها (اسم) أو (inf. + ing) :

ex. - Hard work leads to success النجاح.

- Smoking leads to having a lot of health problems.

### Exercise On Language Hints

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I'm sure you will solve this problem ..... your own. (سوهاج - جبهة ٢٠٢٣)

a. on                      b. from                      c. with                      d. by

2. What is the advantage of having ..... an expensive car ?

(البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)

a. so                      b. too                      c. such                      d. very

3. .... has become more familiar.

a. Shopping online                      b. Online shopping  
c. a & b                      d. On a shopping line

4. Using pesticides المبيدات leads ..... the crops.

a. pollute                      b. to pollute                      c. polluting                      d. to polluting

5. I asked him not to waste his time chatting on ..... .

a. internet                      b. the internet                      c. an internet                      d. a & b

6. .... the manager's unfair decision, I decided to resign يستقيل.

a. On                      b. During                      c. Following                      d. Because

7. I helped Sama ..... the housework.

a. doing                      b. to do                      c. do                      d. b & c

8. I helped Sama ..... the housework.

a. with                      b. on                      c. at                      d. from

9. My father's recovery شفاء made us ..... .

a. happy                      b. feel happy                      c. to feel happy                      d. a & b

10. We were made ..... by my father's recovery.

a. happily                      b. feel happy                      c. to feel happy                      d. a & b

11. I want to know where ..... my car.

a. park                      b. to park                      c. parking                      d. to parking

12. I have a tablet ..... my own. I bought it a week ago.

- a. on                      b. of                      c. in                      d. b & c

13. I won't agree to such .....

- a. plan                      b. a plan                      c. a bad plan                      d. b & c

## PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (البحيرة - الدلتا ٢٠٢٤)

When people are playing a game, they need to follow the rules. If they don't, the game becomes disorganised and unfair. If a student ignores a rule against talking in class, the other students can't concentrate. Drivers who don't follow traffic laws can cause serious accidents.

Most things we do are governed by rules. These may be unwritten, like the "rules" of social politeness, or official laws passed by parliament and backed up by the legal system. But all rules and laws have the same **purpose**: to make it clear what is right or wrong, and what happens if someone breaks the rule. They are designed to ensure fairness, safety and respect for other people's rights. In this way, they help us work, play and live together peacefully.

If there were no rules and everyone was free to do whatever they wanted, most people would probably behave selfishly. We need rules to help us get along together and show respect for each other.

Most of us are basically honest and knowing the rules means that we usually try to follow them. One reason we do this is to avoid punishment, but the strongest argument for following the rules is - quite simple- that it makes the world a better place for all of us.

1. In class, a student should not ..... the rules.

- a. ignore                      b. govern                      c. control                      d. follow

2. Following the rules means that we want to .....

- a. get punished                      b. cause accidents  
c. avoid punishment                      d. behave selfishly

3. If we had no rules or laws, everyone would behave .....

- a. politely                      b. selfishly                      c. peacefully                      d. happily



4. If we are playing a game with no rules, it becomes ..... .  
 a. fair                      b. just                      c. unfair                      d. organized
5. Laws can make the world a ..... place for all of us.  
 a. better                      b. bitter                      c. worse                      d. worst
6. The underlined word 'purpose' means ..... .  
 a. device                      b. means                      c. target                      d. tool
7. The central idea of the passage can be "....." .  
 a. Following rules and laws is a must  
 b. Students shouldn't talk in class  
 c. Drivers don't follow the law  
 d. Most people behave selfishly

## 2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

✪ Write an essay about an invention that you use every day and why it's important to you.

### إرشادات موجزة Brief tips

عند كتابة مقال عن «اختراع مهم تستخدمه بشكل يومي وسبب أهميته لك»، يمكنك الاستعانة بالإرشادات التالية :

#### 1. Title : العنوان

Give your essay an interesting title which makes people want to read it.

اكتب عنوانًا شيقًا يجذب الناس لقراءته.

#### 2. Introduction : المقدمة

Start with a question (which you answer in paragraph two).

Use semi-formal language.

ابدأ المقدمة بسؤال تُجيب عليه في الفقرة الرئيسية للموضوع.

#### 3. Main Body : الموضوع الرئيسي

Explain what the invention is and how long you have had it. Say how you use it and why it is so important for you.

وضح ماذا يكون هذا الاختراع ومنذ متى وأنت تستخدمه وكيف تستخدمه ولماذا هو مهم بالنسبة إليك.

#### 4. Conclusion : الخاتمة

Explain who might find this invention useful and why you recommend it.

اذكر من قد يجد هذا الاختراع مفيدًا ولماذا توصي به.

### The tablet and the enjoyment of learning

Have you ever thought that learning will be enjoyable one day? I think that most older generations never thought of this idea. To them, learning was a large book, heaps of paper and long hours of study and suffering. However, modern technology has made learning a real fun. How has this happened? Digital devices: Smart phones and tablets have remarkable impact on teaching and learning process. Tablets provide students with great educational material and resources: documentaries, videos, films and more. Using tablets in schools has made a tremendous leap in our education system for both students and teachers. Students can download images, 3D pictures and videos about different topics in all subjects.

Using visual and audio effects makes learning not only easier but also more effective and fun as well. There are huge resources which students can choose from and share with their classmates. The role of the teacher has changed to be a facilitator and a guide to students. Teachers don't focus on introducing information to students but on how to help students develop their skills and do activities. A student can't do without his tablet which has his textbooks, notes and even tests. It connects students with the teachers, classmates and the whole world.

### 3 Writing

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

*“What you think about the role of robots in the future”*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



#### 4 الترجمة Translation

##### ● A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Education plays an effective role in building a citizen who is capable of facing challenges. Therefore, it is considered a human investment in all fields.

(أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. يلعب التعليم دوراً فعالاً في بناء المواطن القادر على مواجهة التحديات، لذا يُعدّ استثماراً بشرياً في كافة المجالات.
- b. يلعب التعليم دوراً طفيفاً في بناء المواطن القادر على مواجهة التحديات، لذا يُعدّ استثماراً بشرياً في كافة المجالات.
- c. يلعب التعليم دوراً فعالاً في بناء الوطن القادر على مواجهة التحديات، لذا يُعدّ استثماراً بشرياً في جُلّ المجالات.
- d. يلعب التعليم دوراً فعالاً في بناء المواطن القادر على مواجهة التحديات، لذا يُعدّ استثماراً بشرياً في مُعظم المجالات.

2. Innovation requires more creativity and more willingness to take risks than implementing of typical projects. To successfully realize innovation projects, a different mind-set is needed.

(الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. يتطلب الابتكار المزيد من المثابرة والمزيد من الاستعداد للمجازفة أكثر من تنفيذ المشاريع النمطية، وهناك حاجة إلى عقلية مختلفة لإنجاز مشاريع الابتكار بنجاح.
- b. يتطلب الابتكار المزيد من الإبداع والمزيد من الاستعداد للمجازفة أكثر من تنفيذ المشاريع النمطية، وهناك حاجة إلى مجال علمي مختلف لإنجاز مشاريع الابتكار بنجاح.
- c. يتطلب الابتكار المزيد من الإبداع والمزيد من الاستعداد للمجازفة أكثر من تنفيذ المشاريع النموذجية، وهناك حاجة إلى عقلية مختلفة لإنجاز مشاريع الابتكار بنجاح.
- d. يتطلب الابتكار المزيد من الإبداع والمزيد من الاستعداد للمجازفة أكثر من تنفيذ المشاريع النمطية، وهناك حاجة إلى عقلية مختلفة لإنجاز مشاريع الابتكار بنجاح.

##### ● B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

ا. إن سوق العمل ملى بالمنافسة الشديدة لنيل فرص العمل المتنوعة في كل المجالات، حيث تتطلب كل وظيفة مهارات محددة لا بد أن يتحلى بها الباحث عن الوظيفة.

(أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. The job market is full of strong competition to get various job opportunities in all fields. Each job requires specific skills that a job provider must have.
- b. The job market is full of weak competition to get various job opportunities in all fields. Each job requires specific skills that a job seeker must have.
- c. The job market is full of strong competition to get various job opportunities in all fields. Each job requires specific skills that a job seeker must have.
- d. The job market is full of strong composition to get various job opportunities in all fields. Each job requires specific skills that the job seeker must have.

٢. خلال السنوات القليلة القادمة سوف تعتمد الكثير من الوظائف على الذكاء الاصطناعي أكثر من اعتمادها على العنصر البشري.

- Over the next few years, many jobs will depend more on artificial intelligence than on the human element.
- Over the next few years, many jobs will depend more on artificial intelligence, then on the human element.
- Over the next few years, much jobs will depend more in artificial intelligent than on the human element.
- Over the next few years, many jobs will depend more on artificial intelligence than on the humane element.

### PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL للفائقين فقط

app = application

تُستخدم كلمة (app) كاختصار لكلمة (application) فقط عندما تعني (تطبيق أو برنامج إلكتروني):

- **app = application (n)** تطبيق إلكتروني (علي الكمبيوتر أو الهواتف الذكية)  
- Modern mobiles have a lot of **apps** (= applications).
- **application (n)** طلب التحاق (بوظيفة أو عضوية ...)  
- The company received hundreds of **applications** for the job. (**Not: apps**)
- **application (n)** تطبيق عملي (تنفيذ لفكرة)  
- The **application** of this plan needs enough time. (**Not: app**)
- **apply (for / to)(v)** يتقدم بطلب  
- I want to **apply** for this job.
- **apply (v)** يُطبّق فكرة أو خطة - يُنفذ  
- It is not easy to **apply** this idea because it costs too much money.
- **apply (to)(v)** ينطبق على  
- School rules **apply** to all students.

chat

- **chat (with / to / about) (v)** يتسامر (يتحدث مع شخص بشكل ودي)  
- Rokaya has been **chatting** with her friends for two hours.  
- The two men **chatted** about their childhood memories ذكريات الطفولة.
- **chat (with / to / about) (v)** يدرّش (يتحدث مع شخص عبر الإنترنت)  
- You waste too much time **chatting** with your friends online.
- **chat (with / to / about) (n)** دردشة - حديث ودي  
- Ayman had a short **chat** with Ashraf.



لاحظ التعبيرات والمثلزمات اللفظية التالية:

- have a chat يدرش
- call in for a chat يتصل للدرشة
- a little / a brief chat دردشة لفترة قصيرة
- an online chat دردشة علي الإنترنت

click

- **click (on) (v)** ينقر - يُخِث صوت طقطقة  
- If you **click** twice on a file or a folder, it opens.
- **click (n)** نقرة (علي الماوس أو أي زر)  
- You can open a file or folder with a double **click**.
- **click (n)** صوت طقطقة  
- When I heard the **click** of the lock القفل, I knew that the door was locked.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- at the click of a mouse بسرعة جداً / في غمضة عين
- shut / close with a click يُخِث صوت تكة عند القفل

navigate

- **navigate (v)** يحدد الطريق أو خط السير  
- In the past, the stars helped travellers to **navigate**.
- **navigate (v)** يفهم  
- This guide دليل will help you to **navigate** the subject.
- **navigate (v)** يُجر  
- The waves were high and it was difficult to **navigate**.
- **navigation (n)** الملاحة / السفر بحراً  
- **Navigation** needs a lot of experience and patience الصبر.
- **sat-nav = satellite navigation (n)** جهاز التجوال بالقمر الصناعي  
- This car has satellite **navigation**.
- **navigator (n)** ضابط الملاحة (ملاح - ريان - بحار)  
- He is a clever **navigator** who never gets lost.

link

- **link ... to / with (v)** يربط ... بـ  
- Love and respect **link** me **to / with** my friends.  
- This road **links** Aswan to Luxor.
- **link ... together (v)** يربط ... معاً  
- Love and respect **links** my friends and me **together**.
- **link / linkage (between ... and...) (n)** رابط / علاقة بين ... و ...  
- Love and respect are the **link / linkage** between my friends **and** me.
- **link (n)** رابط (الصفحة أو موقع علي الانترنت)  
- He sent me the **link** of his website.

## technology

## • technology (n)

التكنولوجيا (الآلات والمعدات و الأساليب التي تعتمد علي التطور العلمي والحاسوبي)

- Modern **technology** has made life easy.

- لاحظ أن كلمة (**technology**) لا تُعدّ، لكن يمكن استخدام (a piece of / pieces of) قبلها كلفظ تجزئة:

- The smart phone is a **piece of technology**.

- The smart phone and the GPS are **pieces of technology**.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية :

- information technology (IT) تكنولوجيا المعلومات

- advanced technology التكنولوجيا المتطورة

- digital technology التكنولوجيا الرقمية

- advances / developments in technology التطور التكنولوجي

## • technologist (n)

أخصائي / خبير تكنولوجيا

In our school, Mr Mohammed Omar is a real **technologist**.

## • technological (adj)

تكنولوجي - متعلق بالتكنولوجيا

Life has become faster thanks to **technological** development. بفضل

## Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

## • ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The front door locks with a low .....  
a. progress      b. invention      c. app      d. click
- I use my YouTube channel as a/an ..... for my ideas in life and work.  
a. robot      b. online      c. vehicle      d. tip
- The police are still ..... the suspects المُتَّهَمِينَ.  
a. recommending      b. admitting      c. chatting      d. quizzing
- He ..... this story. It has nothing to do with what really happened.  
a. invented      b. noticed      c. navigated      d. shared
- The offer ..... only to new members.  
a. blogs      b. develops      c. applies      d. shares

## Advanced Exercise on Language

## • ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I'd go if it were early, but it ..... very late indeed.  
a. had been      b. was      c. isn't      d. is
- I'd help if I .....  
a. had asked      b. were asked      c. am asked      d. asked
- They will build a new villa if .....  
a. needs      b. is needed      c. need      d. needed
- Were he ..... hard, he would succeed in the exam.  
a. study      b. studied      c. to study      d. studying
- Don't bother to ring me ..... it's important.  
a. if      b. unless      c. but for      d. in case



# Test on Unit 8

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه

التقييمات  
الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار الكتروني

## 1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "That voice on the phone sounds familiar." The antonyms for 'familiar' are ..... and ..... .

(أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. unknown      b. clear      c. known  
d. strong      e. strange

2. "The food tastes strange to me." The word 'strange' can be replaced by ..... .

(الدقهلية - السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٤)

- a. common      b. odd      c. familiar  
d. delicious      e. unusual

## 2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Old ..... cause more pollution because their engines don't burn petrol well.

(الجيزة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤)

- a. vehicles      b. software      c. GPS      d. Technology

2. Do you think ..... cars will solve the problem of petrol shortage ?

- a. race      b. hybrid  
c. fast      d. petrol-powered

3. Online learning has become ..... to students nowadays.

(الجيزة - الدقي ٢٠٢٤)

- a. similar      b. strange      c. unavailable      d. familiar

4. By just a few ..... on the mouse, you can buy what you want.

(أسيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤)

- a. clocks      b. clicks      c. cloaks      d. clauses

5. The ..... of the internet is the most important breakthrough in our lives.

(الإسكندرية - وسط الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. invention      b. discovery      c. prevention      d. exploration

6. Some migrating birds can ..... by the moon. They use the moon as a guide.

(الشرقية - بلبيس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. navigate      b. educate      c. nominate      d. calculate

7. If he passes the driving test, he ..... the driving license.

(الجيزة - الدقي ٢٠٢٤)

- a. gets      b. would get      c. will get      d. might get

8. If I spend too long on the computer, I usually ..... a headache.

- a. will get      b. would get      c. got      d. get

9. If he ..... rich, he would have a high-tech palace.

(الدقهلية - نبروه ٢٠٢٤)

- a. is      b. had been      c. had had      d. were



10. You will miss the lecture ..... you come on time. (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. if                      b. unless                      c. because                      d. in case of
11. They wouldn't have won ..... hard work and determination.  
 a. unless                      b. in case of                      c. in case                      d. without
12. Were she ..... the truth, I would help her. (البحيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. tells                      b. told                      c. telling                      d. to tell

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

A robot is a machine, but it is not just any machine. It is a **special** kind of machines that moves and follows instructions. The instructions come from a computer. As it is a machine, it does not make mistakes or get tired. It never complains unless you tell it to!

Robots are all around us. Some robots are used to make things. For example, robots can help make cars. Some robots are used to explore dangerous places such as volcanoes. Some robots are used to clean things. These robots can help vacuum your house. Some robots can even recognise words. They can be used to help answer telephone calls. Some robots look like humans, but most robots do not. Most robots just look like machines.

In the future, we will have even more robots. They will do things that we cannot do, that we don't want to do or that are too dangerous for us. Robots will help us fight fires, explore other planets, fight sickness, and discover things. They will help make life better.

1. According to the passage, the antonym of "**special**" is '.....'.  
 a. normal                      b. expensive                      c. perfect                      d. tired
2. The purpose of the second paragraph is to .....  
 a. show how easy it is to make a robot  
 b. tell what a robot is  
 c. describe the things a robot can do  
 d. explain the difference between a robot and a machine
3. The best use of a robot in the future is to help .....  
 a. fight diseases                      b. explore dangerous places  
 c. vacuum your house                      d. answer telephone calls
4. The author of this passage feels that robots are .....  
 a. old                      b. dangerous                      c. helpful                      d. confusing
5. In the future, robots may not be able to .....  
 a. explore planets                      b. discover things  
 c. have feelings like humans                      d. fight sickness



6. Robots can be useful at a house by .....

- a. cleaning it
- b. exploring new places
- c. building new house
- d. making new cars

7. Robots never complain as they are .....

- a. useful
- b. confusing
- c. helpful
- d. machines

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:**

The internet is the quickest and best means of communication for millions. However, it should be used wisely and carefully to avoid its demerits.

(أسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. إن الإنترنت هو أسرع وأفضل وسيلة تواصل للملايين، ومع ذلك يجب استخدامه بحكمة وحذر لتجنب عيوبه.
- b. إن الإنترنت هو أسرع وأرخص وسيلة تواصل للملايين، ومع ذلك يجب استخدامه بحكمة وحذر لتجنب عيوبه.
- c. إن الإنترنت هو أسرع وأفضل وسيلة تواصل للملايين، ومع ذلك يجب استخدامه بحكمة وحذر لتجنب عيوبه.
- d. إن الإنترنت هو أسرع وأفضل وسيلة تواصل للملايين، ومع ذلك يجب استخدامه بحكمة وحذر للحد من عيوبه.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

التكنولوجيا الحديثة سلاح ذو حدين، فهي تسهم في تقدم المجتمعات وفي نفس الوقت يمكن أن تدمرها.

(البحيرة - الدلتا ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Modern technology is a double-edged gun as it contributes to the societies' progress. At the same time, it can destroy them.
- b. Modern technology is a double-edged weapon as it contributes to the societies' progress. At the same time, it can destroy them.
- c. Modern technology is a double-edged weapon as it contributes to the societies' process. At the same time, it can destroy them.
- d. Modern technology is a destructive weapon as it contributes to the societies' progress. At the same time, it can destroy them.

5. **Answer the following questions:**

1. Do you think Captain Smollet is a good Captian ? Why/Why not ?

.....

2. Jim proved to be brave. Show how.

(القاهرة - الوايلي ٢٠٢٤)

.....

3. Why do you think Dr Livesey wanted to find Ben Gun ?

.....

6. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:**

***"From your own point of view, what is the most useful invention? Why?"***

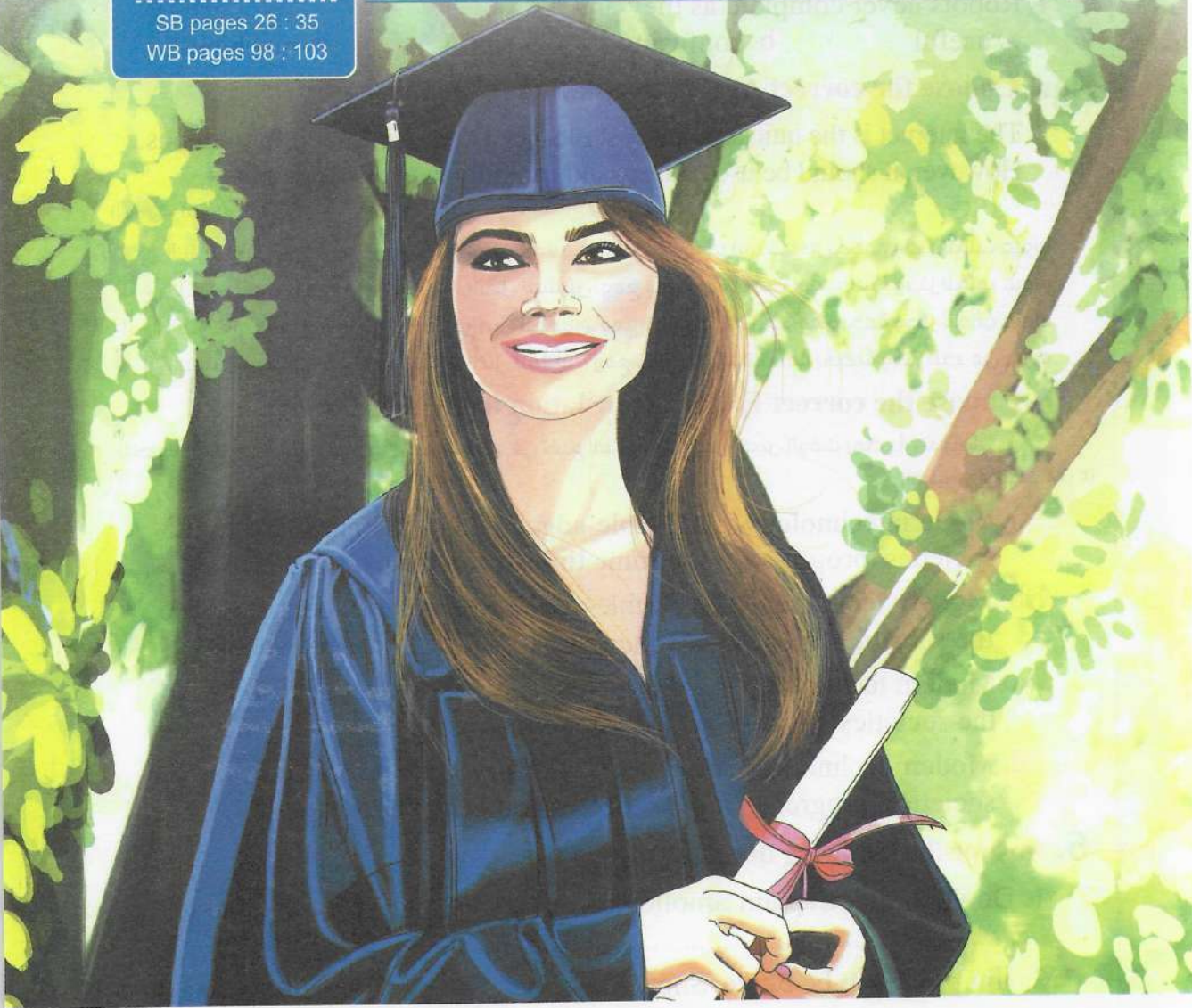
.....  
.....  
.....



# UNIT 9

SB pages 26 : 35  
WB pages 98 : 103

## A good education



### Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- ★ **Reading** : A text about Charlotte Brontë and her novel Jane Eyre
- ★ **Writing** : A summary of Jane Eyre
- ★ **Listening** : A discussion on changing schools ; agreeing or disagreeing on an opinion
- ★ **Speaking** : Agreeing and disagreeing

- ★ **Language** : Past simple passive; Past simple and past perfect (Active)
- ★ **Communication** : Supporting your opinion with reasons
- ★ **Life Skills** : Different ways of learning





PART I

VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

boarding school(n)	مدرسة داخلية	housekeeper(n)	مديرة منزل
bully(ied) (n - v)	متنمر - بلطجي - يتنمر	orphan(ed) (n - v)	يتيم - يصبح يتيم
bullying(n)	البلطجة - التنمر	school(ed) (v)	يُدرَّب - يُعلَّم
cruel(adj)	قاسي	schooling(n)	التعليم المدرسي
education(n)	التعليم	servant(n)	خادم
governess(n)	مُدرِّسة مُقيمة		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

advertise(d) (v)	يُعلن عن	headmaster(n)	الناظر
allow(ed) (v)	يسمح - يُمكن	honesty(n)	الأمانة
apply(ied) (v)	يتقدم بطلب التحاق	huge(adj)	ضخم - واسع
author(n)	مؤلف	importance(n)	أهمية
believe(d) (v)	يعتقد - يؤمن	improve(d) (v)	يُحسن - يتحسن
care(d) (v - n)	يهتم / يري / رعاية	kindness(n)	العطف - الطيبة
comfortable(adj)	مريح	level(n)	مُسْتَوِي
continue(d) (v)	يستمر	miss(ed) (v)	يفتقد - يفوته
earn(ed) (v)	يكسب مال	owner(n)	مالك / صاحب
employ(ed) (v)	يوظف - يُشغَل	previous(adj)	السابق
energy(n)	طاقة	quite(adv)	إلى حد ما
fight - fought(v)	يتشاجر مع - يقاتل	relation(n)	أحد الأقارب - علاقة
forget - forgot -	ينسى	school term(n)	فصل دراسي
forgotten (v)		secret (n - adj)	سِرّ - سري
friendly(adj)	ودود	strange (adj)	غريب
gardener(n)	بستاني	unkind(adj)	قاسي
hate(d) (v)	يكره	upset - upset (v - adj)	يُزعج / يضايق - منزعج
head teacher(n)	مدير المدرسة	wealthy (adj)	ثريّ - غني جداً

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
boarding school(n) مدرسة داخلية	a place where children live and study

<b>bullying(n)</b>	البلطجة	the use of strength القوة or power to frighten يُخيف or hurt someone who is weaker اضعف
<b>cruel(adj)</b>	قاسي	unkind and hurting others
<b>education(n)</b>	التعليم	the process عملية of teaching التدريس and learning التعلّم, usually at school, college / مدرسة عليا / كُلية, or university
<b>governess(n)</b>	مُدرّسة مُقيمة / مُربيّة	a woman who teaches children in their home
<b>housekeeper(n)</b>	مديرة منزل	a servant who looks after the whole house
<b>orphan(n)</b>	يتيم	a child whose parents are dead
<b>schooling(n)</b>	التعليم المدرسي	education at schools
<b>servant(n)</b>	خادم	a person who works for people in their house

### Exercises On Vocabulary

#### • Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Definitions

1. A woman who teaches children in their home is a ..... . (أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. servant                      b. housekeeper      c. governess              d. governor
2. A ..... school is a place where children live and study. (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. broadening              b. abroad              c. aboard                      d. boarding
3. A/An ..... is a person who works for people in their houses. (سوهاج - دار السلام ٢٠٢٤)  
a. governor                      b. orphan                      c. director                      d. servant
4. A/An ..... is a child whose parents are dead. (الشرقية - الصالحية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. patient                      b. thief                      c. orphan                      d. orphanage

#### 2 Key Vocabulary

5. Many students attended ..... school in England in the past. (أسيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤)  
a. bearing                      b. brooding                      c. breeding                      d. boarding
6. Rodayna is ..... in working under stress. (القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)  
a. applied                      b. schooled                      c. fired                      d. cared
7. Finding teaching at homes too hard, she gave up her job as a/an ..... in 2020. (القاهرة - القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. governess                      b. maid                      c. cleaner                      d. attendant



8. Our ..... manages our house very well, so we appreciate her work.

(القاهرة - المستقبل ٢٠٢٤)

- a. governesses      b. nurse      c. housekeeper      d. service

9. The old woman pays a young ..... to do the housework for her.

- a. governess      b. servant      c. tutor      d. actress

10. Through the new system, we all hope our children will get a good .....

(الجزيرة - كراسة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. cruelty      b. eduction      c. unemployment      d. advertisement

11. Parents shouldn't be ..... to their children.

(الدقهلية - بنى عبید ٢٠٢٤)

- a. kind      b. loyal      c. caring      d. cruel

12. There was a/an ..... beside the school who used to take all our money by force.

(الدقهلية - ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٤)

- a. bully      b. bullying      c. inspector      d. orphan

13. The six-year-old child is a/an ..... ; he's lost his parents in a terrible car accident.

(الاسكندرية - وسط الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. teenager      b. toddler      c. adult      d. orphan

14. My grandfather had only a few years of ....., however he was a great thinker.

- a. bullying      b. schooling      c. cruelty      d. unemployment

### 3 Important Vocabulary

15. Someone who writes a book is the ..... of that book.

(السيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. governess      b. author      c. solver      d. servant

16. Really, I ..... my family. I look forward to going back home.

(الاسكندرية - المنتزة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. fail      b. miss      c. apply      d. employ

17. He isn't ..... enough to buy that expensive car; it's really costly.

(السيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. health      b. wealthy      c. healthy      d. wealth

18. I felt very ..... when I knew that my application was rejected.

(الاسكندرية - الجمرک ٢٠٢٤)

- a. friendly      b. secret      c. upset      d. wealthy

19. Due to expansion, the factory started to ..... new people.

(الفيوم - ابشواى ٢٠٢٤)

- a. employ      b. achieve      c. discharge      d. apply

20. He was one of the people who ..... to change the law of old rents.

- a. achieved      b. campaigned      c. improved      d. inspired

(سوهاج - ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)

21. Why did you tell Amal about my illness? You just can't keep a ....., can you?

(القاهرة - الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)

- a. puzzle      b. mystery      c. secrete      d. secret

22. '.....' and 'relative' have one meaning in common. They both can mean a member of one's family.  
 a. Relationship    b. Relation    c. Relativity    d. Relating
23. I don't like your ..... remarks about your friend. You have really annoyed him.  
 a. kind    b. unkind    c. possible    d. impossible
24. My elder brother ..... about me very much.  
 a. saves    b. prefers    c. cares    d. earns
25. I think ..... is one of the best qualities of a good friend.  
 a. honesty    b. wealthy    c. equipment    d. research
26. Never ..... anybody to affect your opinion negatively.  
 a. advertise    b. apply    c. bully    d. allow
27. Don't ..... bullies. They have nothing to lose.  
 a. earn    b. fight    c. control    d. apply
28. I miss my ..... school very much. I learnt and had much fun there.  
 a. necessary    b. glad    c. previous    d. wealthy
29. No one can deny the ..... of education in everyone's life.  
 a. copy    b. conclusion    c. garden    d. importance
30. It is your ..... that makes the kids love you.  
 a. cruelty    b. bully    c. kindness    d. conclusion
31. People who ..... enough money do not need to borrow.  
 a. lose    b. earn    c. miss    d. prefer
32. Sports channels earn a lot of money from producers who ..... their products.  
 a. advertise    b. apply    c. bully    d. allow
33. I think you should ..... for this job.  
 a. fail    b. apply    c. miss    d. employ
34. It is the job of a/an ..... to look after plants and trees.  
 a. author    b. stranger    c. gardener    d. owner

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

<b>become</b>	friends with	يصبح صديقاً لـ	<b>lose</b>	a job	يفقد وظيفته
<b>break</b>	his back	ينكسر ظهره		touch with	يفقد التواصل مع
<b>do</b>	a course	يلتحق بدورة تدريبية		a match	يخسر مباراة
<b>fail</b>	a test	يُزسب في امتحان	<b>make</b>	... happy	يجعل ... سعيداً
	... warm	... يحافظ على دفء		friends	يصادق
<b>keep</b>	... under control	يُنقي ... تحت السيطرة	<b>start</b>	a fire	يتسبب في حريق



## 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
cruel	قاسي	unkind, savage, wicked
previous	سابق	former, earlier
servant	خادم	attendant, footman
servant	خادمة	attendant, maid,
wealthy	ثري	very rich, affluent

## 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
cruel	قاسي	friendly, gentle, merciful,	حنون - رحيم
		kind soft-hearted	
previous	سابق	later, following	لاحق - تالي
servant	خادم - خادمة	master, mistress	سيد - سيدة
wealthy	ثري	destitute, poor	مُعْدَم - فقير

## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

bully		
bully(v)	يَتَنَمَّر	- Never <b>bully</b> others.
bully(n)	بلطجي / مُتَنَمَّر	- Never be a <b>bully</b> .
bullying(n)	البلطجة	- <b>Bullying</b> is a crime.
cruel		
cruelty(n)	القسوة	- She doesn't like you because of your <b>cruelty</b> .
cruel(adj)	قاسي	- She doesn't like you because you are <b>cruel</b> to her.
cruelly(adv)	بقسوة	- She doesn't like you because you treat her <b>cruelly</b> .
education		
educate(v)	يُعَلِّم - يُرَبِّي	- Sama's parents <b>educated</b> her well.
education(n)	التعليم - التربية	- Sama had a good <b>education</b> .
educator(n)	مُعَلِّم	- My father is a good <b>educator</b> .
educated(adj)	مُتَعَلِّم	- Sama is a well- <b>educated</b> girl.
orphan		
orphan(v)	يُيْتِم / يصبح يتيمًا	- A lot of children were <b>orphaned</b> during the war.
orphan(n)	شخص يتيم	- The war left a lot of children as <b>orphans</b> .
orphanage(n)	ملجأ أيتام	- He was put in an <b>orphanage</b> .

school		
<b>school(v)</b>	يُدْرَس - يدرّب	- My grandfather was <b>schooled</b> for a few years.
<b>school(n)</b>	مدرسة - الدراسة	- My grandfather went to <b>school</b> for a few years.
<b>schooling(n)</b>	التعليم المدرسي	- My grandfather had a few years of <b>schooling</b> .

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

(be) right for	مناسب لـ	In fact,	في الحقيقة
cruel to	قاسي علي	instead of	بدلاً من
different from / to	مختلف عن	keep/ stay in touch with	يبقي على اتصال بـ
eight-year-old girl	فتاة تبلغ من العمر ثمان سنوات	lose touch with	تنقطع علاقته بـ
everyday/daily life	الحياة اليومية	online learning	التعلّم على الإنترنت
have lessons at home	يأخذ دروسه في البيت	see you soon	اراك قريباً
I am glad to say	يسعدني أن أقول		

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

advertise for	يُعلن عن حاجته لـ	move to	ينتقل إلي
allow ... to	يسمح لـ ... بـ	refer to	يشير إلي - ينوّه عن
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	return to	يعود إلي
chat with	يُدرّش مع	save ... from	ينقذ ... من
come round	يُزور	send ... away	يُبعّد ... - يُطرّد
continue with	يستمر في القيام بـ	speak to	يتحدّث إلي / مع
decide to	يقرر أن	work for	يعمل لدي
fight with	يتقاتل / يتشاجر مع	work with	يعمل مع
live with	يسكن مع		

## 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

### orphan / orphanage

#### • orphan (n)

- We must help **orphans** because they do not have parents to look after them.

يتيم (طفل فقد والديه)

#### • orphan (v)

- Many children were **orphaned** during the war.

يُتيم

#### • orphanage (n)

- Oliver spent his childhood in an **orphanage**.

ملجأ أيتام



## Exercises On Vocabulary Study

- ☆ **MRQ** : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. The word "....." and "....." are synonymous with 'servant'

(الاسكندرية - العجمي ٢٠٢٤)

- a. master                      b. mistress                      c. owner  
d. attendant                      e. maid

2. "I advised Ali not to be cruel to animals." The antonyms of 'cruel' are .....

(الجيزة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤)

- a. soft-hearted                      b. unkind                      c. bad  
d. savage                      e. kind

3. "Parents are always kind to their children." The antonyms of the word 'kind' are .....

(الغربية - شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤)

- a. honest                      b. dishonest                      c. merciless  
d. foolish                      e. cruel

4. "I didn't like our team last match; the previous one was much better." The synonyms of the word 'previous' are ..... and .....

(الاسماعيلية - التل الكبير ٢٠٢٤)

- a. after                      b. earlier                      c. later  
d. former                      e. next

5. He was very ....., he owned a lot of money.

(أسيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤)

- a. wealth                      b. wealthy                      c. riches  
d. enrich                      e. rich

6. The young man works ..... his father, so he is proud of him.

(أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. in                      b. for                      c. with  
d. at                      e. on

7. The argument of kids is considered one of the problems of ..... life.

(أسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. daily                      b. diary                      c. every day  
d. everyday                      e. dairy

8. "She is really a rich woman." The antonym of the word 'rich' is .....

(البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. healthy                      b. poor                      c. wealthy  
d. destitute                      e. famous

9. I always encourage my friends to ..... in touch with each other.

(الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٤)

- a. have                      b. do                      c. keep  
d. lose                      e. stay

- ☆ **MCQ** : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To stop having contact with someone means to ..... with them.

(أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. make friends                      b. lose touch                      c. keep in touch                      d. live

2. He ..... his job because he was always late and negligent. (الدقهلية - نبروه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. missed b. lost c. gained d. got
3. I always try to keep in touch ..... my relatives. (الجيزة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. in b. with c. on d. at
4. The new software I found out about was ..... on TV. (أسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. advertised b. announced c. replied d. owned
5. When one moves to a new city, it's not easy to ..... new friends. (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)  
a. make b. gain c. earn d. do
6. A cigarette end ..... the fire.  
a. lost b. started c. became d. broke
7. A clever student never ..... a test.  
a. builds b. messes c. loses d. fails
8. .... includes learning different subjects in addition to doing activities.  
a. A school b. Schools c. Schooled d. Schooling
9. My son started ..... last September.  
a. school b. schools c. schooled d. schooler
10. He has ..... the horse and you can now ride it safely.  
a. school b. schools c. schooled d. schooling
11. I want to take ..... the school football competition.  
a. part b. part in c. place d. place in
12. All my friends went ..... my opinion.  
a. along with b. a long with c. on d. up
13. War has ..... a lot of children.  
a. orphan b. orphans c. orphanage d. orphaned

## PART III

## READING &amp; LISTENING

## 1 Reading Texts

Lesson 1 SB page 26

Jane Eyre

Charlotte Brontë was born in England in 1816. She and her two sisters all became famous **authors**<sup>(1)</sup>. Charlotte Brontë's most famous book is Jane Eyre. It was written in 1847.

Jane Eyre was an **orphan**<sup>(2)</sup> who lived with her cousins and her **wealthy**<sup>(3)</sup> aunt, Mrs Reed.



(1) مؤلفين

(2) يتيم

(3) ثري - غني جداً



The family was **unkind**<sup>(4)</sup> and they did not want Jane to live with them.

Jane was sent **away**<sup>(5)</sup> to school. Jane was happy to go to Lowood School, but the **owner**<sup>(6)</sup>, Mr Brocklehurst, was very **cruel**<sup>(7)</sup>, so the students lived unhappy lives.

Finally, cruel Mr Brocklehurst was told to leave the school. Six years later, Jane became a teacher at Lowood School. After two years, Jane **decided**<sup>(8)</sup> to **apply**<sup>(9)</sup> for a job as a **governess**<sup>(10)</sup>. Governesses were often **employed**<sup>(11)</sup> by **rich**<sup>(12)</sup> families. She started to teach a young **French**<sup>(13)</sup> girl called Adèle at a big house called Thornfield Hall. The owner of the house was Mr Rochester. Jane enjoyed her new job and became friends with Mrs Fairfax, the kind **housekeeper**<sup>(14)</sup>.

One night, there was a **fire**<sup>(15)</sup> at Thornfield Hall. Jane **saved**<sup>(16)</sup> Mr Rochester from the fire. He said that the fire was started by a **servant**<sup>(17)</sup> called Grace, but Grace did not **lose**<sup>(18)</sup> her job. Jane did not understand, but she thought that there was a **secret**<sup>(19)</sup> in the house. Jane decided to leave Thornfield Hall, but she could not forget it.

(4) قاسى

(5) بعيداً

(6) مالك / صاحب

(7) قاسى

(8) يقرر

(9) يتقدم بطلب التحاق

(10) مُدرّسة مُقيمة - مُرَبّية

(11) يوظّف - يُشغّل

(12) غنيّ - ميسور الحال

(13) فرنسي

(14) مديرة منزل

(15) حريق

(16) يُنقّذ

(17) خادم

(18) يفقد - يخسر

(19) سِرّ - سِريّة

## Dear Ellen,

## Lesson 1 WB page 98

I told you some time ago that I wanted to get a good job. I am **glad**<sup>(1)</sup> to say that I have found one as governess and I am **quite**<sup>(2)</sup> happy.



(1) سعيد

(2) إلى حد ما

(3) كبير

(4) مُربّح

(5) حدائق

(6) ضخم - واسع

(7) يكسب

(8) السابق

(9) ودود

(10) طاقة

(11) نَحْكُم - سيطرة

(12) يستمر

(13) احترام - تحية

The house is not very **large**<sup>(3)</sup> but it is very **comfortable**<sup>(4)</sup> and the **gardens**<sup>(5)</sup> are **huge**<sup>(6)</sup>. Although I **earn**<sup>(7)</sup> less money than in my **previous**<sup>(8)</sup> job, I am working with kind, **friendly**<sup>(9)</sup> people. I have two pupils : an eight-year-old girl and a six-year-old boy.

My job as a governess can be very difficult because children have so much **energy**<sup>(10)</sup>. I just hope I will not become ill trying to keep them under **control**<sup>(11)</sup> and make them happy.

Well, I must **continue**<sup>(12)</sup> with my work. I hope to see you soon.

Kind **regards**<sup>(13)</sup>,

Charlotte

Before Mrs Reed **allowed**<sup>(1)</sup> Jane to leave the room, Jane had become ill. A doctor had visited Jane before and told Mrs Reed that it would be better if Jane went to live at a **nearby**<sup>(2)</sup> school.

The girls were cold at the school because the **head teacher**<sup>(3)</sup> had **spent**<sup>(4)</sup> no money to keep it **warm**<sup>(5)</sup>.

After Jane **advertised**<sup>(6)</sup> for a job in a newspaper, she **received**<sup>(7)</sup> a **reply**<sup>(8)</sup>.

- (1) يسمح  
(2) قريب / مجاور  
(3) مدير المدرسة  
(4) يُنفق  
(5) دافئ  
(6) يُغْلِن عن  
(7) يتلقى / يتسلم  
(8) رد

## 2 Listening Texts

**Dareen** : Dad, I don't want to **change**<sup>(1)</sup> schools. I want to go to school with my friends.

**Father** : It's not so bad, Dareen. You know, my family used to travel, and I was taken to lots of different countries. So, I'd been to lot of different schools before we **came back to**<sup>(2)</sup> Egypt. You can **make new friends**<sup>(3)</sup> at a different school.

**Dareen** : I like my friends at my school now.

**Father** : It is easy to **keep in touch with**<sup>(4)</sup> your friends. I always see you on your phone. I **lost touch with**<sup>(5)</sup> the people I'd gone to school with.

**Mother** : If you don't change school, maybe you can do an online **course**<sup>(6)</sup>. Some **extra**<sup>(7)</sup> lessons will be helpful. Mona's mother said that Mona had had lots of problems in school before she started having extra lessons.

And they say some of these online courses are **fantastic**<sup>(8)</sup>. They can understand what your **level**<sup>(9)</sup> is and give you work that's just right for you. **In fact**<sup>(10)</sup>, you were given a new computer to help you study.

**Father** : And you can chat with other students online, too. Just like you do at school.

**Mother** : Mona's mother says Mona has really improved with so much help from her online teachers.

**Dareen** : But, Mum, I learn a lot at school now. I only **failed**<sup>(11)</sup> the test because I'd been ill when I took it.

**Father** : Ok. Ok. We'll leave things the way they are for now and then we can **discuss**<sup>(12)</sup> it again after your exams **at the end of**<sup>(13)</sup> the year.

**Dareen** : Ok. Thank you.

- (1) يُغَيِّر  
(2) يعود إلى  
(3) يكون أصدقاء جدد  
(4) يتصل بـ  
(5) يفقد الاتصال بـ  
(6) دورة تدريبية  
(7) إضافي - زائد  
(8) رائع  
(9) مستوى  
(10) في الحقيقة  
(11) يرسب - يفشل  
(12) يناقش  
(13) في نهاية



**Teacher :** We don't know much about Jane's early school days, but I **imagine**<sup>(1)</sup> she had gone to school before she moved to her aunt's house, as we know she could read. We also know that she was sent to a **boarding school**<sup>(2)</sup> after she had **upset**<sup>(3)</sup> Mrs Reed and her cousin John.

(1) يتخيل

(2) مدرسة داخلية

(3) مفرج

(4) مربية - مدرسة مقيمة

(5) ظهر - خلف

(6) يزور في بيته

**Omar :** What's a boarding school ?

**Teacher :** It's a school where children live as well as study. In the past, there were boarding schools for rich children and ones like Lowood House for children who weren't rich. And of course some rich children were taught at home. **Governesses**<sup>(4)</sup>, like Jane, were employed to teach them.

**Ali :** My cousin, Kamal, had lessons at home.

**Teacher :** Did he, Ali ? Why was that ?

**Ali :** He had to stay at home for six months because he'd broken his **back**<sup>(5)</sup> when the school term started. He wanted to go to school, but he'd already made lots of friends and they **came round**<sup>(6)</sup> to see him, so it wasn't too bad.

**Teacher :** Did a teacher come to his house every day ?

**Ali :** No. He was sent an email every day with the work that his friends were doing in school, but my aunt helped him when he couldn't understand it.

**Karim :** My name is Karim and I love to read. I had read another one of Charlotte Brontë's books, called *Villette*, before I decided to buy a **copy**<sup>(1)</sup> of Jane Eyre.

(1) نسخة

(2) محلي

(3) رف

(4) مالك

(5) يفسر - يوضح

(6) لا شيء

They didn't have it in my **local**<sup>(2)</sup> bookshop, so I kept going back to check.

Finally, I saw it on the **shelf**<sup>(3)</sup> but then an old man took it.

I spoke to the **owner**<sup>(4)</sup> of the bookshop and I **explained**<sup>(5)</sup> that I had waited three weeks for the book to arrive.

He said there was **nothing**<sup>(6)</sup> he could do, but then I heard someone laughing.

The old man said he had lost his copy of the book many years ago, before I was born, so he didn't mind **waiting a little longer** <sup>(7)</sup>.

(7) ينتظر لفترة أطول قليلاً

He let me buy it and when I got home, I knew I had been very lucky.

## PART IV LANGUAGE

### Past simple and past perfect (active & passive)

#### 1 The Past Simple Tense : الزمن الماضي البسيط :

١ يتكون الماضي البسيط فى الجمل الخبرية المبينة للمعلوم من :

Subject الفاعل + ..... التصريف الثانى للفعل

ex. - Ahmed **visited** his friends yesterday. - They **saw** a show last night.

٢ عند النفى :

Subject الفاعل + **didn't + inf. ....**

ex. - They **didn't watch** the match yesterday.  
- Omar **didn't do** his homework.

٢ عند الاستفهام بـ «هل» :

**Did + subject** الفاعل + **inf. ....?**

ex. - **Did** you **tidy** your room ? - Yes, I did.  
- **Did** Ali **do** his homework ? - No, he didn't.

٤ عند الاستفهام بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

**Question word** أداة استفهام + **did/didn't + subject + inf. ....?**

ex. - Where **did** you **watch** the match ? - Why **didn't** you **stay** at a hotel ?

٥ يتحول زمن الماضي البسيط لصيغة المبني للمجهول باستخدام الصيغة التالية :

**Object** مفعول + **was/were + p.p. ....**

ex. - They **watched** a film last night. (معلوم)  
- A film **was watched** last night (by them). (مجهول)

٦ كلمات وتعابير زمنية تستخدم فى الجمل لتشير إلى الماضي :

— ذات مرة **once** — منذ **ago** — الماضي ... **last** — أمس **yesterday**  
— فى الماضي **in the past** — ذات يوم مضى **the other day** — ذات مرة **once upon a time**  
— فى 2011 ... **etc.** — فيما سبق **previously** — قديما **in ancient times**

ex. - I **met** some old friends in the club **the other day**.  
- Mr Mohammed **moved** to his new house **two weeks ago**.



لاحظ استخدام ظروف التكرار التالية في زمن الماضي :

always – usually – sometimes – often – never ... etc.

ex. - Sama always got up early when she was a student.

### Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ إذا كان الفعل الأساسي (was / were) لا نستخدم (did / didn't) في النفي والسؤال.

- He was at school yesterday. (إثبات)
- He wasn't at school yesterday. (نفي)
- Was he at school yesterday? (سؤال بـ هل)
- Where was he yesterday? (سؤال بـ أداة استفهام)

٢ إذا كان الفعل الأساسي (had) نستخدم معه (did) كفعل مساعد في النفي أو السؤال:

- She had lunch at two o'clock. (إثبات)
- She didn't have lunch at two o'clock. (نفي)
- Did she have lunch at two o'clock? (سؤال بـ هل)
- When did she have lunch? (سؤال بـ أداة استفهام)

### Uses استخدامات

١ التعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي :

- ex. - I visited my grandmother last Friday.
- My father built this house ten years ago.

٢ سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت في الماضي :

- ex. - My team played well yesterday. The players were in top form.
- They entertained the fans. My team scored four goals.

٣ بعد (if) في الحالة الشرطية الثانية :

- ex. - If I studied hard, I'd pass this exam.

### Past Habits :

### عادات الماضي :

١ يمكن استخدام الصيغ التالية للتعبير عن عادات الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر :

1. Subj. + used to إعتاد أن + inf. ....

ex. - He used to swim in the sea.

2. It was + someone's صفة ملكية / + habit عادة + to + inf. ....

ex. - It was his habit to swim in the sea.

٢ يمكن استخدام ( Subj. + was / were + used to + n. / inf. + ing )

للتعبير عن أن شيء ما كان معتادًا بالنسبة للفاعل :

- ex. - They were used to working in the sun.
- I was used to eating salty food.

٣ يمكن استخدام ( Subj. + got / became / grew + used to + n. / inf. + ing ) للتعبير عن التعود

ex. - I got used to the freezing weather in Canada.  
- I became used to working on a farm.

## 2 The Past Perfect simple : زمن الماضي التام البسيط :

١ يتكون زمن الماضي التام البسيط من :

Subject فاعل + had + p.p. ....

ex. I had studied English before I travelled to New York.

٢ عند النفي :

Subject فاعل + hadn't + p.p. ....

ex. They hadn't watched the match before they went shopping.

٣ عند الاستفهام بـ «هل» :

Had + subject فاعل + p.p. ....?

ex. Had Soha tidied her room before she went to school ?  
- Yes, she had. - No, she hadn't.

٤ عند الاستفهام بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + had + subject + p.p. ....?

ex. What had happened before you phoned the police ?

٥ عند تحويل زمن الماضي التام لصيغة المبني المجهول نستخدم :

Object نائب الفاعل + had been + p.p. ....

ex. English had been studied before I travelled to New York.

## Uses استخدامات

١ حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي (لتوضيح أيهما حدث أولاً) :

ex. When I had sent the email, I turned off the computer.

٢ حدث تم قبل وقت محدد في الماضي وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم تعبيرات مثل :

تعبير زمني دال على الماضي + ( في مثل هذا الوقت / before / this time / by بحلول )

ex. By midnight, my children had gone to bed.

٣ يمكن استخدام ( since / for / just / already ) مع الماضي التام وذلك في سياق التعبير عن أحداث ماضية :

ex. We had lived there since I was born. (We left our old flat last year.)

٤ يمكن استخدام الماضي التام مع روابط السبب و النتيجة والتناقض للتعبير عن الحدث الأول :

ex. He looked very tired because he had worked hard for a week.



## ملحظات هامة Important Notes

- 1 في اللحظة التي **The moment** / عندما **When** / بمجرد أن **As soon as** / **After** / **Once** + جملة ماضى بسيط + جملة ماضى تام

- After she **had arrived** home, she **phoned** me.

- 2 جملة ماضى بسيط + **(inf. + ing)** / **On** + **After**

- After/ On **arriving** home, she **phoned** me.

- 3 جملة ماضى بسيط + **... + p.p.** / **Having**

- **Having arrived** home, she **phoned** me.

- 4 جملة ماضى تام + جملة ماضى بسيط + **When** / **By the time** / **Before**

- Before she **phoned** me, she **had arrived** home.

- 5 جملة ماضى تام + **(inf. + ing)** / **Before** + **noun**

- Before **phoning** me, she **had arrived** home.

- 6 جملة ماضى تام + حتى **till** / **until** + جملة ماضى بسيط غالبًا ما تكون منفية

- She **didn't phone** me until she **had arrived** home.

## Remember

1 الماضى البسيط يمكن أن يحل محل الماضى التام مع بعض الروابط السابقة و إن كان استخدام الماضى التام مع الحدث الأول أكثر دقة:

- I **had met** Omar last Monday before he **travelled** to London. (✓)  
- I **met** Omar last Monday before he **travelled** to London. (✓)

2 لاحظ أن :

### • After = Before that

- After I **had done** the shopping, I **went** home.  
= I **went** home. Before that, I **had done** the shopping.

### • Before = After that

- Before I **went** home, I **had done** the shopping.  
= I **had done** the shopping. After that, I **went** home.

## ملحظات للناطقين Notes for Advanced level

1 لاحظ استخدام الماضى التام مع الظروف التالية بمعنى (لم يكد ..... حتى) :

- **Subj. + had + no sooner + p.p. .... + than** + جملة ماضى بسيط  
= **Subj. + had + hardly / scarcely + p.p. .... + when** + جملة ماضى بسيط

- She **had no sooner arrived** home **than** she **phoned** me.  
- She **had hardly arrived** home **when** she **phoned** me.

تتقدم (had) على الفاعل عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ (No sooner, Hardly, Scarcely) :

- No sooner + had + subj. + p.p. ....+ than + جملة ماضى بسيط  
= Hardly / Scarcely + had + subj. + p.p. .... + when + جملة ماضى بسيط

- No sooner had she arrived home than she phoned me.
- Hardly had she arrived home when she phoned me.

٢ الجملة التي تبدأ بأحد الظروف المنفية

(never / not until / not since / only after / only when / only by / etc ...)

يتقدم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل فى الجملة الرئيسية:

- She didn't phone me until she had arrived home.
- Not until she had arrived home did she phone me.

It was only when } ماضى بسيط + that + ماضى تام  
It wasn't until }

٣ لاحظ :

- It was only when I had finished my work that you called me.
- It wasn't until I had finished my work that you called me.

٤ لاحظ استخدام الصيغ التالية :

- جملة رئيسية + جملة ثانوية + after / before / when / while / because
- جملة ثانوية + جملة رئيسية + (inf. + ing)
- Having + p.p. + ... (مبنى للمعلوم)
- Having + been + p.p. + ... (مبنى للمجهول)
- After I had repaired my laptop, it worked well. (معلوم)
- Repairing my laptop, it worked well. (معلوم)
- Having repaired my laptop, it worked well. (معلوم)
- Having been repaired, my laptop worked well. (مجهول)

## Exercises On Language

● Apply

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Getting started : Check what you have learnt

- These interesting stories ..... published many years ago. (الأقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)  
a. have                      b. had been                      c. had                      d. were
- I ..... by my teacher last week. (الجيزة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. rewarded                      b. reward                      c. was rewarded                      d. rewarding
- After she ..... the book, she wanted to see the film. (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. is reading                      b. was reading                      c. has read                      d. had read



4. I didn't answer the question until I ..... it well. (الشرقية - الصالحية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. had read      b. have read      c. will read      d. reads
5. I remembered I ..... a TV programme about online learning last week. (أسوان - كوم أمبو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. watch      b. watching      c. was watched      d. had watched
6. The bus ..... when I arrived at the station, so I missed it. (الجيزة - كرداسة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. had left      b. has left      c. left      d. leaves
7. .... at the cinema? (الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. Does that film watch      b. Did the film watch  
 c. Has that film watched      d. Was the film watched
8. It was my first time in an airplane. I was very nervous because I ..... before. (الأقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. haven't flown      b. don't fly      c. hadn't flown      d. wasn't flying
9. By the time lunch ....., the guests had arrived! (الاسكندرية - وسط الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. was preparing      b. was prepared  
 c. had been prepared      d. prepared
10. After the boy ....., the doctor asked him to have some rest and take his medicine regularly. (الدقهلية - نبروه ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. had examined      b. had been examined  
 c. examining      d. a & b
11. Where ..... the concert held ? I heard it looked fantastic. (الغربية - سمود ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. had      b. is      c. has      d. was
12. He answered the exam after ..... the questions carefully. (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. reading      b. had been read      c. read      d. a & b
13. He ..... a solution to the problem until we had discussed it. (أسيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. hadn't reached      b. hasn't reached  
 c. reaches      d. didn't reach
14. After he got home, he found out that he ..... his bag in the metro. (الدقهلية - أجا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. leaving      b. has left      c. was left      d. had left
15. My uncle didn't remember the promise he ..... made. (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. was      b. has      c. had      d. had been
16. After Ahmed ..... out, it ..... to rain heavily. (الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. went/had started      b. go/started  
 c. had gone/started      d. will go/has started

17. After he ..... his ex-manager, his face looked pale. He always hates meeting him.  
a. is seen      b. has seen      c. saw      d. had been seen
18. This company ..... 10 years ago. It employs around 300 youths.  
a. founds      b. founding      c. was founded      d. is found
19. As soon as the surgeon examined the patient, he ..... to operate on him. (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)  
a. had decided      b. decided      c. decides      d. will decide
20. .... bought a new bag, I threw the old one away. (الدقهلية - ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٤)  
a. After      b. Having      c. Being      d. Had
21. .... had he arrived than he started talking about leaving. (أسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. No sooner      b. Before      c. After      d. Hardly
22. No sooner had we heard the noise ..... we rushed to the balcony. (الاسكندرية - الجمر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. than      b. that      c. then      d. thus
23. No sooner ..... Maryam taken the medicine than she began to feel better. (السيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. has      b. was      c. had      d. is
24. .... getting up, I phoned my cousin to ask about my uncle's health. (الدقهلية - أجا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. On      b. Before      c. While      d. Having
25. Having ..... the good news, I hurried to tell my family. (الاسكندرية - العجمي ٢٠٢٤)  
a. received      b. receiving      c. had received      d. have received
26. It was only ..... the boy had broken the window that he ran away.  
a. before      b. when      c. while      d. on
27. Lujain had eaten a sandwich. ...., she drank some water. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. Before      b. Before that      c. After      d. After that
28. On ..... at my office, I opened all the windows. (الاسكندرية - الجمر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. arrive      b. arrived      c. arrives      d. arriving
29. The camera didn't work ..... Suzy had damaged it. (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. till      b. until      c. as      d. before

## 2 Check your understanding

30. "When I went to the cinema, the film had started." This means I .....  
a. watched all the film      b. missed part of the film  
c. didn't watch the film      d. first arrived, then the film started

(البحيرة - إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٤)





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

appreciate(d) (v)	يُقدَّر / يُقَدَّر	so-called(adj)	المزعوم - المدعو
fail(ed) (v)	يفشل	solver(n)	خلال المشاكل
failure(n)	الفشل	success(n)	النجاح
home-schooled(n)	مُتعلِّم من المنزل		

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

ability(n)	القدرة	explain(ed) (v)	يشرح / يوضِّح
artist(n)	فنان	feeling(n)	شعور
break(n)	استراحة - فاصل	imagination(n)	الخيال
brilliant(adj)	رائع - ذكي	instead(adv)	بدلاً من ذلك
compare(d) (v)	يقارن	keen(adj)	حريص - متحمِّس / متلهف
conclusion(n)	استنتاج - خلاصة	knowledge(n)	المعرفة
confidence(n)	الثقة	laugh(ed) (v)	يضحك
copy(ied) (n - v)	نُسخة - ينسخ	lose – lost – lost (v)	يفقد - يخسر
critical(adj)	نقديّ - خرج	mind(ed) (v)	يمنع - يبالي
description(n)	وَصْف	musician(adj)	موسيقيار
discuss(ed) (v)	يناقش	otherwise(adv)	وإلا
electrician(n)	فني كهرباء	practical(adj)	عملي
engine(n)	مُحرِّك	practise(d) (v)	يمارس - يتدرب
engineering(n - adj)	الهندسة - هندسيّ	serious(adj)	جاد - خطير
equipment(n)	مُعدات	suppose(d) (v)	يفترض
especially(adv)	خصوصاً	terrible(adj)	فظيع
experiment(n)	تجربة معملية	thinking(n)	التفكير
expert(n - adj)	خبير		

### Exercises On Vocabulary

#### • Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Key Vocabulary

1. I always ..... what my parents do to make us happy and successful

(الدقهلية - آجا ٢٤ - ٢٠٢٤)

- a. appropriate      b. associate      c. appreciate      d. communicate

2. Their trade lost a lot; we don't know the cause of their .....

(الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. success      b. failure      c. progress      d. achievement

3. Winning the world cup is a remarkable .....

- a. disappointment      b. loss      c. success      d. failure

4. I went to see the playwright's ..... master piece, but I was disappointed by it.

(بورسعيد - جنوب بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤)

- a. so-cold      b. so-hot      c. too-cold      d. so-called

5. The thieves could ..... away from the police after stealing the money.

(الغربية - شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤)

- a. get      b. arrest      c. run      d. stop

6. Problem ..... are usually people who have social intelligence.

- a. servants      b. bullies      c. solvers      d. relatives

7. "If you bully your schoolmates again, you will be sent out of this school." In this sentence, 'bully' is a/an .....

- a. noun      b. verb      c. adjective      d. adverb

8. You'll surely ..... in everything unless you stop wasting your time.

- a. fail      b. apply      c. miss      d. employ

9. .... students miss making friends with their peers أقران.

- a. So-called      b. Home-schooled      c. Critical      d. Brilliant

## 2 Important Vocabulary

10. He was very annoyed to put himself in such a ..... situation by making that silly mistake.

(الدقهلية - ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٤)

- a. practical      b. financial      c. critical      d. funny

11. The teacher caught two students ..... the answers out of the book.

- a. chatting      b. reading      c. copying      d. replying

12. Some people think that it's cruel to do ..... on animals. (الغربية - سمود ٢٠٢٣)

- a. experience      b. experiments      c. feelings      d. comments

13. The ..... comes at the end of an essay to summarise it. (اسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٣)

- a. introduction      b. body      c. conclusion      d. draft

14. The ..... told me that the wires were old and needed to be changed.

- a. blacksmith      b. electrician      c. politician      d. carpenter

15. Pollution is a ..... problem that needs quick solutions.

- a. boarding      b. serious      c. secret      d. nearby

16. Your ..... in me is something I am very proud of.

- a. ability      b. imagination      c. knowledge      d. confidence

17. Applicants who have ..... experience will be employed.

- a. practical      b. secret      c. nearby      d. critical

18. I have to go now, ..... I'll miss my flight.

- a. especially      b. otherwise      c. opposite      d. instead



19. As an expert in farming, he has a lot of ..... about plants.  
 a. ability                      b. imagination      c. knowledge      d. confidence
20. .... students always want to learn new things.  
 a. Friendly                      b. Keen                      c. Comfortable      d. Critical
21. It is better to ..... prices on different websites before making an order.  
 a. compare                      b. suppose                      c. mind                      d. copy
22. I do not drink coffee. ...., I drink tea.  
 a. Especially                      b. Otherwise                      c. Opposite                      d. Instead
23. Salah's ..... as a footballer have helped him become a world-famous star.  
 a. abilities                      b. imagination                      c. knowledge                      d. classmates
24. I won't tell you what I mean. Use your .....  
 a. equipment                      b. imagination                      c. engine                      d. confidence

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

<b>bring</b>	success	يؤدي إلى النجاح	<b>give</b>	reasons	يقدم مبررات
<b>build</b>	a car engine	يصمم محرك سيارة		jobs	يؤمّر وظائف
<b>do</b>	sports	يمارس رياضة	<b>keep</b>	going back	يستمر في العودة - يتراجع باستمرار
	well/better	يؤدي جيداً/ بشكل أفضل	<b>make</b>	mistakes	يُخطئ
	experiments	يُجري تجارب		electricity	يُولّد كهرباء
<b>feel</b>	things better	يقوم بالأشياء بشكل أفضل		friends	يُصادق
	lonely	يشعر بالوحدة		notes	يدون ملاحظات
<b>get</b>	an education	يتعلّم	<b>run</b>	open days	يقوم بتنظيم أيام مفتوحة
<b>start</b>	school	يبدأ الدراسة			

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
interested in	مهتم بـ
lead to	يؤدي إلى
lucky	محظوظ
serious	خطير
	keen on / concerned about
	bring / cause
	fortunate, happy
	dangerous / risky

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
expert	ذو خبرة
fail	يفشل - يرسب
failure	الفشل
	inexpert, amateur
	succeed in, pass
	success, achievement
	عديم الخبرة - هاوي
	ينجح - يجتاز
	النجاح

#### 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

appreciate	
<b>appreciate(d)(v)</b> يُقدِّر/ يُثَمِّن - يستحسن	- She <b>appreciated</b> what I had done.
<b>appreciation(n)</b> استحسان - إعجاب	- She thanked me out of <b>appreciation</b> .
<b>appreciative(adj)</b> شاكر / مُمتن - مُعجب	- She thanked me in an <b>appreciative</b> way.
<b>appreciatively(adv)</b> بإعجاب - بامتنان	- She thanked me <b>appreciatively</b> .
fail	
<b>fail(ed)(v)</b> يفشل - يرسب - يتعطل	- I do not like to <b>fail</b> .
<b>failure(n)</b> الفشل - الرسوب	- I do not like <b>failure</b> .

#### 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a long way from	على مسافة كبيرة من	from my point of view	من وجهة نظري
a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	keep trying	يستمر في المحاولة
angry with	غاضب من	ready for	مستعد/ جاهز لـ
as a consequence,	كنتيجة لذلك	sorry for	أسف/ حزين علي
as well as this	بالإضافة لذلك	take part in	يشارك في
for a while	لفترة من الوقت	thanks to	بفضل - بسبب
for instance,	علي سبيل المثال		

#### 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree with	يتفق مع	keep on	يستمر في
believe in	يؤمن بـ	learn about	يتعلم عن
carry on	يستمر في	learn from	يتعلم من
disagree with	يختلف مع	pick ... up	يوصل - يلتقط
get on with	يُخسِن التعامل مع	prefer to	يفضّل أن
go along with	يتفق مع	support ... with ...	يدعم ... بـ ...

#### 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

strange / stranger	
• <b>strange = odd (adj)</b>	غريب - غير مألوف - غير منطقي
- I don't understand your <b>strange</b> decision. She hasn't done anything wrong to make you fire her.	
- Mothers always ask their children not to take anything from <b>strange</b> people.	



• **stranger (n)**

- Mothers always ask their children not to take anything from **strangers**.

شخص غريب (لا أعرفه)

لاحظ الفرق بين:

• **stranger**

- A person from Alexandria is a **stranger** in Minia.

شخص غريب (لا أعرفه)

• **foreigner**

- Many **foreigners** visit Aswan in winter. Most of them are German.

شخص أجنبي (من دولة أخرى)

**expert – experienced**

• **expert (in- on - at) (adj)**

- He is **expert in / on / at** teaching.

لاحظ الفرق بين:

خبير (متخصص في مجال)

• **experienced (in) (adj)**

- My father is an **experienced** farmer.

لديه خبرة من كثرة المواقف والتجارب التي مر بها

**Exercises On Vocabulary Study**

- ☆ **MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :**

1. It's a widely-known fact that working hard ..... success. (القليوبية - كفر شكر ٢٠٢٣)  
a. leads to                      b. results from                      c. leads  
d. brings                      e. buys
2. The synonyms of "lucky" are ..... and ..... . (الشرقية - منيا القمح ٢٠٢٣)  
a. unlucky                      b. helpless                      c. fortunate  
d. poor                      e. happy
3. We sometimes make ..... . (المنوفية - الشهداء ٢٠٢٣)  
a. notes                      b. well                      c. research  
d. sports                      e. mistakes
4. You can find information about anything you're ..... online.  
a. interested in                      b. sorry about                      c. keen on  
d. different from                      e. full of (الدقهلية - شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)
5. The doctors said that the patient's case was ..... and he needed an operation. (اسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. serious                      b. secure                      c. safe  
d. quiet                      e. dangerous
6. You can do things ..... .  
a. well                      b. serious                      c. good  
d. better                      e. bad
7. We say that someone does ..... .  
a. experience                      b. experiences                      c. experiments  
d. friends                      e. sports

- ☆ **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A successful teacher must be good at problem ..... . (السيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. solution                      b. solving                      c. situation                      d. support

2. STEM schools ..... open days at which students play computer games to practise maths. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)
- a. do                      b. own                      c. get                      d. run
3. Engineers have ..... a car engine that runs on electricity.
- a. built                      b. missed                      c. lost                      d. failed
4. Don't ..... upset. We are your family and we are ready to help and support you.
- a. feel                      b. start                      c. break                      d. have
5. Those who never work hard will ..... in life and work.
- a. succeed                      b. success                      c. fail                      d. failure
6. A sociable اجتماعي person finds it easy to ..... others.
- a. get around                      b. get on                      c. get on with                      d. b & c
7. He got high marks. .... a consequence, his father bought him a present.
- a. At                      b. For                      c. Like                      d. As
8. Our parents support us ..... everything we need.
- a. of                      b. with                      c. from                      d. as
9. He is ..... in driving.
- a. expert                      b. experienced                      c. experience                      d. a & b
10. He is a ..... to me.
- a. strange                      b. stranger                      c. strangely                      d. a & b

## PART III

## READING &amp; LISTENING

## 1 Reading Texts

Lesson 4 SB page 31

STEM SUBJECTS<sup>(1)</sup>

Science, technology, **engineering**<sup>(2)</sup> and maths were taught in schools long before the **invention**<sup>(3)</sup> of the internet. However, we now live in a time when these subjects are more important than ever. This does not mean that music, history, languages and other subjects are not important. However, understanding the **so-called**<sup>(4)</sup> STEM subjects can be an important bridge to a good job in the future. Many **businesses**<sup>(5)</sup> do not have enough people with **knowledge**<sup>(6)</sup> of the STEM subjects. For that reason, they are **keen to**<sup>(7)</sup> give jobs to young people with these skills.



- (1) المواد التي تُدرس في  
مدارس العلوم والتكنولوجيا  
(2) هندسة  
(3) اختراع  
(4) كما تسمى / ما يسمى  
(5) أعمال  
(6) المعرفة  
(7) متحمس



In the past, STEM subjects were often seen as difficult. To change this idea, many businesses now run open days at which students can try building car engines, using a bike to make electricity, or playing computer games to practise maths.

Schools, too, are helping students to realise that these subjects can be both interesting and fun for boys and girls of all **abilities**<sup>(8)</sup>. Schools might not have the **equipment**<sup>(9)</sup> to build engines, but many now use different experiments and computers so that students can learn by doing things, and not just by reading a text.

This also helps with **critical thinking skills**<sup>(10)</sup> which students can use in other subjects.

It is said that 80% of jobs in the future will need students to have skills in the STEM subjects. Of course we will also need **artists**<sup>(11)</sup>, **musicians**<sup>(12)</sup>, **language teachers**<sup>(13)</sup> and other experts, but skills in STEM subjects will help students to become the problem **solvers**<sup>(14)</sup> and **inventors**<sup>(15)</sup> of the future.

(8) قدرات

(9) معدات / أجهزة

(10) مهارات التفكير

(11) الفنانين

(12) الموسيقيين

(13) مدرسي اللغات

(14) من يقوموا بحل

(15) المشاكل

(15) مخترعين

#### Lesson 4 WB page 101

### Failure is necessary<sup>(1)</sup>

People say that it is **impossible**<sup>(2)</sup> to **succeed**<sup>(3)</sup> without **failure**<sup>(4)</sup> and even the most **successful**<sup>(5)</sup> people **make mistakes**<sup>(6)</sup>. **As well as**<sup>(7)</sup> this, many people believe in the **importance**<sup>(8)</sup> of learning from your mistakes.



Sometimes failure can make people work harder and do things better. **As a consequence**<sup>(9)</sup>, they **appreciate**<sup>(10)</sup> **success**<sup>(11)</sup> more because it hasn't been easy for them. **For instance**<sup>(12)</sup>, when football players lose a match, they are **sad**<sup>(13)</sup> but they learn how to **improve**<sup>(14)</sup> and do better next time.

On the other hand, success can make you feel **positively**<sup>(15)</sup> about what you are doing and it can give you a reason to keep trying. **In addition**<sup>(16)</sup>, many people **prefer**<sup>(17)</sup> to **forget**<sup>(18)</sup> their mistakes so they can have good **memories**<sup>(19)</sup> about the past.

(1) ضروري

(2) مستحيل

(3) ينجح

(4) الفشل

(5) ناجح

(6) يُخطئ

(7) بالإضافة إلى

(8) أهمية

(9) نتيجة لذلك

(10) يقدّر

(11) النجاح

(12) علي سبيل المثال

(13) حزين

(14) يتحسن - يتحسن

(15) بإيجابية

(16) بالإضافة إلى ذلك

(17) يُفضّل

(18) ينسى

(19) ذكريات

In **conclusion**<sup>(20)</sup>, although it is **possible**<sup>(21)</sup> to have success without failure, from my **point of view**<sup>(22)</sup>, it is better to **fail**<sup>(23)</sup> sometimes **in order to**<sup>(24)</sup> appreciate success more.

(20) الخلاصة  
(21) ممكن  
(22) وجهة نظر  
(23) يفشل  
(24) لكي

## 2 Listening Texts

### Lesson 3 SB page 30

**Girl 1 :** I don't think that everyone needs to go to university. In fact, I think it's a **waste of**<sup>(1)</sup> time for some people.

**Girl 2 :** **That's true**<sup>(2)</sup>. If you know you want a job doing something practical, like being an **electrician**<sup>(3)</sup>, or if you have a great idea for a business, why not start **immediately**<sup>(4)</sup> ?

**Girl 1 :** Exactly.

**Boy 1 :** I know in some countries, children start school really early, but I think three is too young. I mean, at that age all children want to do is play !

**Boy 2 :** I'd say the opposite. The earlier you start the better. It will give you a **good start**<sup>(5)</sup> in life.

**Boy 3 :** They say that your school days are the best days of your life and I think that's probably true. It's not just about **learning**<sup>(6)</sup>, it's also about making friends and **learning to help each other**<sup>(7)</sup>.

**Boy 4 :** You're right. My parents both loved school and made really good friends there.

**Girl 3 :** If you're really ill, then it's great that there are ways of learning at home so that there isn't a break in your **education**<sup>(8)</sup>. But, **otherwise**<sup>(9)</sup>, you should go to school.

**Girl 4 :** I **don't agree with you**<sup>(10)</sup>. There are lots of **advantages**<sup>(11)</sup> with learning at home. There isn't any bullying, for instance.

**Girl 5 :** I don't think people understand how important education really is for young people. I mean, what kind of a future can you have without a good education these days ?

**Girl 6 :** A lot of people have good lives without doing well at school. I'm **completely**<sup>(12)</sup> against this idea that education is **the only way to**<sup>(13)</sup> do well.

(1) مضيعة ل  
(2) هذا صحيح  
(3) عامل كهربائي  
(4) على الفور  
(5) بداية جيدة  
(6) التعلم  
(7) مساعدة الآخرين  
(8) التعليم  
(9) وإلا  
(10) لا أتفق معك  
(11) مميزات  
(12) تماما  
(13) السبيل الوحيد ل



## Listen to some people's opinions

Lesson 4 WB page 101

**Speaker 1 :** I mean, it can't be good for your **confidence**<sup>(1)</sup>, can it ? It's got to get you down.

**Speaker 2 :** It was the best thing that ever happened to me. Everything had been a bit too easy for me before, so I wasn't **ready for**<sup>(2)</sup> it. But then I had to make some real **effort**<sup>(3)</sup>.

**Speaker 3 :** I hated it but, after feeling sorry for myself **for a while**<sup>(4)</sup>, I could see my mistakes and I knew what I had to do.

**Speaker 4 :** My friends were **lovely**<sup>(5)</sup>, but I just felt terrible and I kept on feeling terrible. In fact, I haven't tried it again because it upset me too much.

**Speaker 5 :** When you've made as many mistakes as me, you learn to **pick yourself up**<sup>(6)</sup> and **carry on**<sup>(7)</sup>.

(1) ثقة

(2) مستعد لـ

(3) جهد - مجهود

(4) للحظات

(5) جميل - جذاب

(6) يستعيد الثقة

(7) يستمر

## PART IV

## LANGUAGE

### Exercises On Language

• Apply

• ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- He always ..... to the library when he was young. (البحيرة - الدلتا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. had gone      b. has been      c. went      d. was going
- Sam ..... have a bike when he was 18. (بورسعيد - بور فؤاد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. would      b. will      c. used to      d. should
- The lady ..... taken to hospital in an ambulance after the fire last night. (القاهرة - القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. will be      b. had been      c. is      d. was
- Before ..... to bed, she had finished her homework. (المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٣)  
a. had gone      b. going      c. goes      d. went
- After I had done my homework, I ..... to bed. (القاهرة - حلوان ٢٠٢٣)  
a. going      b. had gone      c. go      d. went
- I didn't leave my office until I ..... my work.  
a. finish      b. finishes      c. had finished      d. was finished
- Did you ..... a secretary for your office?  
a. find      b. found      c. was found      d. had found

8. .... a secretary found for your office?  
a. Did                      b. Had                      c. Was                      d. Has
9. My uncle didn't remember the promise he ..... made.  
a. has                      b. had                      c. had to                      d. is
10. My uncle didn't remember the promise that ..... made by him.  
a. has                      b. had                      c. had been                      d. is
11. I ..... into a good family from the south of Egypt in 1976.  
a. bore                      b. was born                      c. had been born                      d. have been born
12. We went to bed ..... we had finished our jobs.  
a. before                      b. till                      c. after                      d. by the time
13. The secretary ..... finished the report before the manager arrived.  
a. had already                      b. has already                      c. has just                      d. was already

## 2 Special cases

14. Having ..... my homework, I started to watch the match. (البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. I did                      b. done                      c. I had done                      d. do
15. No sooner ..... the noise than we rushed to the spot. (سوهاج - جھينة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. we heard                      b. we did hear                      c. we had he                      d. had we heard
16. It wasn't until I ..... my homework that I took a rest. (البحيرة - الدلتا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. have done                      b. had done                      c. was done                      d. am doing
17. .... had her dinner, she washed the dishes. (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)  
a. Having                      b. Have                      c. Had                      d. Has
18. Before ..... the medicine, he had eaten a sandwich.  
a. had taken                      b. took                      c. taking                      d. was taken
19. The bus ..... when I arrived at the station, so I didn't miss it.  
a. leaves                      b. left                      c. has left                      d. had left
20. Mr Mohammed bought a car after he ..... how to drive.  
a. learning                      b. being learned                      c. had learned                      d. having learned
21. Mr Mohammed bought a car after ..... how to drive.  
a. learning                      b. being learned                      c. had learned                      d. learned
22. We ..... Aswan many times before, but last winter we enjoyed ourselves more than ever.  
a. were visiting                      b. were visited                      c. have visited                      d. had visited
23. I had my lunch. After that, I ..... to bed.  
a. had gone                      b. went                      c. go                      d. gone
24. He missed the bus because he ..... up late.  
a. gets                      b. has got                      c. had got                      d. was getting
25. Hardly had the singer finished his song when all fans .....  
a. cheered                      b. had cheered                      c. have cheered                      d. cheer



26. He ..... to prison because he had committed ارتكب several crimes.  
 a. was gone      b. was going      c. had gone      d. went
27. He ..... to prison because he had committed ارتكب several crimes.  
 a. was sent      b. was sending      c. had sent      d. sent
28. He ..... to sit down until he had apologized.  
 a. didn't allow      b. doesn't allow  
 c. wasn't allowed      d. hadn't allowed
29. Ahmed was crying because he ..... over.  
 a. has fallen      b. was fallen      c. had fallen      d. had been fallen

### 3 Check your understanding

30. "I went shopping. That was an hour before I started to prepare dinner."  
 Which of the following gives the nearest meaning to this quotation ?  
 a. As soon as I had gone shopping, I started to prepare dinner.  
 b. As soon as I had done the shopping, I started to prepare dinner.  
 c. On going shopping, I started to prepare dinner.  
 d. An hour after I had done the shopping, I started to prepare dinner.
31. "I called him, so he left the office." This means .....  
 a. he had left by the time I called him.  
 b. he didn't leave after I had called him.  
 c. he left just before I called him.  
 d. he didn't leave until I had called him.
32. Having done her homework, she went out to play. This means that .....  
 a. she went out to play just before doing homework.  
 b. she didn't go out to play until she had done her homework.  
 c. she didn't do her homework until she had gone out to play.  
 d. she went out to play. After that, she had done her homework.
33. While drinking juice, Sama was chatting with her friends online. This means that .....  
 a. Sama was drinking juice while chatting.  
 b. Sama's friends were drinking juice.  
 c. Sama and her friends were drinking juice.  
 d. Sama said her friends were not drinking juice.
34. Feeling tired, Ahmed preferred not to go to school. What does this mean ?  
 a. Ahmed went to school although he was tired.  
 b. Feeling well, Ahmed preferred not to go to school.  
 c. Ahmed felt unwell, so he preferred to stay at home.  
 d. Not feeling well, Ahmed preferred to go to school.



للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

تنويه

PART I

GRAMMATICAL HINTS

❶ كلمة (education) لا تُعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد، لكنها يمكن أن تأخذ (a/an) :

ex. - Mr Ashraf had a good education in an international school.

❷ كلمة (equipment) لا تُعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد :

ex. - The office needs .....

a. an equipment

b. some equipments

c. some equipment

d. equipments

be successful = be a success ناجح

❷ لاحظ أن:

ex. - My first book was successful. = My first book was a success.

❸ لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفات التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو (s) الملكية :

my - his - her - your - our - their - its - ....'s

ex. - Cairo is Egypt's biggest city. (Not: the biggest)

- Is Malak your youngest sister? (Not: the youngest)

❹ الأسماء التالية في صيغة المفرد تدل على جمع ويمكن أن تأخذ فعل مفرد أو جمع حسب المعنى المقصود :

فصل - class - the youth - الجمهور أو العامة - the public - team - group  
عصابة - gang - حشد - crowd - طاقم سفينة أو طائرة - crew - زوج - couple

ex. - My family is / are helpful.

وتأخذ الكلمات السابقة فعل جمع إذا استخدمنا معها (who / whom) أو أي ضمير جمع،  
أما إذا استخدمنا معها (which) أو ضمير غير عاقل فهي تأخذ فعل مفرد.

ex. - The gang who robbed the bank were arrested yesterday.

- The gang which robbed the bank was arrested yesterday.

❶ لاحظ استخدام (inf. + ing) في الصيغ التالية :

While + subj. + verb ... = (inf. + ing) ...

ex. - She became ill while she was trying to control the children.

= She became ill ..... to control the children.

a. to try

b. trying

c. is trying

d. she is trying



**When/because + subj. + verb ... = (inf. + ing) ...**

**ex.** - He is much happier **when he learns** at home.

- He is much happier ..... at home.

- a. learns      b. to learn      c. learn      d. learning

**ex.** - I got bored **because of reading** all the long details.

= I got bored ..... all the long details.

- a. to read      b. reading      c. I read      d. for reading

**who / which + that+ verb ... = (inf. + ing) ...**

**ex.** - Look at the pictures of people **who learn** at home.

= Look at the pictures of people ..... at home.

- a. learning      b. are learning      c. learn      d. they learn

٧ لاحظ استخدام (instead – instead of) :

**instead / instead of** بدلا من ذلك

- تُستخدم (instead) كظرف في بداية أو نهاية الجملة الثانية:

**ex.** - She didn't go to Cairo. **Instead**, she went to Alexandria.

- I didn't go out. I watched a film at home **instead**.

- تُستخدم (instead of) كحرف جر ويأتي بعدها (noun) أو (inf. + ing) :

**ex.** - Can I use a tablet **instead of** (using) a laptop?

- يمكن أن يُستخدم ضمير المفعول بعد (instead of) وقبل (inf. + ing) لتوضيح الفاعل المقصود:

**ex.** - The children of rich people have lessons with a teacher who came to their homes **instead of them going** to school.

٨ لاحظ استخدام (in addition – in addition to) :

**in addition to + n. / (inf. + ing)** بالإضافة إلى

**ex.** - **In addition to learning** from their teachers, students learn from each other.

**in addition + subj. + verb** بالإضافة إلى ذلك

**ex.** - Students learn from their teachers. **In addition**, they learn from each other.

٩ لاحظ استخدام (thanks to) بمعنى (يسبب / بفضل) :

**thanks to + n. / (inf. + ing)** بسبب / بفضل

**ex.** - **Thanks to the good weather**, the ship sailed quickly.

- He succeeded in his exams **thanks to studying** hard.

١٠ لاحظ استخدام (such as) بمعنى (مثل) عند إعطاء أمثلة :

مثل such as = like

**ex.** - I have visited some European countries, **such as** England and France.  
= I have visited some European countries **like** England and France.

- تُستخدم (like) وليس (such as) عند تشبيه شيء بآخر:

**ex.** - The Egyptian team wear red, white and black, **like** the colours of Egypt's flag.

### Exercise On Language Hints

● ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- My dad couldn't attend his friend's daughter's wedding due to his illness, so he sent me .....  
a. instead of      b. instead      c. in addition      d. in detail (الغريبة - سمود ٢٠٢٣)
- He is a ..... writer.  
a. successful      b. successfully      c. success as      d. a & c
- Some insects are green ..... the plants among which they live.  
a. like      b. such as      c. a & b      d. such
- Foods ..... cheese and fish are very useful.  
a. like      b. such as      c. a & b      d. such
- ..... meat, mum prepared potatoes.  
a. In addition      b. In addition to      c. Instead      d. As well
- Mum prepared meat. ...., she prepared potatoes.  
a. In addition      b. In addition to      c. Instead      d. As well
- ..... going out, he watched a film at home.  
a. In addition      b. In additions      c. Instead      d. Instead of
- Ayam El-Sadat is Ahmed Zaki's ..... film ever.  
a. the best      b. best      c. well      d. good
- The team of scientists ..... done a great job.  
a. has      b. have      c. a & b      d. was
- The team of scientists who you have seen here ..... done a great job.  
a. has      b. have      c. a & b      d. was
- The team of scientists which you have seen here ..... done a great job.  
a. has      b. have      c. a & b      d. was



## 1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (پورسعيد - بور فؤاد ۲۰۲۴)

“Necessity is the mother of invention” is a famous common proverb which means that our needs always motivate our minds to create new things in order to manage well with a world full of speedy changes.

Man’s needs have often directed them to discover the natural resources around them, and to make with their own hands the things they want.

Thus, they made tools to **cultivate** the land and get its crops. Those tools played an important part in establishing civilization. Food, clothing and shelter are still considered to be man’s basic needs. The progress of technology has enabled man to satisfy all these needs. It has helped them to take wide steps in developing agriculture, industry and public services.

Thus, we are now enjoying the blessings of modern civilization. When civilization developed and man lived in organised societies, they found themselves in need of more than their necessities. Education is next to food in importance because it is the only way to acquire experience and the qualifications necessary to earn a living.

Education changed our style of living and led to higher thinking levels. Man has invaded space and invented the computer. No wonder that man has great abilities which will enable them to create more inventions in the future.

- According to the passage, education is of great importance because ..... .
  - it gives us experience and helps us make a living
  - it is pre to food in importance
  - the tools played a role in our civilisation
  - it is natural resource before us
- Man needed more than their necessities when they ..... .
  - needed tools
  - lived in organised societies
  - discovered natural resources
  - made the things they wanted
- “They made tools to cultivate the land.” Another word for ‘**cultivate**’ is .....?
  - ignore
  - destroy
  - plant
  - abandon
- According to the passage, the need for collecting the crops led man to ..... .
  - plant huge areas of land
  - invent agricultural tools
  - buy machines
  - rent peasants to help them
- The main idea of the passage is “ ..... ”
  - Necessities can be postponed.
  - The agriculture and civilisan.
  - The needs are motivated by possibilities
  - Needs help create inventions.

6. Man invented the computer because .....  
 a. education led to this                      b. the internet was free  
 c. cleaning the out area of our houses      d. sending emails was a necessary
7. Which sentence idea is NOT mentioned in the passage ?  
 a. Man created new things in order to do well with the world.  
 b. Man made tools to cultivate the land and get its crops.  
 c. Man made wars which destroyed the planet.  
 d. All of us are enjoying the blessing of modern civilisation.

## 2 Email Writing كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

**From** : .....  
**To** : .....  
**Subject** : The development of education in Egypt.

Dear .....,

How are you? I hope you and your family are well. I'm very pleased to write this email to you. I'll tell you about the development of education in Egypt.

We all agree that education is the most important aspect in the development of any country. When a country has a good educational system, it has good doctors, engineers, teachers, scientists ... etc.

It is known that the old educational system was out-of-date. It depended on memorization الحفظ and indoctrination التلقين. Students studied only for exams. After the exams, students forgot everything they'd learnt. Nearly all students didn't enjoy learning as it was boring and tiring. How can we make learning more enjoyable and useful?

Egypt has moved to a new educational system. The new system adapts student-centered instruction (تدريس قائم على الطالب) through interactive activities and group work. Students are engaged in hands-on activities and projects which enhance their skills and abilities to be more creative and independent learners. Learning outcomes mainly aim to help students develop their self-learning skills and communication skills.

Assessment will measure students' understanding. Students will be asked to apply what they have learned in meaningful situations and contexts. Exams will be given and marked digitally using tablets students already have.

We hope that would help new generations to be equipped for rapid changes in our world. What do you think ? Looking forward to hearing from you.

Love from me,

.....



### 3 Writing

- ✪ Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

(اسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)

*“The importance of education for our country’s progress”*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

### 4 الترجمة Translation

- A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Television is known to show a variety of programmes that appeal to people of different ages. Also, it helps students by presenting some useful educational programmes.

(الاسكندرية - المنتزة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. من المعروف أن التلفزيون يعرض مجموعة متنوعة من البرامج التي تروق للأشخاص من مختلف الأعمار، كما يساعد الطلاب عن طريق تقديم بعض البرامج التعليمية المفيدة.
- b. من المعروف أن التلفزيون يعرض مجموعة متنوعة من البرامج التي يملكها الأشخاص من مختلف الأعمار، كما يساعد الطلاب عن طريق تقديم بعض البرامج التعليمية المفيدة.
- c. من المعروف أن التلفزيون يعرض مجموعة متنوعة من البرامج التي تروق للأشخاص من نفس الأعمار، كما يساعد الطلاب عن طريق تقديم بعض البرامج التعليمية المفيدة.
- d. من المعروف أن التلفزيون يعرض مجموعة متنوعة من البرامج التي تروق للأشخاص من مختلف الأعمار، كما يساعد الطلاب عن طريق تقديم بعض البرامج التعليمية المسلية.

2. The development of the educational system should be a flexible ongoing process that needs thinking outside the box.

(الاسكندرية - وسط الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. إن تطوير النظام التعليمي عملية مرنة ذات هبة تحتاج تفكير خارج الصندوق.
- b. إن تطوير النظام التعليمي عملية مرنة مستمرة تحتاج تفكير خارج الصندوق.
- c. إن تطوير النظام التعليمي يجب أن يكون عملية مرنة مستمرة تحتاج لاعتقاد خارج الصندوق.
- d. إن تطوير النظام التعليمي ينبغي أن يكون عملية مرنة مستمرة تحتاج تفكير خارج الصندوق.

**B. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :**

١. يلعب التعليم دورًا فعالًا في بناء المواطن القادر على مواجهة كل تحديات العصر، ومن ثمّ فتطوير التعليم بما يتناسب مع تحديات العصر الحديث أصبح ضرورة.  
(الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Education plays an effective role in building a citizen who is able to facing all the challenges of the age. But, the development of education in line with the challenges of the modern era has become a necessity.
- b. Education plays an effective role in building a citizen who is unable to facing all the challenges of the age. But, the development of education in line with the challenges of the modern era has become a necessity.
- c. Education plays an effective role in building a citizen who is unable to facing all the challenges of the age. But, the development of education in line with the challenges of the modern era has become a necessity.
- d. Education plays an effective role in building a citizen who is able to face all the challenges of the age. Hence, the development of education in line with the challenges of the modern era has become necessary.

٢. إن احترام المعلم وتقديره واجب على كل فرد في المجتمع لأن المعلم هو أساس العملية التعليمية.  
(الفيوم - أبشواى ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Respecting and appreciating the teacher is the duty of all individuals in society, the teacher is the basis of the educational process.
- b. Respecting and appreciating the teacher is the duty of all individuals in society because the teacher is the basis of the educational process.
- c. That respecting and appreciating the teacher is the right of every individuals in society because the teacher is the basis of the educational process.
- d. Respecting and appreciating the teacher is the duty of every individuals in society because the teacher is the basis of the educational process.



## education

## • educate (v)

(يُعلِّم (في مدرسة / جامعة ...)

- This school **educates** disabled children.
- I was **educated** in Minia University.

## • educate ..... (about / in / on) (v)

يُثَقِّف (في)

- This programme **educates** mothers about children's health problems.

## • education (n)

(التعليم / التدريس (في مدرسة / جامعة ...)

- I want my children to have a good **education**.

## • educated (adj) مُتعلِّم ≠ uneducated (adj) غير مُتعلِّم

- Sama is a **well-educated** girl.

## • educational (adj)

تعليمي

- The **educational** system must be developed . يتطور.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- have / get / receive an education لديه / يحصل على تعليم
- give / provide education يوفر تعليم
- enter education يلتحق بالتعليم
- leave education يترك التعليم
- state / public education التعليم الحكومي
- private education التعليم الخاص
- primary / preparatory / secondary education التعليم الابتدائي / الإعدادي / الثانوي

## bully

## • bully (n)

بلطجي

- All **bullies** must be sent to prison.

## • bully (ied) (v)

يُبلطج - يتنمر

- If you continue to **bully** people in your area, I'll arrest you.

## • bully (... into) (v)

يبتز - يساوم

- He **bullied** us into agreeing to his plan or we will be fired . يُفضل من العمل.

## • bullying (n)

البلطجة

- The government will never tolerate **bullying** . تسمح بـ.

## schooling

## • school (n)

مدرسة (اسم محدود)

- Sohaila is a student in a secondary **school**.

• **school (n)**

الدراسة - فترة الدراسة - اليوم الدراسي (اسم غير معدود)

- Rodayna started **school** in 2018. الدراسة
- He is one of my old friends from **school**. فترة الدراسة
- **School** begins at 7:15. اليوم الدراسي

• **school (ed) (in) (v)**

يُدرّس - يُفَقِّه - يُدرِّب على - يُزوِّض

- He was **schooled** in teamwork.
- I was schooled in the yellow building over there.

• **schooling (n)**

التعليم في المدارس (اسم غير معدود)

- My mother had only six years of **schooling**.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:

- start school يبدأ الدراسة
- attend a school يذهب إلى مدرسة
- leave school ينهي الدراسة
- a high school مدرسة ثانوية
- a boarding school مدرسة داخلية

**Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary**

## • ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Congratulations! Your shot is .....  
a. success      b. a success      c. successful      d. b & c
2. You spend a long time to ..... a hunting dog.  
a. chase      b. evacuate      c. school      d. succeed
3. He ..... her into paying 50,000 pounds to return her stolen car.  
a. asked      b. told      c. made      d. bullied
4. Wars ..... thousands of children.  
a. bully      b. orphan      c. vary      d. include
5. Mum asked me to ..... tea in the shopping list.  
a. include      b. advertise      c. improve      d. care

**Advanced Exercise on Language**

## • ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... my arrival home, I saw that no one was there.  
a. During      b. On      c. While      d. As
2. A week ago, I sold my old car. I ..... it since I started my job as a teacher.  
a. has      b. have had      c. was having      d. had had
3. Once I ..... the correct answer, my teacher clapped his hands to me.  
a. had been chosen      b. chooses  
c. choose      d. chose
4. I had my lunch. After that, I ..... to bed.  
a. had gone      b. went      c. go      d. gone



# Test on Unit 9

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

تدوينة

التقييمات  
الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار إلكتروني

## 1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

- Education is the process of ..... and ..... . (الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. bullying      b. teaching      c. booking  
d. housekeeping      e. learning
- The adjective 'cruel' is ..... 'kind' . (الدقهلية - نبروه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. the same meaning as      b. the opposite meaning of  
c. similar to      d. antonymous with  
e. synonymous with

## 2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- Rich people usually pay ..... to help with the housework and look after the whole house. (المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٤)  
a. housewives      b. cooks      c. housekeepers      d. leaders
- People think that tuition الرسوم الدراسية is very expensive at ..... schools.  
a. university      b. board      c. boarding      d. college
- Mr and Mrs Adel employed a ..... to teach their children at home. (اسيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤)  
a. governess      b. housekeeper      c. servant      d. maid
- Good ..... is our only means to be able to overcome all our problems.  
a. cruelty      b. education      c. undoubtedly      d. advertisement
- A ..... is not a good member of society. (الاسكندرية - العجمي ٢٠٢٤)  
a. stranger      b. bully      c. worker      d. manager
- We need ..... solutions to our current economic problems. (البحيرة - الدلنج ٢٠٢٤)  
a. stressed      b. passionate      c. practical      d. patient
- 'Treasure Island' ..... by Robert Louis Stevenson. (الدقهلية - بني عبيد ٢٠٢٤)  
a. was written      b. has written      c. had written      d. was writing
- Kareem ..... his homework before he went to the cinema.  
a. had finished      b. finishes      c. was finishing      d. was finished
- The students ..... closely during the exam to make sure that they didn't cheat. (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. are watched      b. were watched      c. didn't watch      d. watched
- After ..... his homework, he watched TV. (اسيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤)  
a. had finished      b. finishing      c. finish      d. finishes
- ..... done her homework, my sister watched a film on TV.  
a. Having      b. After      c. Until      d. Before
- ..... had the sun risen than the fog disappeared. (الجيزة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. Hardly      b. No sooner      c. Scarcely      d. Barely



### 3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(المنوفية - بركة السبع ٢٠٢٤)

A good education is a system that makes students better. A good education increases children's creativity, helps them enjoy studying and helps them in their future career. Finland which is a European country, is believed by many to have the best education system in the world, despite the fact that Finns spend little money on education and have an average of nearly 30 students per class. What makes their schools good?

They consider education itself to be more important goal than a way to get a well-paid job. Learning is valued and teachers are respected. In fact, teaching is the number one favourite profession among Finnish teenagers. In a world where so many people want jobs with status, the Finnish example is quite different.

Teachers in Finland are paid no more than their colleagues in other European countries, but they enjoy great job satisfaction. The main reason for this is the freedom they have to teach the material in any way they wish. Finnish students are pretty and happy. There are no standardized national tests, which means they are not under pressure as other European students to get highest marks they can in important end-of-year exams.

1. There are an average of nearly 30 students in ..... class.  
a. none                      b. some                      c. all                      d. every
2. The underlined word "They" refers to .....  
a. Finland                      b. Finns                      c. teachers                      d. students
3. Finland doesn't spend ..... money on education.  
a. any                      b. little                      c. much                      d. less
4. The underlined word "career" can be replaced by .....  
a. job                      b. occupation                      c. profession                      d. a,b & c
5. We can find the best education system in the world in .....  
a. Africa                      b. Europe                      c. South America                      d. Asia
6. There is only a ..... exam in Finland's education system.  
a. yearly                      b. monthly                      c. weekly                      d. daily
7. The writer in the passage may be a .....  
a. conductor                      b. researcher                      c. student                      d. coach

### 4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Education is no doubt the cornerstone of the progress of a nation. When a country invests in education, it signs a contract with welfare and prosperity.

(القاهرة - مصر الجديدة ٢٠٢٤)



- a. إن التعليم بلا شك هو حجر الزاوية لتقدم الأمة، فعندما تستثمر دولة ما في التعليم فهي بذلك توقع عقداً مع الرفاهية والازدهار.
- b. إن التعليم بلا شك هو حجر الزاوية لتقدم الأمة، فعندما تستثمر دولتنا في التعليم فهي بذلك توقع عقداً مع الرفاهية والازدهار.
- c. إن التعليم بلا شك هو حجر الزاوية للتقدم الأممي، فعندما تستثمر دولة ما في التعليم فهي بذلك توقع عقداً مع الرفاهية والازدهار.
- d. إن التعليم بلا شك هو حجر الزاوية لتقدم الأمة، فعندما تستثمر دولة ما في التعليم فهي بذلك تخطط لعقود مع الرفاهية والازدهار.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

تُعتبر المدارس الداخلية حلًا مثاليًا للطلاب من جميع أنحاء الجمهورية، فهم يقضون معظم وقتهم في المدرسة ويقومون بأنشطة مختلفة بجانب الدراسة. (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Entering schools are considering an ideal solution to students from all over the Republic as they spent most of their time inside school and do different activities besides study.
- b. Local schools are considered an ideal solution to students from all over the Republic as they spend most of their times inside school and make different activities beside study.
- c. Boarding schools are considered an ideal solution to students from all over the Republic as they spend most of their time inside schools and do different activities besides study.
- d. Inside schools is considered an idle solution to students from all over the Republic as they spend most of their time inside schools and do different activities besides study.

**5. Answer the following questions:**

1. If you were Jim, would you sail to the Hispaniola on your own ? Why ?  
.....
2. What kind of person do you think Hands was ? Why ?  
.....
3. How did Jim prove to be kind ? (الاسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٤)  
.....

**6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:**

(الدقهلية - بني عبيد ٢٠٢٤)

***“Building a nation requires good education”***

.....

.....

.....

# Revision 3

Based on Units 7, 8 & 9

SB pages 36 : 41 WB pages 104 : 107

## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Important Vocabulary مفردات هامة

alarm clock (n)	منبه	hand (n)	عقرب الساعة - يد
back (n)	ظَهْر - خَلْف	notes (n)	ملاحظات
consequences (n)	نتائج	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
danger (n)	الخطر	recognise (d) (v)	يتعرف على
driverless (adj)	بدون سائق	solar power (n)	الطاقة الشمسية
engines (n)	مُحَرَّكات	thought (n)	فكرة
extra (adj)	إضافي - زائد	type (n)	نوع
forms (n)	أشكال - أنواع	warn (ed) (v)	يُحذِّر
freeze-froze-frozen (v)	يُجمِّد	wind power (n)	طاقة الرياح

### 2 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

fortunately (adv)	لُحسن الحظ	so far (adv)	حتى الآن
free (adj)	مُتَفَرِّغ - حُرّ	special (adj)	خاص
loud (adj)	عالي الصوت	square (n)	مِيدان - مَرْتَع
relaxed (adj)	مسترخي	take-took-taken (v)	يستغرق (وقت) - يأخذ

## PART II LANGUAGE STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

<b>click</b>	the button	يضغط على الزر	<b>research</b>	online	يبحث على الإنترنت
<b>do</b>	it wrong	يفعلها بشكل خاطئ	<b>take</b>	turns	يتبادل الأدوار
<b>give</b>	feedback	يقدم بتغذية راجعة	<b>write</b>	a presentation	يكتب عرض تقديمي

### 2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a frightening thought	فكرة مُخيفَة	mistakes made by people	أخطاء يرتكبها الناس
bring in	يجلب معه	move ... to	ينقل ... إلى
cars with engines	سيارات ذات مُحَرَّكات	on the back of the map	في ظهر الخريطة
decide not to do	يقرر ألا يفعل	pay for	يدفع ثمن
find out	يكتشف - يعرف	slow down	يُبطئ
find out about	يعرف عن	so far	حتى الآن



forms of technology	صور التكنولوجيا	talk on the phone	يتحدث في الهاتف
in front of	أمام	the usual type	النوع المعتاد
in my opinion	من وجهة نظري / أرى أن	wait for	ينتظر
in ten years from now	بعد ١٠ سنوات من الآن	wake up	يستيقظ
look for	يبحث عن	work well	يعمل جيدًا
make it faster to travel	يجعل السفر أسرع	worried by the idea of	يشعر بالقلق من فكرة

### PART III

## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Listening Text

Lesson 2 SB page 37

**Presenter :** Hello, welcome to Stay Healthy, our **weekly look**<sup>(1)</sup> at health and hygiene. In today's programme, we're **taking calls**<sup>(2)</sup> from students. They have questions about hygiene in the house for our **guest**<sup>(3)</sup> expert.

This week we're **pleased**<sup>(4)</sup> to have with us Dr Amal El-Aziz from the Cairo University Hospital. So, our first caller is Lamia from Tanta. Hello, Lamia.

**Lamia :** Hello doctor. Sometimes when I eat, my food falls on the ground. But my friends say there is a five second rule : "The food will be ok to eat if you pick it up before five seconds". Is that true ?

**Dr Amal :** I'd **say the opposite**<sup>(5)</sup>, Lamia. You mustn't eat any food if it has fallen on the ground. Bacteria will already be on it. So, I'd advise you to put that piece of food in the bin immediately.

**Presenter :** OK, now our next **callers**<sup>(6)</sup> are Hamid and Leila from Hurgada. They're brother and sister.

**Hamid :** Hi, I'm Hamid. I always tell my sister that she doesn't wash her hands very well, but she doesn't believe me.

**Leila :** Yes, because he says I have to wash my hands really carefully. But if I use **soap**<sup>(7)</sup>, it will kill the bacteria on my hands, won't it ? So, soap and water should be enough.

- (1) متابعة أسبوعية
- (2) يستقبل مكالمات تليفونية
- (3) ضيف
- (4) مسرور
- (5) يقول العكس أو النقيض
- (6) متصلين
- (7) صابون

**Dr Amal** : OK, so there are two points here. Firstly, it's very easy to wash your hands, but **research**<sup>(8)</sup> shows that 95% of people do not wash their hands correctly. Secondly, soap doesn't kill bacteria. The reason we have soap is that it helps to take the bacteria from your hands. So your brother is right, Leila. Remember, you should always wash your hands very carefully with soap and a lot of water.

(8) بحث علمي

(9) يجمع

**Presenter** : Now we have Maya from Cairo.

**Maya** : Hello. My mother says I must always clean the table before we eat. But if the table looks clean, it won't have bacteria on it, so I don't understand why. Can the doctor tell me ?

**Dr Amal** : Your mother is right, Maya. You can't see bacteria, so you should clean your table even if it looks clean.

**Presenter** : Finally here's Omar from Alexandria.

**Omar** : Hello doctor. Is it true that if you freeze food, it kills the bacteria on it ?

**Dr Amal** : I don't think so, Omar. Bacteria does not always die when you **freeze**<sup>(9)</sup> things. When you cook frozen food, you must always heat it to about 75 °C or more. Then you know the bacteria has gone.

**Presenter** : Thank you, that's all we have time for, but I think we have all learned a lot about how to stay healthy today.

## 2 Reading Texts

Lesson 1 SB page 36

### Dalia's blog.hello.org

In today's lesson, my teacher brought in<sup>(1)</sup> different forms<sup>(2)</sup> of technology from the past. He said, "Find out<sup>(3)</sup> how these things work, and then give me your feedback<sup>(4)</sup>."



(1) يُخَضِّرُ مَعَهُ - يَجْلِبُ

(2) أَشْكَال - أَنْوَاع

(3) يَخْتَشِفُ

(4) تَغْذِيَّة رَاجِعَة

(5) مِنْهُ

First, my group were given an old **alarm clock**<sup>(5)</sup>.



Clocks usually have two or three **hands**<sup>(6)</sup>, but this one had an **extra**<sup>(7)</sup> red hand. "If you use it correctly, it will make a loud noise," the teacher said. "You must move the red hand to the time at which you want to **wake up**<sup>(8)</sup>."

It **took**<sup>(9)</sup> us some time to understand how to **move**<sup>(10)</sup> it, but finally the alarm worked. It was very **loud**<sup>(11)</sup>. If I heard that noise in the morning, I would wake up **immediately**<sup>(12)</sup>!

Next, we were asked to find our school on an old **map**<sup>(13)</sup> of the city. "You should look for the name of our street in the **list**<sup>(14)</sup> on the **back**<sup>(15)</sup> of the map," the teacher said. "If you find **square**<sup>(16)</sup> G5 on the map, you can see where our school is."

After that, my group were given an old camera and a film. "You must put the film inside the camera," my teacher said. That was really difficult. If we did it wrong, it would **damage**<sup>(17)</sup> the film. **Fortunately**<sup>(18)</sup>, Hana in my group had helped her father use an old camera and so she knew what to do. Then we **clicked**<sup>(19)</sup> the button on the camera lots of times and asked the teacher if we could see the **results**<sup>(20)</sup>.

"If you take the camera to a **special**<sup>(21)</sup> shop, they will show you the photos," said the teacher. "But you must **pay for**<sup>(22)</sup> that, and you must wait for some time until you can see them." We decided not to do this!

In my opinion, some old technology is fun to use, but I'm pleased we have **apps**<sup>(23)</sup> on our phones today. I think that most things are a lot easier to do these days!

Dalia

- (6) عقرب الساعة
- (7) إضافي - زائد
- (8) يستيقظ
- (9) يستغرق (وقت)
- (10) يُحرَّك - يتحرك
- (11) عالي الصوت
- (12) على الفور
- (13) خريطة
- (14) قائمة
- (15) ظهر - خلف
- (16) ميدان - فُرْج
- (17) يتلف
- (18) أحسن الحظ
- (19) ينقر - يضغط
- (20) نتائج
- (21) خاص
- (22) يدفع ثمن
- (23) تطبيقات

## Driverless cars

People born in ten years from now will probably never learn how to drive. Why? Because our cars won't need drivers and computers will do all the work for us.

There are already **driverless**<sup>(1)</sup> cars in many places, but at the moment, they are only being **tested**<sup>(2)</sup>. The computers they use must be able to **recognise**<sup>(3)</sup> other **vehicles**<sup>(4)</sup>, **respond**<sup>(5)</sup> to people and things on the road, and know when the car must **slow down**<sup>(6)</sup> or stop.

For some people, the **idea**<sup>(7)</sup> of a car **without**<sup>(8)</sup> a driver is a **frightening**<sup>(9)</sup> **thought**<sup>(10)</sup>. However, **experts**<sup>(11)</sup> say that 90% of **accidents**<sup>(12)</sup> are because of **mistakes**<sup>(13)</sup> made by people. Often it is because people are talking on their phones or feeling tired. With driverless cars, people are **free**<sup>(14)</sup> to send texts, or even sleep, without **danger**<sup>(15)</sup>.

The computers in driverless cars should also make it faster to travel around cities because they will choose the best way. They will also **cause**<sup>(16)</sup> less **pollution**<sup>(17)</sup> because there will be less **traffic**<sup>(18)</sup>.

But how **safe**<sup>(19)</sup> are these cars? Some people say that they do not work well in bad weather. **So far**<sup>(20)</sup>, there have been at least 12 accidents with driverless cars in America (although 11 of these were caused by other cars). So, it might take a long time for people to feel **relaxed**<sup>(21)</sup> enough to read a book while they travel.

In the near future, driverless cars will probably become as **familiar**<sup>(22)</sup> as the cars of today. In the past, people were also very worried by the idea of cars with **engines**<sup>(23)</sup>. In the nineteenth century in England, when cars became **popular**<sup>(24)</sup>, the **law**<sup>(25)</sup> said that a man had to walk in front of them with a red **flag**<sup>(26)</sup> to **warn**<sup>(27)</sup> people. The law didn't change until 1896.



- (1) بدون سائق
- (2) يختبر
- (3) يتعرف علي
- (4) مركبات
- (5) يتجاوب - يستجيب
- (6) يُبطئ
- (7) فكرة
- (8) بدون
- (9) مُخيف
- (10) فكرة
- (11) خبراء
- (12) حوادث
- (13) أخطاء
- (14) مُتفرِّغ - حُر
- (15) الخطر
- (16) يُسبب
- (17) التلوث
- (18) حركة المرور
- (19) آمن
- (20) حتى الآن
- (21) مسترخي
- (22) شائع - معروف
- (23) مُحركات
- (24) شائع - مُنتشر
- (25) القانون
- (26) غَلَم
- (27) يُحذّر



# General Exercise on Units 7, 8 & 9

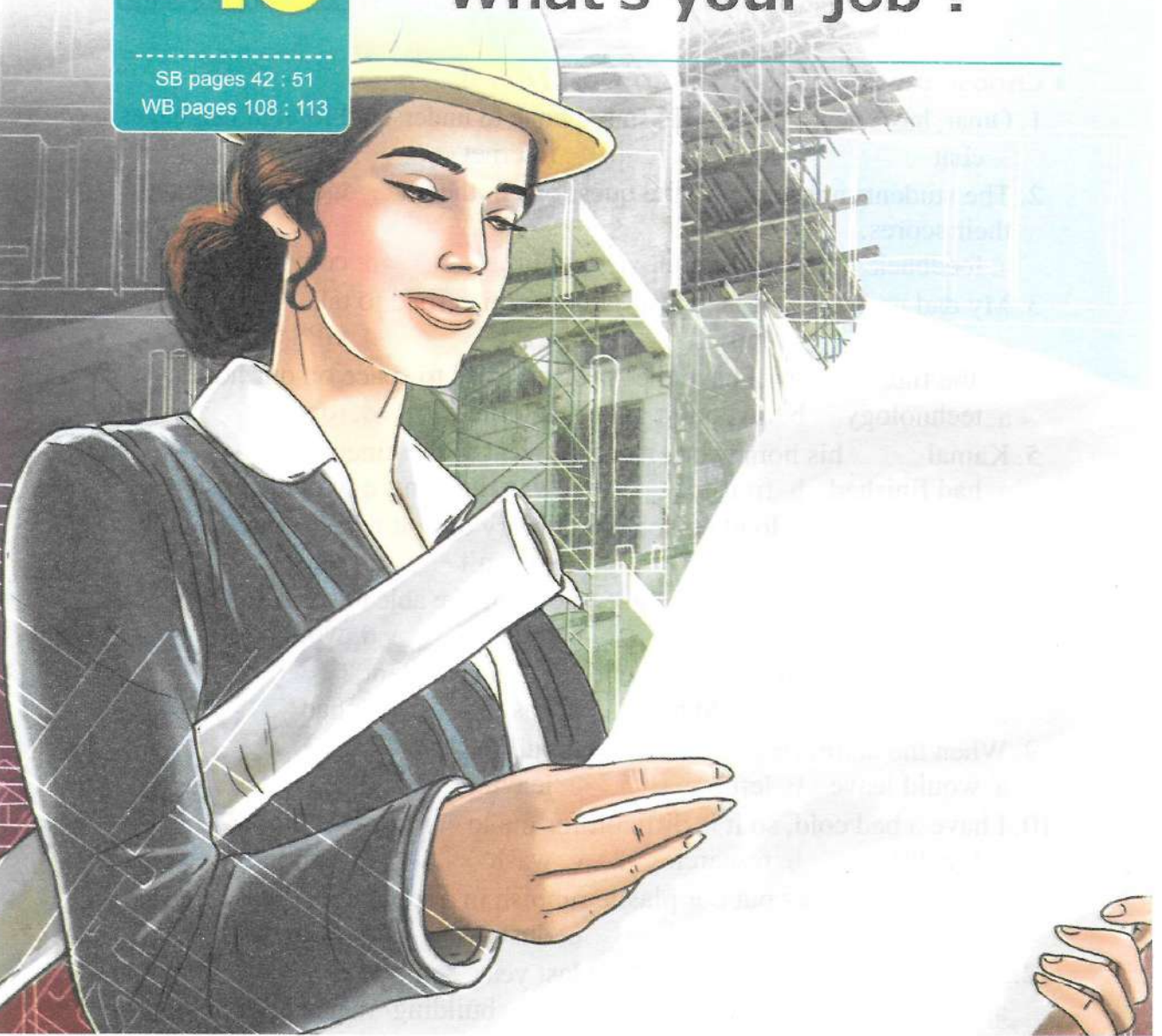
Collected from SB & WB

تدريبات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

## \* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Omar, has a new ..... on his smartphone to understand foreign languages.  
a. chat                      b. app                      c. internet                      d. click
2. The students answered all the questions in the ..... and then checked their scores.  
a. feedback                      b. invention                      c. quiz                      d. computer
3. My dad uses ..... if he doesn't know which road to take.  
a. vehicle                      b. app                      c. CPR                      d. GPS
4. In the future, we will have the ..... to travel to space on our holidays.  
a. technology                      b. invention                      c. internet                      d. robot
5. Kamal ..... his homework when he went to the cinema.  
a. had finished                      b. finished                      c. was finishing                      d. would finish
6. You ..... make a loud noise in the library or you will get into trouble.  
a. can                      b. should                      c. mustn't                      d. must
7. If Magda ..... a language course, she would be able to speak to foreigners.  
a. does                      b. will do                      c. did                      d. would do
8. What would you do if your friend ..... an accident ?  
a. have                      b. would have                      c. has                      d. had
9. When the alarm rings, we ..... the building.  
a. would leave                      b. left                      c. leaving                      d. leave
10. I have a bad cold, so it is difficult for me to .....  
a. breathe                      b. research                      c. wash                      d. respond
11. We should always put our plastic rubbish in a separate .....  
a. wrap                      b. bin                      c. dust                      d. floor
12. A new school ..... in our village last year.  
a. built                      b. was built                      c. was building                      d. had been built
13. Fortunately, the police could ..... the mystery and catch the criminal.  
a. solve                      b. make                      c. find                      d. do
14. It's very easy to ..... around in that city because the public transport is cheap and efficient.  
a. get                      b. find                      c. stay                      d. say
15. There was an emergency, so the school was .....  
a. serviced                      b. navigated                      c. evacuated                      d. injured
16. The boys could help the injured man because they had learnt how to give .....  
a. danger                      b. first aid                      c. hygiene                      d. emergency services

# What's your job ?



## Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- ✦ **Reading** : An article about jobs
- ✦ **Writing** : An email asking for advice ; a personal CV
- ✦ **Listening** : Students at a job fair
- ✦ **Speaking** : Talking about job opportunities

- ✦ **Language** : Reported speech : statements and questions
- ✦ **Life Skills** : Self-management : Planning for the world of work





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

application(n)	تطبيق - طلب التحاق	reassurance(n)	طمأننة - سَكينة -
applied(adj)	تطبيقي - عملي	reassure(d) (v)	طمأنينة - تشجيع
apply(ied) (v)	يُطَبِّق - يتقدم بطلب	reassuring(adj)	يُطمئن
apprenticeship(n)	(فترة) التدريب المهني	reward(ed) (v - n)	مُطْمِئِن
attendant(n)	مُرافق - خادم	rewarding(adj)	يكافئ - مكافأة
Casualty Department	قسم الطوارئ	skill(n)	مُجْزِي
casualty(n)	خسارة - حالة وفاة	stress(ed) (v - n)	مهارة
construction(n)	بناء - تشييد	stressful(adj)	يُضغَط - يؤكد على -
contract(n)	عقد - وثيقة تعاقد	succeed (ed) (v)	ضغَط
degree(n)	شهادة جامعية - درجة	successful(adj)	صاغَط - مُجْهِد
industry(n)	صناعة - نشاط اقتصادي	training(n)	ينجَح
practical(adj)	عملي - تطبيقي		النجاح
qualification(n)	مُؤَهَّل - تأهَّل		ناجَح
qualified(adj)	مُؤَهَّل / لديه مُؤَهَّل		تدريب
qualify(ied) (v)	يتأهل - يؤهَّل		

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

airline(n)	خط طيران	interested(adj)	مُهِتَم
career(n)	مهنة	involve(d) (v)	يشمَل / يتضمن
challenge(d) (n - v)	تَحَدِّي - يتحدى	knowledge(n)	المُغْرِفة
characteristics(n)	بِسمات - خصائص	non-biased(adj)	محايد - غير متحيّز
charity(n)	جمعية خيرية	nursing(n)	التمريض
chemistry(n)	الكيمياء	obviously(adv)	من الواضح / بوضوح
college(n)	مدرسة عليا - كُلية	option(n)	خيار - بديل
cycle(d) (v)	يقود دراجة	particular(adj)	مُحدَّد
deadline(n)	موعد نهائي	products(n)	منتجات
despite(preposition)	برغم	progress(n)	التقدم
develop(ed) (v)	يُطَوِّر - يكتشف	pursue(d) (v)	يواسِل - يتعقِب - يلاحق
eligible(adj)	مُؤَهَّل - ذو جدارة	route(n)	مسار - خط سير
frightened(adj)	خائف	the public(n)	الجمهور - عامة الناس

frustrating(adj)	مُخِبط	tiring(adj)	مُتْعِب - مُرهق
graduate(d) (v - n)	يُتَخَرِّج - خَرَّج	trade(n)	تجارة - حرفة
hold - held(v)	يقيم / يعقد	vast(adj)	واسع - عريض
incredibly(adv)	بشكل غير معقول	ward(n)	عنبر (قسم في مستشفى)
Information Technology (IT)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات		
interact(ed) (v)	يتفاعل		

### 3 Definitions التعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>apply(ied) (v)</b> يُطَبِّق - يتقدم بطلب	to make a formal request, usually in writing
<b>apprenticeship(n)</b> (فترة) التدريب المهني	(a period of time) working in order to learn skills needed to do a job
<b>attendant(n)</b> عامل - قائم بالخدمة	a person whose job involves helping the public
<b>casualty department</b> قسم الطوارئ	the department of a hospital providing immediate treatment for emergency cases
<b>construction(n)</b> بناء - تشييد	the work of building something
<b>contract(n)</b> عَقْد - وثيقة تعاقد	a legal agreement between two or more parties to perform a certain job or work
<b>degree(n)</b> شهادة جامعية - درجة	a qualification you receive when you finish university
<b>industry(n)</b> صناعة - نشاط صناعي أو عملي	a particular type of business that produces a particular مُعَيَّن type of goods or services خدمات
<b>practical(adj)</b> عملي - تطبيقي	relating to real activities and events
<b>qualifications(n)</b> مُؤَهَّلَات	skills or knowledge that make you eligible for a job or work
<b>rewarding(adj)</b> مُجْزِي - مُكافئ	doing something that makes you feel good
<b>skill(n)</b> مهارة	the ability to do something well
<b>stressful(adj)</b> مُرهق - مُؤرِّق	causing worry

### Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Definitions

1. .... is the work of building something.

(بور سعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Degree      b. Apprenticeship      c. Industry      d. Construction



2. A/An ..... is a period of time working in order to learn skills to do a job. (سوهاج - أخصيم ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. apprenticeship b. industry c. pressure d. degree
3. The department of a hospital providing immediate treatment for emergency cases is called ..... Department. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. Casualty b. Children c. Bones d. Mental health
4. A ..... is defined as an agreement between two or more parties, to perform a certain job or work.  
 a. degree b. disagreement c. certificate d. contract
5. To ..... is to make a formal request, usually in writing.  
 a. reassure b. qualify c. apply d. reward
6. The adjective ..... describes something that makes you feel good.  
 a. flexible b. rewarding c. reliable d. qualified
7. .... means learning the skills you need for a job.  
 a. Rewarding b. Applying c. Training d. Contracting
8. A /An ..... is a person whose job involves helping the public.  
 a. attendant b. fair c. experience d. expert
9. A ..... is a qualification you receive when you finish university.  
 a. quality b. graduate c. pay d. degree
10. .... is a particular type of business that produces a particular type of goods or services.  
 a. Vet b. Statement c. Industry d. Stand

## 2 Key Vocabulary

11. To apply for this job, you should have special ..... in teaching children. (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. pains b. stresses c. skills d. trades
12. I decided to ..... to a nursing college and then did my training. (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. reply b. imply c. apply d. qualify
13. Sami got a/an ..... to learn the skills necessary to become a chef. (الغربية - سفنود ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. apprenticeship b. accuracy c. happiness d. relationship
14. Too many installed ..... on a mobile makes it slow.  
 a. applications b. constructions c. reassurance d. qualifications
15. The company will provide a/an ..... course. (الفيوم - يوسف الصديق ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. ingredient b. allergy c. training d. stressful
16. She looks frightened. Try to ..... her.  
 a. reassure b. construct c. apply d. upset
17. The tourist ..... brings in billions of dollars to countries.  
 a. industry b. instruction c. construction d. destruction
18. What are the ..... needed for the new job as a teacher ? (الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. skulls b. quantities c. qualifications d. scales
19. This offer ..... only to new students. (المنيا - مغاغة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. blogs b. develops c. improves d. applies

20. Swimming pool ..... kept a constant watch on the swimmers.

(الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. engineers      b. teachers      c. doctors      d. attendants

21. Ali loves his job because it's very .....

(الإسكندرية - غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. stressful      b. rewarding      c. qualified      d. boring

22. A person in trouble needs ..... most.

- a. reassurance      b. construction      c. application      d. anxiety

23. Those who help their community should be .....

- a. punished      b. blogged      c. qualified      d. rewarded

24. A good leader has the ability to work under .....

(الإسكندرية - المنتزه ٢٠٢٤)

- a. degree      b. success      c. industry      d. stress

25. The training is ..... ; you are going to practise making things with your hands.

(أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. oral      b. practical      c. theoretical      d. virtual

26. The ..... of the new road has been completed.

(سوهاج - ساقلته ٢٠٢٤)

- a. industry      b. instruction      c. construction      d. destruction

27. The war led to heavy ..... among civilians, especially women and children.

(البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)

- a. casualties      b. reconstruction  
c. construction      d. hygiene

28. My brother has a ..... in engineering.

(الإسكندرية - وسط الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. license      b. degree      c. sign      d. mark

### 3 Important Vocabulary

29. In Britain, you are ..... to vote when you are eighteen years old.

(البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. obvious      b. eligible      c. employable      d. stressful

30. I have to accept the offer. I have no other .....

(الجيزة - أبو النمرس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. activities      b. qualifications      c. options      d. details

31. You should apply for the job before the .....

(القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. activities      b. wrinkle line      c. deadline      d. offline

32. Your bag is very wonderful. Was it made of real .....

(الجيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٤)

- a. leather      b. skin      c. wood      d. steel

33. The teacher helped students to ..... their creative writing skills.

(القاهرة - المرج ٢٠٢٣)

- a. lose      b. destroy      c. damage      d. develop

34. Climbing the mountain was very ....., but amusing.

(البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)

- a. challenge      b. challenging      c. changing      d. danger

35. The trip programme ..... a visit to the museum.

- a. involves      b. holds      c. challenges      d. pursues

36. He ..... me to a chess game.

- a. pursued      b. held      c. challenged      d. involved



37. My father was angry when he knew my ..... exam results.  
 a. rewarding      b. stressed      c. professional      d. frustrating
38. The meeting will be ..... in a five-star hotel.  
 a. held      b. pursued      c. challenged      d. involved
39. As soon as I graduate from the university, I will do post-..... studies.  
 a. knowledge      b. deadline      c. graduate      d. teammate
40. You should always ..... your dreams. Never stop trying.  
 a. pursue      b. cycle      c. challenge      d. involve

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

<b>do</b>	a degree in يدرس للحصول على شهادة في	<b>have</b>	medical knowledge لديه معلومات طبية
	training يحصل على تدريب		a talk with يتحدث مع
	a job يؤدي وظيفة/ مهمة	<b>have/get</b>	a degree in يحصل على شهادة جامعية في
<b>do/get</b>	an apprenticeship with يحصل على تدريب عملي لدي	<b>make</b>	furniture يصنع أثاث منزلي
<b>get/find</b>	a job يحصل على وظيفة	<b>meet</b>	a deadline يُنفَّذ ... في الموعد المحدد

### 2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
apply يُطبَّق	make use of, harness
be successful ينجح	be a success
follow يتابع / يتعقب	pursue, chase
frightened خائف	scared, afraid, horrified
industry نشاط اقتصادي	activity, business
reassuring مُطمئن	comforting
rewarding مُجزّي	satisfying, worthwhile
stressful ضاغط - مُجهّد	worrying, demanding, tiring
vast واسع / فسيح	giant, huge

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
reassuring مُطمئن	worrying, depressing, discouraging مُقلق / محبط
practical عملي - تطبيقي	theoretical, impractical نظري
rewarding مُجزّي	unrewarding غير مُجزّي
stressful ضاغط - مُجهّد	relaxing, easy, lighthearted مُريح / سهل
vast واسع / فسيح	small, tiny, narrow ضيق / ضيق

#### 4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a long way from	بعيداً عن	good for	مفيد لـ / صالح لـ
a variety of	تَنَوُّع / تشكيلة من	good to	طيب مع
at the weekend	في العطلة الأسبوعية	Job Fair	ندوة عن الوظائف
at times	أحياناً	leave for school	يغادر إلى المدرسة
be essential for	ضروري لـ	legal agreement	اتفاق قانوني
be late for	يتأخر علي	like best about	أكثر شيء يحبه في
can't wait	مُتَلَهِّف	not really	ليس صحيحاً
caring for people	الاهتمام بالناس	popular with	محبوب لدى - ذو شعبية مع
good about	الجيد في	problem solving	حل المشكلات
good at	جيد في		

#### 5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

apply to	يتقدم بطلب إلى	communicate with	يتواصل مع
break down	يتعطل	decide to	يقرر أن
care for	يهتم لأمر - يُراعي	interact with	يتفاعل مع
choose to	يختار أن	look for	يبحث عن
communicate ... to	يُبلغ ... لـ	qualify as	يتأهل كـ

#### 6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

##### contract - contact

- **contract (n)** عَقْد (اتفاق مكتوب)  
- I have signed **the contract**. Now, this villa is mine.
- **contact (n)** اتصال - تواصل  
- After leaving school, I have had little **contact** with my schoolmates.

##### practical - theoretical

- **practical (adj)** عملي - تطبيقي  
- Try to find a **practical** solution to the problem.
- **theoretical (adj)** نظري  
- Although he has **theoretical** knowledge المعرفة, he did not succeed in his first job.

##### training - exercise

- **training (n)** تدريب (لاكتساب أو تحسين مهارة معينة)  
- You need to do more **training** to be one of the main players of the team.
- **exercise (n)** تدريب (بغرض اللياقة أو قياس مهارة معينة)  
- I take some **exercises** after studying the lesson to see how well I have done.



## Exercises On Vocabulary Study

- ☆ **MRQ** : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. You can do ..... . (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. a training      b. things well      c. work experience  
 d. much money      e. variety
2. 'Do' collocates with ..... . (الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. attendant      b. degree      c. industry  
 d. apprenticeship      e. promise
3. The antonyms of 'reassure' are ..... . (الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. encourage      b. depress      c. comfort  
 d. inspire      e. discourage
4. I love my job although it is very ..... ; I work from 8 am till 6 pm. (أسيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. tired      b. stressful      c. easy  
 d. tiring      e. stressed
5. "He is always stressed when he faces difficult situations."  
 The antonyms of 'stressed' are ..... . (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. gloomy      b. relaxed      c. disrupted  
 d. worried      e. lighthearted
6. My friend's work is ..... . He is a great businessman. (المنيا - مغاغة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. a success      b. success      c. successful  
 d. failure      e. annoying
7. He travelled to Germany to ..... a degree in Engineering. (الاسكندرية - الجيزه ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. do      b. give      c. have  
 d. make      e. tell
8. "Amira was frightened when she saw a snake." The synonyms of  
 'frightened' are ..... . (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. cheerful      b. scared      c. guilty  
 d. horrified      e. pleased
9. "You have to follow your goal." The synonyms of 'follow' are ..... . (البحيرة - الدلتا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. miss      b. lose      c. chase  
 d. leave      e. pursue

- ☆ **MCQ** : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr Ahmed is ..... to teach adults. (الدقهلية - ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. qualification      b. qualify      c. qualifier      d. qualified
2. I was very happy when my son qualified ..... an engineer. (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. in      b. to      c. as      d. at

3. During final exams, students are usually .....  
 a. stress                      b. stressful                      c. stressfully                      d. stressed (البديرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)
4. My daughter is ..... of Mansura University.  
 a. graduated                      b. graduation                      c. a graduate                      d. graduate (الدقهلية - السنبلوين ٢٠٢٤)
5. You should care ..... your health.  
 a. at                      b. for                      c. with                      d. on (أسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)
6. He is working hard to ..... the deadline.  
 a. give                      b. meet                      c. tell                      d. earn
7. 'Stressful' is to 'worrying' as "....." is to 'comforting'.  
 a. reassuring                      b. affectionate                      c. sure                      d. a & b
8. I applied ..... the embassy السفارة to renew my passport.  
 a. for                      b. of                      c. to                      d. a & c
9. He succeeded in communicating his message ..... citizens المواطنين.  
 a. with                      b. on                      c. in                      d. to
10. I live a long way ..... my school.  
 a. in                      b. from                      c. at                      d. onto
11. All members of the team are now doing the final ..... before the match.  
 a. degree                      b. skill                      c. exercise                      d. training
12. This solution is ..... It is easy to carry it out.  
 a. theory                      b. theoretical                      c. practice                      d. practical

## PART III

## READING &amp; LISTENING

## 1 Reading Texts

## What's your job?

Lesson 1 SB page 42

In this week's article called **What's your job?** We're talking to two young professionals<sup>(1)</sup> about their work.

Ali works in the **casualty department**<sup>(2)</sup> at a **busy**<sup>(3)</sup> hospital. He says that, **despite**<sup>(4)</sup> the long hours and hard work, the job is **incredibly**<sup>(5)</sup> **rewarding**<sup>(6)</sup>.

## Why did you choose to become a nurse?

Well, I've always enjoyed **caring for**<sup>(7)</sup> people, so it **seemed**<sup>(8)</sup> a natural thing to do. I decided to **apply to**<sup>(9)</sup> **nursing**<sup>(10)</sup> **college**<sup>(11)</sup>, did my **training**<sup>(12)</sup> and then got a job here.



- (1) المحترفين
- (2) قسم الطوارئ
- (3) مزدحم
- (4) برغم
- (5) بشكل غير معقول
- (6) مُجْزِي
- (7) الاهتمام بـ
- (8) يبدو
- (9) يتقدم بطلب إلى
- (10) التمريض
- (11) مدرسة عليا - كُتَيْة
- (12) التدريب



## Do you like your job?

Yes, I love it, although it is very **stressful**<sup>(13)</sup> at times. People are sometimes **frightened**<sup>(14)</sup>, so part of my job is to make them feel calm, which can be hard.

## Is there anything you don't enjoy?

Not really, although I work from 7 am till 6 pm every day, which is very **tiring**<sup>(15)</sup>.

## What skills do you need to be a successful nurse?

You need to be a good **communicator**<sup>(16)</sup> – a lot of nursing is about listening to people's **worries**<sup>(17)</sup> and **explaining**<sup>(18)</sup> what the doctors are going to do. You need to have good **medical**<sup>(19)</sup> **knowledge**<sup>(20)</sup> too, but understanding and kindness are really important.

مُجهِد (13)

خائف (14)

مُتعب - مُرهق (15)

شخص لبق - مُحاور (16)

القلق (17)

يوضح - يشرح (18)

طبي (19)

المعرفة (20)

## Lesson 1 SB page 43

Nadia is a **scientist**<sup>(1)</sup> and works in a **laboratory**<sup>(2)</sup> as a **chemist**<sup>(3)</sup>.

## Why did you choose to become a scientist?

My best subject at school was **chemistry**<sup>(4)</sup>, so I decided to study it at university. After I **graduated**<sup>(5)</sup>, I got a two-year **contract**<sup>(6)</sup> to work here.

## What do you like best about your job?

I'm a very **practical**<sup>(7)</sup> person and a lot of my job is about trying to **improve**<sup>(8)</sup> **products**<sup>(9)</sup> or **develop**<sup>(10)</sup> new ones. I enjoy the **challenges**<sup>(11)</sup> and the **variety**<sup>(12)</sup> of my work.

## Are there any challenges in your job?

Of course any job has challenges. It can sometimes be difficult when you're working on **several**<sup>(13)</sup> products and each one has a **deadline**<sup>(14)</sup> to meet.

## What qualifications do you need to be a successful scientist?

**Obviously**<sup>(15)</sup>, you need a **degree**<sup>(16)</sup> in science, but you also have to be good at **problem solving**<sup>(17)</sup>. It's important to be able to **communicate**<sup>(18)</sup> your ideas to other people too, and that can be difficult sometimes if they're not scientists.



عالم (1)

معمل (2)

كيميائي - صيدلي (3)

الكيمياء (4)

يتخرج (5)

عقد (6)

عملي (7)

يُحَسِّن (8)

منتجات (9)

يُطَوِّر - يكتشف (10)

تَحْدِي (11)

تَنَوُّع (12)

عديد - كثير العدد (13)

موعد نهائي (14)

من الواضح (15)

شهادة جامعية (16)

حل المشكلات (17)

ينقل - يُوضِّل (18)

## 2 Listening Texts

Lesson 2 SB page 44

**Narrator :** Ahmed**Man :** Did you find out about any **job opportunities**<sup>(1)</sup> at the **job fair**<sup>(2)</sup>, Ahmed ?**Ahmed :** I had a talk with a man from an **IT**<sup>(3)</sup> company and he said that there were lots of jobs for young people in his **company**<sup>(4)</sup>. He told me that I needed to have good maths and IT skills but also English. He said that most people in IT used English at work. I asked him if I needed to do a **degree**<sup>(5)</sup> in information technology and he said "no".**Narrator :** Sarah**Woman :** Hello Sarah. Was the job fair interesting ?**Sarah :** Yes, I've decided what I want to do as a job now.**Woman :** Oh, what's that ?**Sarah :** I want to be a **flight attendant**<sup>(6)</sup> for an **international airline**<sup>(7)</sup> I talked to a woman from an airline company and she said that it was a really interesting job. She told me that I had to speak **at least**<sup>(8)</sup> two other languages as well as Arabic, so I'm going to start learning French. I asked her **how many** countries she has visited and she said that **so far**<sup>(9)</sup> she'd been to over 40 - imagine that !**Narrator :** Omar**Fatima :** Did you get useful information about work at the fair, Omar ?**Omar :** Yes. I'm not going to go to university, but I'm going to learn a **trade**<sup>(10)</sup>. I spoke to a man who owns a **construction company**<sup>(11)</sup> and I told him that I didn't really like studying and what I wanted to do something **practical**<sup>(12)</sup>.**Fatima :** Well, you've always been really good at making and fixing things. Mum and Dad agree, too.**Omar :** I know. That's what I told him. He asked me whether I had had any work **experience**<sup>(13)</sup> and I told him that I'd been helping our uncle make furniture for a few years. He said that would be useful and that I should try and get an **apprenticeship**<sup>(14)</sup> in a local company.

- (1) فرص عمل
- (2) مَعرِض
- (3) تكنولوجيا المعلومات
- (4) شركة
- (5) درجة علمية
- (6) مضيفة طيران
- (7) خط طيران دولي
- (8) على الأقل
- (9) حتى الآن
- (10) تجارة أو حرفة
- (11) شركة بناء وتشبيد
- (12) عملي
- (13) خبرة
- (14) تدريب مهني



- Woman** : It's a really interesting job.  
**Ahmed** : Do I need to do a degree in Information Technology ?  
**Man 1** : There are lots of jobs for young people in my company.  
**Omar** : I'm interested in doing a practical job.  
**Man 2** : Do you have any work experience ?

### Listen to the phone messages and report what the people said

- Samir** : Hello, this is Samir. The bus has **broken down**<sup>(1)</sup> so, I'll be late for the meeting.  
**Hassan** : Hello, my name's Hassan. I read the story that is online and I really like it.  
**Dalia** : Hi Nabila, this is Dalia. I'm sorry you're ill and didn't come to school today, but you don't need to worry, there isn't much homework to do.  
**Mum** : Hi Laila, Mum here. I'm working late this evening. There is some fish and rice in the fridge so you can cook it yourself if you're hungry.  
**Tarek** : Ahmed, it's Tarek. Have you seen the news ? **Turn on**<sup>(2)</sup> the TV, because it's **very exciting**<sup>(3)</sup>.



- (1) يتعطل  
 (2) يشغل (جهاز)  
 (3) مثيرة للغاية

## PART IV LANGUAGE

### Reported Speech الكلام الغير مباشر

#### 1 Reported statements : الجمل الخبرية في الكلام غير المباشر

الكلام المباشر هو كلام منقول عن المتحدث بنفس النص و يوضع بين علامات تنصيص ( "...." ) :

**ex.** - Omar said, "I don't like fish".

= "I don't like fish", said Omar.

(مباشر Direct)

الكلام غير المباشر هو كلام مُبَلَّغ عن المتحدث وتغيير فيه الضمائر والأزمنة و بعض ظروف

الزمان والمكان وتُحذف علامات التنصيص والفاصلة :

**ex.** - Omar said that he didn't like fish.

(غير مباشر Indirect)

٣ يتم تحويل الجملة الخبرية إلى الكلام غير المباشر كالتالي :

١ نبدأ بالمتحدث (speaker).

٢ نستخدم فعل إبلاغ مناسب للجملة الخبرية مثل :

قال شاكيًا – said – reported – answered – replied – complained – explained – promised – remarked .....etc. أبدى ملاحظة

لاحظ ضرورة استخدام المفعول (المُخاطَب) بعد أفعال الإبلاغ التالية :

(مخاطب) + ذكّر reminded – أكد assured – told

٢ نستخدم (that) للربط، و يمكن حذفها.

٤ نحذف علامات التنصيص (.....) كما نحذف الفاصلة السفلى (,)

### Mini Test 1

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sama said .....

a. I like fish      b. , I liked fish      c. , "I like fish".      d. a & b

2. Sama told me .....

a. I like fish      b. I liked fish      c. she likes fish      d. she liked fish

3. I said ..... happy.

a. I was      b. that I was      c. a & b      d. I am

4. Omar ..... his friend was ill.

a. said      b. told      c. asked      d. advised

5. Omar ..... his friend he was ill.

a. said      b. told      c. asked      d. advised

### Tenses :

الأزمنة :

٥ يتحول الزمن إلى الزمن الأبعد في الكلام الغير مباشر كالتالي :

مباشر Direct	غير مباشر Reported
<b>Present simple</b> - "I <b>play</b> tennis", he said	<b>Past simple</b> - He said that he <b>played</b> tennis.
<b>Present continuous</b> - "I <b>am watching</b> a film", she explained.	<b>Past continuous</b> - She explained that she <b>was watching</b> a film.
<b>Past simple</b> - "Nada <b>wrote</b> a letter", he said.	<b>Past perfect / Past simple</b> - He said that Nada <b>wrote / had written</b> a letter.



<b>Present perfect</b> - "I <b>have seen</b> two lions", he said to me.	<b>Past perfect</b> - He told me that he <b>had seen</b> two lions.
<b>Past perfect</b> - "I <b>had tidied</b> my room before going out", he explained.	<b>Past perfect</b> - He explained that he <b>had tidied</b> his room before going out.
<b>Present perfect continuous</b> - "I <b>have been studying</b> for hours", he said.	<b>Past perfect continuous</b> - He said that he <b>had been studying</b> for hours.
<b>Past continuous</b> - "She <b>was drinking</b> coffee", he said to me.	<b>Past continuous / past perfect continuous</b> - He told me that she <b>was (had been) drinking</b> coffee.
<b>will / can / may</b> - "I <b>will buy</b> a sandwich", he said. - "My mother <b>can make</b> pizza", said Rodayna. - "He <b>may come</b> first", said Nada.	<b>would / could / might</b> - He said that he <b>would buy</b> a sandwich. - Rodayna said that her mother <b>could make</b> pizza. - Nada said that he <b>might come</b> first.
<b>must</b> - She said, "Drivers <b>must follow</b> the traffic lights". (قانون) - "I <b>must phone</b> him tomorrow", she said. (إلتزام فى المستقبل) - "We <b>must help</b> mum now", Ali said. (إلتزام فى المضارع) - "You <b>must be</b> hungry", I said to her. (استنتاج فى المضارع)	<b>must + inf. / would have to + inf. / had to + inf. / must have + p.p.</b> - She said that drivers <b>must follow</b> the traffic lights. - She said that she <b>would have to phone</b> him the day after. - Ali said they <b>had to help</b> mum then. - I told her that she <b>must have been</b> hungry.

٦ لا تتغير الأزمنة في الحالات التالية :

أ. إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة علمية ثابتة :

- ex.** - He said, "Lions **eat** meat".  
 - He said (that) lions **eat** meat.

ب. إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة ويدل على ذلك تعبيرات مثل :

said a moment ago – said a minute ago – said a short time ago  
 – said just now / ....etc.

- ex.** - Omar said a **moment ago**, "I'll buy some clothes **tomorrow**."  
 - Omar said a moment ago that he **will buy** some clothes **tomorrow**.

ج. إذا كان فعل القول في المضارع :

ex. - Amany says, "I don't like fish."

- Amany **says** she **doesn't** like fish.

د. لا تتحول الأزمنة في الحالتين الشرطيتين الثانية و الثالثة :

**ex.** - "If I **had** enough money, I **would buy** a newer car", said Leila.

= Leila said that if she **had** enough money, she **would buy** a newer car.

## Mini Test 2

- Apply

- ☀️ ⬡ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "I have a health problem," said Ahmed. Report.  
a. Ahmed said he has a health problem.  
b. Ahmed said he had a health problem.  
c. Ahmed said he had had a health problem.  
d. b & c
2. "I have had a health problem," said Ahmed. Report.  
a. Ahmed said he has a problem.  
b. Ahmed said he had a problem.  
c. Ahmed said he had had a problem.  
d. b & c
3. "I had a health problem," said Ahmed. Report.  
a. Ahmed said he has a health problem.  
b. Ahmed said he had a health problem.  
c. Ahmed said he had had a health problem.  
d. b & c
4. "Every citizen must follow the law." - The president said that every citizen ..... the law.  
a. must follow  
b. have to follow  
c. must have followed  
d. has followed
5. "I must leave now." - Rodayna said that she ..... leave then.  
a. must  
b. had to  
c. would have to  
d. have to
6. "I must leave tomorrow." - Rodayna said that she ..... the day after.  
a. must  
b. had to  
c. would have to  
d. have to
7. "Cairo is the biggest city in Africa," said Mr Ashraf. Mr Ashraf said Cairo ..... the biggest city in Africa.  
a. is  
b. was  
c. a & b  
d. had been
8. "Water freezes when the temperature is zero or below," said Mr Mamdouh. Mr Mamdouh said water ..... when the temperature is zero or below.  
a. freezes  
b. froze  
c. a & b  
d. frozen



## Time and place adverbs & demonstrative adjectives :

ظروف الزمان والمكان و صفات الإشارة :

٧ تحول ظروف الزمان و المكان كما يلي:

(لاحظ أن ظروف الزمان و المكان لا تتغير إلا إذا تغير زمان ومكان تبليغ الكلام)

Direct	Reported	Direct	Reported
now	then / at that time	tonight	that night
this	that	today	that day
these	those	the day before yesterday	two days before
here	there		
ago	before	the day after tomorrow	in two days' time
last week	the week before the previous week	next week	the week after the following week the next week
yesterday	the day before the previous day	tomorrow	the day after the following day the next day

**ex.** - He said, "I bought a car **yesterday**".

= He said (that) he bought / had bought a car **the day before**.

- "I am travelling to Aswan **tomorrow**", she said.

= She said she was travelling to Aswan **the day after**.

- He said, "I am very busy **this month**".

= He said that he was very busy **that month**.

### Mini Test 3

• Apply

• ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "I will come here again tomorrow."

- Mum said she would go ..... again the following day.

a. here                      b. there                      c. their                      d. theirs

2. "I am leaving today." - He said he was leaving .....

a. today                      b. this day                      c. that day                      d. the day after

3. "We arrived last month." - She said that they had arrived .....

a. in a month                      b. the month after  
c. the following month                      d. the month before

## Pronouns :

## الضمائر :

٨ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطَب كما يلي (فهم معنى الكلام يساعد في تحويل الضمائر) :

I	he / she / you / I	mine	his / hers / yours / mine
we	they / we	ours	theirs / ours
me	him / her / you / me	you (subj)	I / he / she / they / we / you
us	them / us	you (obj)	me / him / her / them / us
my	his / her / your / my	your	my/ his / her / their / our
our	their / our	yours	mine/ his / hers / theirs / ours / yours

ex. - He said, "My mother has called me".

= He said that his mother had called him.

- "I can't lend you my camera", he said to his sister.

= He told his sister that he couldn't lend her his camera.

## Mini Test 4

## ● Apply

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- "I'll surely help you." - Aya told me she would surely help .....  
a. me                      b. him                      c. her                      d. us
- "I'll surely help you." - Aya told Ali and me she would surely help .....  
a. me                      b. him                      c. her                      d. us
- "I'll surely help you." - Aya told mum she would surely help .....  
a. me                      b. him                      c. her                      d. us
- "I'll surely help you." - Aya told Ali and Omar she would surely help .....  
a. me                      b. him                      c. her                      d. them

## ملحظات هامة علي الجملة الخبرية في الكلام غير المباشر

١ لا تتحول الأزمنة بعد التعبيرات التالية :

I wish – would rather – would like – it is time / had better

ex. - "I wish I didn't waste my time", said Ahmed.

= Ahmed said (that) he wished he didn't waste his time.

٢ إذا كان المخاطب داخل علامات التنصيص يوضع خارجها بعد فعل القول :

ex. - "I'm hoping to come and see you next week, Menna", Ali said.

= Ali told Menna that he was hoping to go and see her the following week.



٣ في حالة وجود جملتين نستخدم (and that) أو (and added that) :

ex. - He said to me, "I don't understand unit 12. I want you to explain it again."  
= He told me that he didn't understand unit 12 and added that he wanted me to explain it again."

٤ لاحظ طريقة تحويل صيغة النصيحة (If I were you, ...) إلى الكلام الغير مباشر:

ex. "If I were you, I'd see a doctor", I said to him = I advised him to see a doctor.

٥ لاحظ تحويل (let's) :

ex. - He said to me, "Let's leave now".  
= He suggested leaving then.  
= He suggested that we should leave then.

### Mini Test 5

Apply

☉ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Mum said it was time I ..... to bed.  
a. go                      b. went                      c. have gone                      d. had gone
- "I will call you, mum." - Leen ..... she would call her.  
a. said to                      b. said to mum                      c. told                      d. told mum
- Omar said that he would come to my birthday party ..... he would get me a nice present.  
a. that                      b. and that                      c. and added that                      d. b & c
- "If I were you, I would work hard." - Kareem ..... work hard.  
a. said if he were I, he would                      b. said if he had been me, he would  
c. said if he is me, he will                      d. advised me to
- "Let's go for a walk." - Amira ..... for a walk.  
a. said let's go                      b. said let us to go  
c. suggested to go                      d. suggested going

2

### Reported «Yes / No» Questions : السؤال بـ «هل» في الكلام غير المباشر :

١ يبدأ السؤال بـ (هل) بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الأفعال الناقصة التالية :

Do / Does / Did - Have / Has / Had - Am / Is / Are / Was / Were /  
- Can / Could - Will / Would - May / Might - Shall / Should - Must -  
Need - Dare

٢ يتم تحويل السؤال بـ (هل) إلى الكلام الغير مباشر كالتالي :

.... + فاعل / مفعول + **if / whether** + (مخاطب) + **asked** + المُتحدث **Speaker** -

**Speaker** - **wondered** / **inquired** / **wanted to know** + **if / whether** + فاعل / مفعول + ..... -

١ نحذف علامات التنصيص (".....") و نحذف علامه الاستفهام ونضع نقطه مكانها.

٢ تتحول أفعال الإبلاغ كالتالي :

مُخاطب + **ask / asks** → مُخاطب + **say to / says to**  
مُخاطب + **asked** → مُخاطب + **said to**

٣ تتحول الأزمنة الي الأبعد مثل الجملة الخبرية.

٤ تتحول ظروف الزمان و المكان مثل الجملة الخبرية.

ex. - "Will you buy this T-shirt?" Ashraf said.

= Ashraf wondered if I would buy that T-shirt.

- "Is anyone here?" he asked.

= He asked if/whether anyone was there.

- "Have you met my sister?" Nada said to Reem.

= Nada asked Reem if she had met her sister.

- "Can you swim, Tarek?" said Omar.

= Omar asked Tarek if he could swim.

٥ عند وجود (do - does) كفعل مساعد فإنها تُحذف ويوضع الفعل الأساسي في زمن الماضي البسيط.

ex. - "Do you get up early, Mariam?" Zamzam said.

= Zamzam asked Mariam if/whether she got up early.

٦ عند وجود (did) كفعل مساعد فإنها تُحذف ويوضع الفعل الأساسي في زمن الماضي التام.

ex. - "Did you see the criminal?" the officer said.

= The officer asked if/whether I had seen the criminal.

٧ بعد (if / whether) يأتي الفاعل ثم الفعل (أي يتحول السؤال الي جملة خبرية)

ex. - "Can you make pizza?" she asked.

= She asked if / whether I could make pizza.

### ملحظات للمتعلمين Notes for Advanced level

١ عندما نستخدم (whether) فهي توحى بالتخيير :

ex. - "Do you want to go on foot or by car?" mum asked.

= Mum asked whether I wanted to go on foot or by car.

٢ تُعتبر (whether) أكثر دقة في حالة وجود (if) الشرطية حتى لا تتكرر أداة الشرط :

ex. - "Will you drive to work if you have a car?" Mohammed said to me.

= Mohammed asked me whether I would drive to work if I had a car.

٣ لاحظ أنه يمكن أن نستخدم (whether + to + inf.) بعد (wonder / want to know)

ex. - "Should I wait for Nada or leave?", Mariam wondered.

= Mariam wondered whether to wait for Nada or leave.



## Mini Test 6

### Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Mai ..... if I had some free time.  
a. said                      b. asked                      c. wondered                      d. b & c
- Mai ..... me if I had some free time.  
a. said                      b. asked                      c. wondered                      d. b & c
- "Are you busy now?" - Salma ..... if I am busy now.  
a. asks                      b. asked                      c. says                      d. said
- "Are you busy now?" - Salma ..... if I was busy then.  
a. asks                      b. asked                      c. says                      d. said
- "Will you help me?" - She wondered ..... I would help her.  
a. whether                      b. if                      c. a & b                      d. that
- "Do you go out very often?" - Amir wanted to know if ..... out very often.  
a. did I go                      b. I go                      c. I went                      d. went I
- She asked me ..... I would go out or stay at home.  
a. whether                      b. if                      c. that                      d. a & b

## 3 Reported Wh-Questions : الأسئلة في الكلام غير المباشر :

في الكلام المباشر، يبدأ السؤال بأحد أدوات الاستفهام التالية يليه الفعل المساعد :

what – when – where – why – who – whose – which – how ...

ex. - "Why has she arrived home late ?" asked Ali.

= Ali asked, "Why has she arrived home late ?"

تتكون جملة السؤال بأداة استفهام في الكلام غير المباشر من :

نص الكلام غير المباشر + أداة استفهام + فعل إبلاغ + مُبَلِّغ

Ali                      asked                      why                      she had arrived home late.

تستخدم أفعال الإبلاغ بنفس الطريقة التي تم شرحها في (Yes / No questions) :

ex. - Sama asked Abdo when he had got up.

- Sama wondered / wanted to know when Abdo had got up.

يستخدم الفاعل وليس الفعل المساعد بعد (أداة الاستفهام) في الكلام غير المباشر :

ex. - I wondered where she had gone. (Not : where had she)

تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطب مثل الجملة الخبرية :

ex. - Omar asked, "When will you explain the lesson for me, mum ?" (مباشر)

- Omar asked mum when she would explain the lesson for him. (غير مباشر)

تتحول بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان مثل الجملة الخبرية :

ex. - "Where are you now, Aya ?" , asked Ziad. (مباشر)

- Ziad asked Aya where she was then. (غير مباشر)

٧ تتحول الأزمنة مثل الجملة الخبرية :

ex. - "When are you leaving, Salma ?", asks father. (مباشر)

- Father asked Salma when she was leaving. (غير مباشر)

٨ لا تُستخدم (do - does) كأفعال مساعدة في الكلام غير المباشر ويتحول الفعل الأصلي إلى زمن الماضي البسيط (التصريف الثاني) :

ex. - "How do you go to school ?" asked Amir. (مباشر)

- Amir asked me how I went to school. (غير مباشر)

٩ لا تُستخدم (did) كفعل مساعد في الكلام غير المباشر ويتحول الفعل الأصلي إلى زمن الماضي التام :

ex. - "Why didn't you go to school, Tarik ?" I asked. (مباشر)

- I asked Tarik why he hadn't gone to school. (غير مباشر)

١٠ يمكن استخدام أفعال الإبلاغ الخاصة بالجملة الخبرية قبل أداة الاستفهام عند الرد على سؤال وليس في الكلام غير المباشر - لاحظ الفرق :

ex. - I told Ayman why the meeting was cancelled. (أخبرت أيمن عن سبب إلغاء الاجتماع)

- I asked Ayman why the meeting was cancelled.

(سألت أيمن عن سبب إلغاء الاجتماع)

### Mini Test 7

### Apply

☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I asked ..... he had visited there at the weekend.

a. if                      b. whether                      c. what                      d. where

2. I asked ..... he had gone at the weekend.

a. that                      b. who                      c. what                      d. where

3. Rokaya ..... why I was late.

a. asked                      b. wanted to know                      c. said                      d. a & b

4. Rokaya ..... me why I was late.

a. asked                      b. wanted to know                      c. said                      d. a & b

5. She wants to know what ..... doing.

a. was                      b. I was                      c. was I                      d. b & c

6. "Why do you shout at me?" - Sama wondered why I shouted at .....

a. she                      b. her                      c. hers                      d. herself

7. She asked where I ..... the day before.

a. had gone                      b. have gone                      c. am going                      d. would go

8. She asks where I ..... tomorrow.

a. had gone                      b. have gone                      c. am going                      d. was going



## Exercises On Language

Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Sherif ..... his dad to give him a lift to school because he was late.  
(غرب الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. asked                      b. questioned                      c. said                      d. wondered
2. Omar ..... me, "I need to find a new job."  
(أسوان ٢٠٢٤)  
a. told                      b. asked                      c. said to                      d. wanted to
3. Amira told Ali that ..... new dress was expensive.  
(شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. her                      b. his                      c. hers                      d. herself
4. Mum promised she ..... me a new mobile the following month.  
(الغربية - سمندود ٢٠٢٤)  
a. should buy                      b. buys                      c. would buy                      d. will buy
5. Dr Marwa said that she ..... look for a mechanic when her car broke down.  
(الدقهلية - السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٤)  
a. had been                      b. had to                      c. has to                      d. have to
6. She wanted to know if they would meet us the ..... week.  
(الاسكندرية - الجُمرُك ٢٠٢٤)  
a. after                      b. before                      c. following                      d. previous
7. The manager informed us that he ..... in Cairo the following day.  
(الدقهلية - أجا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. arrived                      b. had arrived                      c. was arriving                      d. would arrive
8. Omar said that his car ..... the day before.  
(البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. repaired                      b. had been repaired  
c. had repaired                      d. was repairing
9. Ali asked his son why ..... home late the night before.  
(شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. he had come                      b. had he come                      c. did he come                      d. he has come
10. I asked Mahmoud what ..... doing then.  
(أسيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. he was                      b. he is                      c. was he                      d. is he
11. Ali told Hani that the sun ..... in the morning.  
(الاسكندرية - المنتزه أول ٢٠٢٤)  
a. is rising                      b. rise                      c. rises                      d. rose
12. Sami asked ..... I would travel to Aswan the following day.  
(أسيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤)  
a. what                      b. where                      c. who                      d. if
13. I don't know ..... the teacher is in the laboratory or not.  
(الأقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)  
a. where                      b. what                      c. weather                      d. whether

- ## 2 Check your understanding

- 162





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

attention (n)	اهتمام - انتباه	hard-working(adj)	جاد في العمل
caring(adj)	مُهِتَم - مُرَاعِي	honest(adj)	صَادِق - أَمِين
communicator(n)	لَبِق - مُفَوِّه	loyal(adj)	مُخْلِص
compassion(n)	رَأْفَة - رَحْمَة	punctual(adj)	مُنْضَبِط - مُتَنَزِّم
compassionate(adj)	رَحِيم	reliable(adj)	موثوق به - يُعْتَمَد عَلَيْهِ
confident(adj)	وَاتِق - مُتَمَكِّن	team player(n)	شخص يجيد العمل الجماعي
flexible(adj)	مَرِن		

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

adapt(ed) to (phr. v)	يتكيف مع	office worker(n)	موظف إداري
aged(adj)	بالغ من العمر	opportunity(n)	فُرْصَة
availability(n)	جاهزية - إتاحة	patient(adj - n)	صَبُور - مريض
certificate(n)	شهادة	pay (n - v)	الراتب - يدفع مال
community(n)	المجتمع	personal	نُبذة شخصية
cuisine(n)	أسلوب الطهي	statement(n)	سَبَّاح
CV = Curriculum Vitae(n)	السيرة الذاتية	plumber(n)	سبَّاح
experience(n)	الخبرة - تجربة حياتية	Post Graduates(n)	الدراسات العليا
fair(n)	مُنْتَدِي - سَوْق - مَغْرَض	professional (n - adj)	مُحْتَرِف
fancy(ied) (v)	يتخيل	require(d) (v)	يُتَطَلَب - يَسْتَلْزَم
fire engines(n)	سيارات الإطفاء	shop assistant(n)	بائع / بائعة
global warming(n)	الاحتباس الحراري	siren(n)	بوق - صافرة إنذار
immediate(adj)	فوري	situation(n)	موقف
interests(n)	اهتمامات	support(ed) (n - v)	دَعْم - يَدْعَم
legal(adj)	قانوني / شرعي	teammates(n)	زملاء الفريق
necessary(adj)	ضروري	variety(n)	تَنَوُّع
		vet = veterinarian(n)	طبيب بيطري

### 3 Definitions التعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>attention(n)</b>	the act of listening to, looking at or thinking about something/somebody carefully
<b>caring(adj)</b>	describes someone who offers help and support

<b>communicator(n)</b> لَبِق - مُفَوِّه	someone who can explain their ideas and feelings in a way that others can understand
<b>confident(adj)</b> واثق - مُتَمَكِّن	describes someone who thinks that they can do things well
<b>flexible(adj)</b> مَرِن	describes someone who can change their behaviour/mind in different situations
<b>hard-working(adj)</b> جاد في العمل	working with a lot of effort
<b>honest(adj)</b> صادق - أمين	always telling the truth
<b>loyal(adj)</b> مُخْلِص	describes someone who supports their friends even when it's difficult
<b>punctual(adj)</b> مُنْضِيط - مُلْتَزِم	arriving, happening, or being done at exactly the time that was arranged
<b>reliable(adj)</b> موثوق به - يُعْتَمَد عليه	always doing what they say they will do
<b>team player(n)</b> شخص يجيد العمل الجماعي - شخص مُتعاون	a person who works well with others

### Exercises On Vocabulary

#### • Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Definitions

- The man who is able to talk about his ideas and emotions in a way that others understand is called .....  
(سوهاج - جرجا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. communicator    b. honest    c. confident    d. flexible
- ..... people can change their minds to suit new circumstances.  
(البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)  
a. Flexible    b. Feasible    c. Readable    d. Stressful
- ..... means arriving, happening, or being done at exactly the time that was arranged.  
a. Punctual    b. Reliable    c. Successful    d. Rewarding
- A/An ..... is a person who works well with others in a group.  
a. causality    b. communicator  
c. team player    d. attention
- ..... means always doing what they say they will do.  
a. Punctual    b. Reliable    c. Successful    d. Rewarding
- The adjective ..... describes someone who thinks that they can do things well.  
a. interested    b. confident    c. local    d. suitable





21. Helen Keller lived a busy life before she died in 1968, ..... 87.  
(البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤) a. age b. aged c. ages d. ageing
22. It's important for us to be able to ..... to different situations.  
(البحيرة - إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣) a. adopt b. adapt c. adept d. odd
23. All celebrities suffer to keep their ..... lives unpopular. (بورسعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٠٢٣) a. public b. personal c. personnel d. nearby
24. In a CV, an applicant has to write a personal ..... . a. statement b. graduate c. product d. ward
25. I'm going to apply for ..... graduate studies next month. a. mast b. most c. past d. post
26. When drivers hear the ..... of an ambulance, they must make way for it. a. siren b. statement c. community d. cuisine
27. The time of the journey depends on the ..... of train tickets. a. opportunity b. availability c. qualification d. apprenticeship
28. It is not ..... to drive on the left. a. successful b. honest c. legal d. aged
29. Try to be a good member of your ..... . a. siren b. statement c. community d. cuisine
30. He found a good ..... to work as a cashier in a supermarket. a. opportunity b. availability c. qualification d. apprenticeship

## PART II

## VOCABULARY STUDY

## 1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

<b>do</b>	things well	يقوم بالأشياء جيداً	<b>have</b>	variety	متنوع
<b>earn/make</b>	much money	يجني مالاً كثيراً	<b>offer</b>	help and support	يُقدم المساعدة والدعم
<b>get</b>	work experience	يكتسب خبرة عملية	<b>take</b>	a course	يأخذ دورة تدريبية
<b>give/pay</b>	attention	ينتبه	<b>tell</b>	the truth	يقول الصدق

## 2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
caring	مُهِتَم - مُرَاعِي
confident	واثق - مُتَمَكِّن
essential	ضروري - هام
flexible	مَرِن
hard-working	جاد في العمل
honest	أمين - مخلص
reliable	موثوق به - يُعْتَمَد عليه
	concerned, attentive, loving, considerate, affectionate
	self-assured, sure
	necessary, important
	adaptable, adjustable
	industrious, enthusiastic
	sincere, loyal
	dependable, trustworthy, trustful



### 3 المتضادات Antonyms

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
caring	غير مُكرث - قاسي
essential	غير ضروري - غير هام
flexible	غير مُرن
hard-working	كسول
honest	غير أمين / كاذب
loyal	خائن
punctual	متأخر
reliable	لا يُعتَقَد عليه
مُهمَم - مُراعي	uncaring, cruel
ضروري - هام	unnecessary, unimportant, trivial
مُرن	inflexible, rigid
جاد في العمل	lazy
صادق - أمين	dishonest, insincere, deceitful
مُخلص	disloyal, treacherous
مُنضبط - مُلتزم	late, tardy
يُعتَقَد عليه	unreliable, untrustworthy

### 4 تعبيرات و مصطلحات Expressions & Idioms

a natural thing to do	الكثير من
من الطبيعي القيام بهذا الشيء	plenty of
Post Graduate Certificate	شهادة الدراسات العليا
الاهتمام بالتفاصيل	sitting at a desk
Bachelor Degree in Science	الجلوس علي مكتب
شهادة البكالوريوس في العلوم	skills required
وظيفة الأحلام	المهارات المطلوبة
dream job	suitable for
Egyptian cuisine	مناسب لـ
المطبخ المصري	want a job helping people
أنشطة وقت الفراغ	يريد عملاً يساعد الناس
interested in	with their sirens sounding
مهتم بـ	وهي تُطلق صافراتها التحذيرية
on a training course	work experience
ضمن مقرر تدريبي	خبرة عملية
personal qualities	years of study
بسمات شخصية	سنوات الدراسة

### 5 فعل + حرف جر Verb + Preposition

adapt to + n/ (inf.+ing)	يتكيف مع	work in	يعمل في
find out about	يكتشف / يعرف عن	work on	يعمل على (تحسين/ تطوير)
help ... with	يساعد ... في	work with	يعمل في / علي
work as	يعمل كـ		

### 6 لاحظ الفرق Clear the confusion

punctual - puncture	
• <b>punctual (adj)</b>	مُنضبط - مُلتزم
- Being <b>punctual</b> makes him successful in his job.	
• <b>puncture (n)</b>	ثقب
- The tyre الإطّار is flat فارغ because there's a <b>puncture</b> in it.	

## Exercises On Vocabulary Study

★ **MRQ** : Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. "She has been doing exercise to become stronger and more flexible."  
The antonyms of 'flexible' are ..... . (الدقهلية - السنبلولين ٢٠٢٤)  
a. rewarding      b. inflexible      c. rigid  
d. caring      e. vast
2. I have heard from a/an ..... source that this company has financial problems. (الدقهلية - أجا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. confident      b. trusted      c. flexible  
d. unnecessary      e. reliable
3. The synonyms of the word 'honest' are ..... and ..... . (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)  
a. savage      b. sincere      c. traitor  
d. loyal      e. cruel
4. "To be honest, I don't think he has much chance of winning." The antonyms of the word 'honest' are ..... . (الشرقية - بلبس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. loyal      b. dishonest      c. innocent  
d. deceitful      e. genuine
5. "German cars are so reliable." The synonym of the word 'reliable' is ..... . (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. guilty      b. trustworthy      c. untrustworthy  
d. dependable      e. nasty

★ **MCQ** : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She felt ..... in her abilities and knew she could succeed. (الاقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)  
a. confidante      b. confidant      c. confident      d. ignorant
2. A medical professional must be ....., caring, and have excellent communication skills. (الشرقية - الأبراهيمية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. uncompassionate      b. compassionately  
c. compassion      d. compassionate
3. It was necessary for Aya to study her lessons. The synonym of the word "necessary" is ..... . (البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. allowed      b. inessential      c. essential      d. banned
4. Fresh fruits are good ..... your health. (الجيزة - بولاق الدكرور ٢٠٢٣)  
a. at      b. for      c. about      d. to
5. You are supposed to be ..... the truth, not lies.      d. earning  
a. doing      b. meeting      c. telling
6. You all should ..... attention to what he says.      d. earn  
a. give      b. meet      c. tell
7. He has ..... a language course.      d. a & b  
a. taken      b. met      c. earned



8. He has ..... much experience over the years.  
 a. met                      b. got                      c. offered                      d. done
9. "She is a ..... parent." Complete with the antonym of 'cruel'.  
 a. confident                      b. loving                      c. lazy                      d. strict
10. "You can depend on her." This means she is not .....  
 a. dependable                      b. trustworthy                      c. unreliable                      d. reliable
11. Taking a rest after hard work is a natural thing .....  
 a. do                      b. doing                      c. to do                      d. to doing
12. The ambulances were rushing through the street with their sirens .....  
 a. sound                      b. sounds                      c. sounded                      d. sounding
13. Now, scientists are working ..... a better medicine for this disease.  
 a. for                      b. with                      c. on                      d. inside

### PART III

## READING & LISTENING

### Reading Texts

Lesson 4 SB page 47

#### My Dream Job

Name : Mohammed

Age : 23

Dream job : Firefighter<sup>(1)</sup>

Skills : You should be:

- a **team-player**<sup>(2)</sup>
- **reliable**<sup>(3)</sup>
- a good communicator
- **flexible**<sup>(4)</sup>

Workplace : Central<sup>(5)</sup> Cairo

I always wanted to be a firefighter. When I was a little boy, I played with toy **fire engines**<sup>(6)</sup> and sometimes watched the fire engines driving down the streets with their **sirens**<sup>(7)</sup> **sounding**<sup>(8)</sup>. I knew that I wanted to help people and I also knew I wanted a job which wasn't in an office. I'm not great at sitting at a desk and wanted a job that was **outside**<sup>(9)</sup>, exciting and had a lot of variety.

**Firefighting**<sup>(10)</sup> can be dangerous and it can be very hard work, but I wouldn't do any other job. You must be able to communicate well with your **teammates**<sup>(11)</sup> and also be happy to **adapt to**<sup>(12)</sup> different **situations**<sup>(13)</sup> when **necessary**<sup>(14)</sup>.



- (1) رجل إطفاء
- (2) شخص يجيد العمل الجماعي
- (3) يُعتمد عليه
- (4) قَبِلَ
- (5) وسط - مركزي
- (6) سيارات الإطفاء
- (7) بوق - صافرة إنذار
- (8) يُصدر صوتاً
- (9) بالخارج
- (10) إطفاء الحرائق
- (11) زملاء الفريق
- (12) يتكيف مع
- (13) مواقف
- (14) ضروري

Do you **fancy**<sup>(15)</sup> a career as a firefighter? If you want an exciting job helping the **community**<sup>(16)</sup>, come and visit me on **Stand**<sup>(17)</sup> 21 at the Jobs **Fair**<sup>(18)</sup>.

**Date:** 23 May

**Time:** 9.00 – 14.00

If you're not **interested**<sup>(19)</sup> in firefighting, there are plenty of other jobs to find out about here at the Jobs Fair. Bring your friends and family along – you never know what **career**<sup>(20)</sup> is out there for you!

(15) يتخيل

(16) المجتمع

(17) كشك / منضه

(18) معرض

(19) مهتم

(20) مهنة

## Lesson 4 WB page 111

(CV)<sup>(1)</sup>

**Name:** Nabila El-Soory

**Age:** 24

**Address:** Central Cairo, Egypt

**Dream job:** Teacher

**Qualifications:**

- **Post Graduate**<sup>(2)</sup> **Certificate**<sup>(3)</sup> in Education: Bradly College, Oxford, England

- Bachelors Degree in English: Cairo University, Cairo, Egypt

**I am :**

- punctual
- reliable
- a good communicator
- caring

**Experience:**

I've always wanted a job helping people. I watched many lessons on my training course, and I taught English to young people **aged**<sup>(4)</sup> 7–16 years old in the **UK**<sup>(5)</sup>.

**Personal statement**<sup>(6)</sup> :

I am punctual and reliable. I can communicate well with young people, and I believe that I am a patient and caring professional.

**Interests :** Reading, **theatre**<sup>(7)</sup>, and Egyptian **cuisine**<sup>(8)</sup>

**Availability**<sup>(9)</sup> : **Immediate**<sup>(10)</sup>



(1) السيرة الذاتية

(2) الدراسات العليا

(3) شهادة

(4) بالغ من العمر

(5) المملكة المتحدة

(6) نبذة شخصية

(7) المسرح

(8) أسلوب الطهي

(9) تواجد - إتاحة

(10) فوري



## PART IV LANGUAGE

### 1 استخدام الأرقام في الصفات المركبة : Compound adjectives with numbers :

١ تُستخدم الأرقام في صفة مُركبة من ثلاث كلمات بينهم (-) كالتالي:

→ صفة + اسم مفرد + رقم  
↓ ↓ ↓

ex. - Ahmed is a **twelve - year - old** child.

٢ تُستخدم الأرقام في صفة مُركبة من كلمتين بينهم (-) كالتالي:

→ اسم مفرد + رقم  
↓ ↓

ex. - We went on a **three - day** holiday.

٣ يمكن ان يكون الاسم في الصفة المركبة جمع ينتهي بـ (s') :

→ اسم جمع + رقم  
↓ ↓

ex. - My office is **two hours'** drive from here.

٤ في حالة وجود كلمة time بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم (s') في حالة المفرد و (s') في حالة الجمع:

ex. - I'll call you in an **hour's time**.

- In **two years' time**, I will have finished this course.

### 2 but - however - although - despite :

١ الروابط التالية يأتي بعدها جملة وتأتي في الوسط فقط:

١ جملة + مع ذلك however - لكن but

ex. - We had got up early, **but / however** we missed the bus.

٢ الروابط التالية يأتي بعدها جملة وتأتي في البداية أو الوسط :

٢ .... جملة + برغم أن though - برغم أن Although

ex. - **Although** we had got up early, we missed the bus.

- We missed the bus **although** we had got up early.

٣ الروابط التالية يأتي بعدها اسم / (inf. + ing) وتأتي في البداية أو الوسط :

٣ Despite / In spite of + برغم أن (inf. + ing) / noun

ex. - **Despite** getting up early, we missed the bus.

- We missed the bus **despite** getting up early.

### 3 not only ... but also : ليس فقط ... ولكن أيضاً :

١ تأتي **not only** قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد الفعل المساعد في الجملة الأولى.

... (as well) ... (also) فعل مساعد / ناقص + الفاعل + **but** .., فعل + **not only** + فاعل -

ex. - We were **not only** playing chess, **but** we were **also** drinking coffee.

٢ عند استخدام (Not only) في بداية الجملة يستخدم فعل مساعد قبل الفاعل:

- Not Only + فعل مساعد + فاعل + فعل ..... , but also ..... .

ex. - Not only **were we** playing chess, but we were also drinking coffee.

٣ إذا ربطت (Not only...but also ...) فاعلين مختلفين فان الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني:

ex. - Not only Tom but also his brothers **are** doctors.

## Exercises On Language

• Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- ..... the high waves, I completed the race.  
a. Although      b. But      c. Despite      d. However  
(الاسكندرية - الجُمرك ٢٠٢٤)
- ..... they ran fast, they missed the train.  
a. But      b. In spite of      c. Although      d. So  
(الجيزة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤)
- He was punished ..... coming early.  
a. although      b. but      c. despite      d. however  
(البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
- We will go to play tennis ..... the cold weather.  
a. if      b. although      c. but      d. in spite of  
(البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
- She has ..... daughter.  
a. five years      b. five-year-old      c. a five-years-old      d. a five-year-old  
(البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
- ..... the long hours and hard work, the job is very rewarding.  
a. Despite      b. However      c. In spite      d. Although  
(القاهرة - القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٣)
- He says he likes sports. ...., he only watches them on TV.  
a. Despite      b. Although      c. As      d. However
- ..... my help, he fell into debt.  
a. However      b. Although      c. Despite      d. As
- I like reading novels, ..... I don't have time.  
a. but      b. if      c. because      d. although
- She speaks English ..... French.  
a. as      b. as well      c. well      d. and
- This gentleman wants to make ..... reservation at the hotel.  
a. three nights      b. three-nights      c. a three-night      d. a three-nights
- She walked home by herself ..... she knew it was dangerous.  
a. because      b. because of      c. although      d. despite
- ..... his cleverness, he was unable to answer the question.  
a. In spite of      b. Although      c. Even though      d. However
- We decided to go out for a meal ..... it was raining.  
a. however      b. even though      c. despite      d. in spite of
- Not only my brothers but also my sister ..... going to Alexandria.  
a. are      b. is      c. were      d. have been



# PART THREE

## Grammatical Hints, Skills and Advanced exercises



تتويبه للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

### PART I

## GRAMMATICAL HINTS

١ كلمة (**attendant**) تُستخدم بمعنى (خادم - مُرافق - مضيف) وهي تشير إلى شخص يقوم بمساعدة أو خدمة الحاضرين في مكان ما :

- ex. - She works as a flight **attendant**.  
- They had an **attendant** for their old mother for six hours a day.

٢ كلمة (**communicator**) تعني (شخص لبق أو مُتكلّم) وهي تشير إلى شخص يستطيع التعبير عن أفكاره ومشاعره بشكل جذاب :

- ex. - A teacher must be a good **communicator**.

٣ المقصود بـ (**team player**) شخص مُتعاون يتمتع بروح الجماعة :

- ex. - This company is successful because it has a staff of **team players**.

٤ أحد استخدامات كلمة (**even**) هو التعبير عن الاندهاش من شيء ما لأنه مُفاجئ أو غير مألوف أو غير متوقع :

- ex. - We don't **even** know why she is crying.  
- We all missed the bus **even** Nasser who is never late.  
- It's not an easy job, it might **even** take a month to finish it.

٥ لاحظ أن (**adapt to**) بمعنى (يتكيف مع) يأتي بعدها اسم (**noun**) أو (**inf. + ing**) :

- ex. - She **adapted to working** in a foreign country.  
- I hope you will **adapt to life** in Japan.

٦ هناك بعض الظروف التي يمكن أن تُستخدم لتغيير معني الجملة بالكامل، و غالبا تستخدم في بداية الجملة مثل :

من strangely - من الواضح obviously - لحسن الحظ luckily / fortunately  
..... من المُدهش surprisingly - من المثير للاهتمام interestingly - الغريب

- ex. - **Obviously**, she accepted the offer.

### Exercise On Language Hints

● ☛ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I am in a bad need of a/an ..... to look after my grandfather who can't walk.  
a. attendance      b. attendant      c. communicator      d. team player
- The new team members have adapted ..... with the older ones.  
a. working      b. to work      c. work      d. to working

3. Let Ayman speak for us. He is a good ..... .  
 a. attendance      b. attendant      c. communicator      d. punctuality
4. She works hard. .... , she was fired.  
 a. Strangely      b. Strange      c. Lucky      d. Luckily

## PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(الاسكندرية - غرب الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

Everyone has a dream in their life which they want to achieve when they grow up. Even the most successful people had dreams and that is what has made them what they are today. Dreams are necessary. Without dreams, there will be no ambition to chase and there will be no goals to reach. But to achieve these goals, you must work hard and stay attentive. Not having dreams is like following an invisible shadow. We must know what we want to do and follow that ambition.

To turn a dream into reality, the first thing that you need is determination. This will help you in a lot of ways. Dreaming is essential for a human being. Without dreams, you will lose interest in life. You will be bored and tired of the same routine of your daily life and will not even find interest in the most exciting things. Lack of motivation is one of the main causes that force a person to leave their dream behind. So, staying motivated is also a part of the goal. If you can't stay positive, you won't be able to achieve your dream.

If you don't have a dream, you can never enjoy the beautiful things in life. You will never get pride in what you do and what you have achieved. All these things are necessary for human beings.

- Everyone needs to ..... to achieve their goals.  
 a. play      b. travel      c. despair      d. dream
- Without having dreams, man will .....  
 a. have a lot of goals to achieve      b. chase his ambition  
 c. have no goals to achieve in life      d. find a purpose in life
- The underlined word 'essential' is equal to .....  
 a. necessary      b. beautiful      c. silly      d. unnecessary



4. What is an invisible shadow? - It is something we .....  
 a. can achieve      b. can't see      c. can see      d. can touch
5. The most successful people have dreams which they ..... when they grow up.  
 a. fail to achieve      b. can't achieve  
 c. manage to achieve      d. don't succeed in achieving
6. To turn a dream into reality, you need .....  
 a. hesitation      b. determination  
 c. indecision      d. negativity
7. The best title for the passage is .....  
 a. Lack of motivation      b. The importance of dreams  
 c. Following an invisible shadow      d. Life without determination

## 2 Email Writing كتابة البريد الإلكتروني

### \* Ideas for writing a job description

- |                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 What is this job?                  | ما هذه الوظيفة؟                      |
| 2 What do you do?                    | ما الذي تقوم به في هذه الوظيفة؟      |
| 3 Where do you work?                 | أين تعمل؟                            |
| 4 How many hours do you work a week? | كم عدد الساعات التي تعملها كل أسبوع؟ |
| 5 What is special about this job?    | ماذا يميز هذه الوظيفة؟               |
| 6 How much holiday do you have?      | كم مدة الإجازة؟                      |
| 7 What do you like about the job?    | ما الذي يعجبك في هذه الوظيفة؟        |

## 3 Writing

- ★ Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

(الشرقية - أبو كبير ٢٠٢٤)

*"How to be successful in life"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 4 الترجمة Translation

## A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Personal success does not often come by accident. Most successful people know that they suffer a lot to reach their goals. Faithfulness, persistence and hard work are the best keys to success. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. إن النجاح الشخصي ليس وليد الحوادث، فمعظم الأشخاص الناجحين يُدركون أنهم عانوا الكثير حتى يصلوا لأهدافهم، فالصدق والمثابرة والعمل الجاد هم أهم مفاتيح النجاح.
- b. لعل النجاح الشخصي وليد الصدفة، فمعظم الأشخاص الناجحين يُدركون أنهم عانوا الكثير حتى يصلوا لأهدافهم، فالصدق والمثابرة والعمل الجاد هم أهم مفاتيح النجاح.
- c. إن النجاح الشخصي قد يكون وليد الصدفة، فمعظم الأشخاص الناجحين يُدركون أنهم عانوا الكثير حتى يصلوا لأهدافهم، فالصدق والمثابرة والعمل الجاد هم أهم مفاتيح النجاح.
- d. إن النجاح الشخصي ليس وليد الصدفة، فمعظم الأشخاص الناجحين يُدركون أنهم عانوا الكثير حتى يصلوا لأهدافهم، فالصدق والمثابرة والعمل الجاد هم أهم مفاتيح النجاح.

2. It's important to learn from your mistakes to succeed in life. This will make people appreciate your success. (أسبوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. من المهم أن تتعلم من أخطائك لتنجح في الحياة، فهذا سوف يجعل الناس يُقررون نجاحك.
- b. من المهم أن تتعلم من أخطائك لتنجح في الحياة، هذا قد يجعل الناس يُقدِّرون نجاحك.
- c. من المهم أن تتعلم من أخطائك لتنجح في الحياة، فهذا سوف يجعل الناس يُقدِّرون نجاحك.
- d. من المهم أن تتعلم من أخطائك لتنجح في الحياة، فهذا سوف يجعل الناس يُقرون نجاحك.

## B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

تُساعد الرياضة الشباب على قضاء أوقات فراغهم، فهي تعلمهم قيم مهمة للمجتمع مثل العمل الجماعي والمنافسة الشريفة. (الإسكندرية - غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Sports help young people to spend their free time. They teach them important values to society like teamwork and honest competition.
- b. Sports help small people to spend their free time. They learn them important values in society like teamwork and honest competition.
- c. Sports helps young people in spending their free time. They teach them important values to society like individual work and honest competition.
- d. Sports help young people to have a fun time. They teach them important traditions of society like teamwork and honest competition.



## apply

## • apply (ied) (v)

يتقدم بطلب (التحاق / انضمام)

- He wants to **apply** for another job.

لاحظ أن:

## • apply for

يتقدم بطلب (يأتي بعدها اسم الشيء الذي نتقدم للحصول عليه)

- I **applied for** the membership of the club.

## • apply to

يتقدم بطلب (يأتي بعدها اسم الشخص أو الجهة الذي نتقدم إليه)

- I'll **apply to** the manager soon.

## • apply in writing

يتقدم كتابة لطلب وظيفة

- You can send your CV online. You don't have to **apply in writing**.

## • apply (to) (v)

يُطبَّق على - يُنسَرَى على

- The offer **applies to** all customers.

## • applied (adj)

تطبيقي - عملي

- We study **applied** maths at school.

## • applicable to (adj)

ساري على - ينطبق على

- The discount is only **applicable to** children's clothes.

## • applicant (n)

مُتَقَدِّم بطلب (لوظيفة / جامعة / نادي ...)

- There are more than fifty **applicants** for the job.

## • application (n)

طلب انضمام

- The manager has examined all the **applications**.

## • application (n)

تطبيق

- Mobile **applications** are free on this website.

## apprenticeship

## • apprentice (n)

مُتَدَرِّب - شخص تحت التمرين

- My brother is an **apprentice** surgeon.
- The mechanic asked one of the **apprentices** to bring him some tools.

## • apprentice (d) (to) (v)

يتدرب عملياً (تحت إشراف ...)

- My cousin wants to **apprentice** to an electrician to learn from him.

## • apprenticeship (n)

التدريب المهني

- After a two-year **apprenticeship**, I was good enough to have my own garage.

## reliable

• **rely (ied) on / upon (v)**

- Babies **rely** on their mothers.

يَعْتَمِدُ عَلَى

• **reliable (adj)**

- You can depend on Omar. He is a **reliable** man.

يُعْتَمَدُ عَلَيْهِ / أَهْلُ لِلثِّقَةِ

• **reliability (n)**

- Scientific information is of high **reliability**.

الدَّقَّة

• **reliance (n)**

- His **reliance** on his parents makes him lazy.

الاعْتِمَادُ / الْاِتِّكَالُ

**Advanced Exercise** on Vocabulary

## • ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The Great Pyramid is an enormous .....  
a. application      b. construction      c. department      d. compassion
- ..... is to hard-working as stressful is to worrying.  
a. Industrial      b. Flexible      c. Rewarding      d. Industrious
- If you don't ..... the deadline, your application won't be accepted.  
a. do      b. earn      c. meet      d. offer
- The discount الخصم does not ..... to you because you are not a member of the club.  
a. adapt      b. attend      c. apply      d. frustrate
- ..... on others will never make you successful.  
a. Confident      b. Confidence      c. Reliability      d. Reliance

**Advanced Exercise** on Language

## • ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Sama wondered ..... to wait for the bus or take a taxi.  
a. that      b. if      c. whether      d. what
- Ashraf said that he'd rather I ..... his mobile.  
a. hadn't used      b. didn't use      c. haven't used      d. won't use
- She said that she'd rather Amr ..... at home the day before.  
a. stayed      b. had stayed      c. staying      d. has stayed
- Not only ..... up late, but he also forgot his books.  
a. he turned      b. did he turn      c. turned he      d. turned
- My father said that it was time we ..... home.  
a. had returned      b. hadn't returned      c. returned      d. didn't return



# Test on Unit 10

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه

التقييمات  
الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار الكتروني

## 1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "Your friend is stressed. Try to reassure him." The antonyms of 'reassure' are ..... (القليوبية - الخصوص ٢٠٢٤)

- a. worry                      b. assure                      c. annoy  
d. reward                      e. advise

2. "The job of a nurse is not easy." 'Not easy' means ..... (الجيزة - الهرم ٢٠٢٤)

- a. calm                      b. natural                      c. stressful  
d. comfortable                      e. hard

## 2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Nowadays a lot of young people like ..... for jobs at banks or the army. (الجيزة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤)

- a. realizing                      b. advertising                      c. replying                      d. applying

2. "The father sent his son to get an apprenticeship in a famous company." The word 'apprenticeship' has the same meaning as ..... (المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٤)

- a. training                      b. working                      c. part job                      d. permanent job

3. To get some experience, I had to work as an ..... to a famous surgeon. (الإسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. appearance                      b. apprentices                      c. apprenticeship                      d. apprentice

4. The ..... showed us our seats on the plane. (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. attendant                      b. pilot                      c. driver                      d. servant

5. You are lucky; it is a/an ..... job. The salary is high.

- a. problematic                      b. stressful                      c. frustrating                      d. rewarding

6. My daughter is a nurse. She works in the ..... department in Mansoura. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)

- a. causality                      b. realty                      c. casualty                      d. vitality

7. Mom asked me where ..... the day before. (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٤)

- a. I had gone                      b. had I gone                      c. did I go                      d. would go

8. Mona told her father a moment ago that she ..... to buy a new dress.

- a. would want                      b. had wanted                      c. wants                      d. is wanting

9. No one knows why ..... angry. (الإسكندرية - غرب الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. she is                      b. was she                      c. is she                      d. she had been

10. Reem warned Hoor ..... play with matches because it is very dangerous. (الجيزة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤)

- a. to                      b. didn't                      c. don't                      d. not to

11. Eman ..... her teacher had rewarded her for her good essay.  
a. told                      b. said                      c. explained                      d. informed
12. She ..... if she had had time, she would have come to the party.  
a. asked                      b. told                      c. said                      d. said to

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(الاسكندرية - المنتزة ٢٠٢٤)

Have you ever heard that a wealthy person died of hunger? I was shocked when I read a very impressive story about a very rich man. That man had huge wealth and a vast palace. He used to leave his family in their usual house to spend a few days every month alone in his palace to plan for his coming businesses and count his increasing money. He went to check his money in an enormous room without realizing that he had left the key out. After so many hours, he began to feel hungry and wanted to go out to have something to eat, but he found out his terrible mistake. The door of that room had no handle to be opened from inside and the large size of the palace prevented the man's cries from reaching anyone outside. He tried very hard to open the metal door, but in vain. Days and nights passed while he was starving. Finally, he became sure he would die, so he injured his finger and used his blood to write the moral of that awful situation on the wall. He wrote, "The richest man in the city died of starvation." I started to think differently about the benefits of being rich; having a family is far more important.

1. The central idea of this passage can be "A wealthy person died of .....".  
a. loneliness                      b. illness                      c. hunger                      d. fear
2. How often did the rich man leave his family in their usual house ?  
a. Once a year                      b. Monthly  
c. Weekly                      d. Three times a year
3. Why did the rich man use to spend a few days by himself ?  
a. To make plans                      b. To make decisions  
c. To make sacrifices                      d. To perform prayers
4. The man injured himself to .....  
a. drink his blood                      b. paint the wall  
c. become rich                      d. write a message
5. Because of the end of the rich man, the writer decided that .....  
a. having a family isn't important  
b. the family should not have left home  
c. being rich is the best aim  
d. it is better to have a family



6. The best title for the passage is “.....”

- a. Richness is a blessing
- b. The killer wealth
- c. The killer family
- d. The mad rich man

7. The man couldn't be heard because .....

- a. he was weak
- b. the palace was huge
- c. the palace was very small
- d. he was crying

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Be sure that the opportunities of success do not happen by luck. You are the one who creates and makes good use of them. (الاسكندرية - العجمي ٢٠٢٤)

- a. كن على يقين ان فُرْص النجاح لا تأتي مصادفة، فأنت مَن تخلقها وتُخَيِّس الاستفادة منها.
- b. كن على يقين ان فُرْص النجاح لا تأتي مصادفة، فأنت مَن تخلقها أو لا تستفيد منها.
- c. كن على يقين ان نجاح الفُرْص لا يأتي مصادفة، فأنت مَن تخلقه وتُخَيِّس الاستفادة منه.
- d. كن على يقين ان فُرْص النجاح تأتي مصادفة، فأنت لا تخلقها بل تُخَيِّس الاستفادة منها.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

يأمل كل مصري مُخلص أن تصبح مصر الدولة الأكثر قوة ورفاء في العالم. (الاسكندرية - غرب الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Every loyal Egyptian hopes that Egypt becoming the most powerful and prosperous nation in the family world.
- b. Every loyal Egyptian hoped that Egypt becoming the most powerful and prosperous nation in the whole world.
- c. Every loyal Egyptian hopes that Egypt becomes the most powerful and prosperous nation in the whole world.
- d. Every Egyptian loyal hopes that Egypt becomes the most powerful and prosperous nation in the whale world.

5. Answer the following questions:

(كفر الشيخ - سيدى سالم ٢٠٢٤)

1. Silver tried to mislead Jim concerning his friends. Explain how.  
.....
2. To what extent was Jim successful in his adventure on the Hispaniola ?  
.....
3. Would you prefer to have Silver as an enemy or a friend ? Why ?  
.....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

(البحيرة - الممودية ٢٠٢٤)

*“The best way to reach success is patience and hard work”*

.....  
.....  
.....

# UNIT 11

SB pages 52 : 61  
WB pages 114 : 119

## Amazing people



**Objectives :** الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- ✧ **Reading** : An article about athletes with disabilities
- ✧ **Writing** : A paragraph on a disabled person you like; an email to arrange a job interview
- ✧ **Listening** : A radio interview about equal opportunities

- ✧ **Speaking** : Making complaints and polite responses
- ✧ **Language** : Relative clauses
- ✧ **Life Skills** : Respect for diversity; creativity; cooperation





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

achieve(d) (v)	يُنْجِز - يُحَقِّق	highs and lows(n)	أفراح وأتراح
achievement(n)	إنجاز	kung fu(n)	الكونغ فو
activist(n)	ناشط	medal(n)	ميدالية
campaign (n)	حملة	muscle(n)	عضلة
campaign(ed) (v)	يطالب بـ / يناصر - يَحْشِد	polio(n)	شلل الأطفال
campaigner (n)	مدافع/ مؤيد/ ناشط	powerlifter(n)	لاعب رياضة القوة البدنية
compete(d) (v)	يُنَافِس / يتسابق	powerlifting(n)	رياضة القوة البدنية
disability(n)	إعاقة / عَجْز	put pressure on	يمارس ضغوطاً علي
disabled(adj)	مُعاق	ramp(n)	مُنْخَر - مطلع للكراسي المتحركة
high and low(adv)	في كل مكان	wheelchair(n)	كرسي متحرك

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

actually(adv)	فَعَلًا / في الواقع	medical(adj)	طِبِّي
affect(ed) (v)	يُؤَثِّر علي	metal disc(n)	قرص معدني
amazing(adj)	مُذهِل	Olympian(n)	لاعب أولمبي
athlete(n)	لاعب ألعاب القوي - رياضي	Olympics = Olympic Games(n)	الألعاب الأولمبية
athletics(n)	ألعاب القوي	Olympic(adj)	أولمبي
awful(adj)	فظيع	organisation (n)	مُنْظَمة
benefit (n)	فائدة	outstanding(adj)	بارز/ هام
campus(n)	الحرم الجامعي	paperwork(n)	عمل ورقي
celebrity(n)	شخص مشهور	Paralympian(n)	لاعب أولمبي من ذوي الهمم
champion(n)	بطل رياضي	Paralympic(adj)	خاص بأولمبياد ذوي الهمم
chance(n)	فُرْصة	Paralympics(n)	أولمبياد ذوي الهمم
condition(n)	حالة / وضع	passenger(n)	مسافر / أحد الركاب
cycling(n)	ركوب الدراجات	physical(adj)	بدني
dedicate(d) (v)	يُكرِّس / يخصص	podcast (n)	مُدَوْنَة صوتية
determination(n)	إصرار - تصميم		
ensure(d) (v)	يؤكد - يضمن		

event(n)	حَدَث - مناسبة	preserve(d) (v)	يصون - يحافظ علي
existing(adj)	موجود	promote(d) (v)	يُرَوِّج لـ - يَرْقِّي
guess(ed) (v)	يُخَمِّن	race(n)	سباق
guest(n)	ضيف	racer(n)	متسابق
impact(n)	أثر - انطباع	require(d) (v)	يتطلب - يستلزم
inspire(d) (v)	يُلْهِم - يُحَفِّز	retire(d) (v)	يعتزل - يتقاعد
issue(n)	قضية	sacrifice(d) (n - v)	تضحية - يُضْحِي بـ
lift(ed) (v)	يرفع	snowboarding(n)	تزلُّج - تزلح على الجليد
lift(n)	مضعد (أسانسير)	sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع
marketing(n)	التسويق	spina bifida(n)	تشقق العمود الفقري
media(n)	وسائل الإعلام		

## 3

## Definitions التعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>achieve(d)(v)</b> يُنْجِز - يُحَقِّق	to be successful in doing something good
<b>achievement(n)</b> إنجاز	something good that you have successfully done
<b>activist(n)</b> ناشط	someone who tries to change things or to achieve social change
<b>campaign(ed)(v)</b> يُنَاصِر - يُؤَيِّد	to work in an organised way to change things
<b>compete(d) (v)</b> يُنَافِس - يتسابق	to take part in a race or a competition
<b>disability(n)</b> إعاقة - عَجْز	a physical difference that makes it difficult for someone to do something
<b>disabled(adj)</b> مُعاق	a way to describe someone who cannot use part of their body in the way that most people can
<b>highs and lows</b> أفراح وأتراح	successful and unsuccessful times
<b>medal(n)</b> ميدالية	a metal disc that you can win when you do or play a sport
<b>muscle(n)</b> عضلة	something inside your body that you use when you move
<b>powerlifting(n)</b> رياضة القوة البدنية	a sport where people push weights above their heads
<b>put pressure on</b> يمارس ضغوطاً علي	to try to make someone do something
<b>ramp(n)</b> مُنْخَدَر - مطلع للكراسي المتحركة	a sloping surface joining two places of different levels



**spina bifida(n)**

تشقق العمود الفقري  
(عيب خلقي بالعمود الفقري)

a serious condition in which part of the spine العمود الفقري is not correctly developed at birth, leaving the nerves الأعصاب in the back الظهر without any protection حماية

**wheelchair(n)**

كرسي متحرك walk

a chair with wheels used by someone who can't walk

**Exercises On Vocabulary****• Understand**

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

**1 Definitions**

1. A/An ..... is a sloping surface joining two places of different levels.  
(أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. ramp      b. campaign      c. activist      d. roof
2. A/An ..... is a person who works to achieve social changes.  
(بورسعيد - الزهور ٢٠٢٤)  
a. athlete      b. power lifter      c. runner      d. activist
3. A ..... is a metal disc that you can win when you do or play a sport.  
(الشرقية - الصالحية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. middle      b. modal      c. model      d. medal
4. .... is a serious disease of the nerves in the spine, that often results in someone being permanently unable to move particular muscles.  
(البحيرة - كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. Spina bifida      b. Measles      c. Paralympics      d. Stamina
5. A/An ..... is something good that you have successfully done.  
a. department      b. movement      c. achievement      d. government
6. To ..... means to take part in a race or a competition.  
a. complete      b. compete      c. complain      d. benefit
7. .... is a physical difference that makes it difficult for someone to do something.  
a. Challenge      b. Intelligence      c. Strength      d. Disability
8. A/An ..... is something inside your body that you use when you move.  
a. muscle      b. tooth      c. nail      d. eyebrow
9. .... is a sport where people push weights above their heads.  
a. Wrestling      b. Windsurfing      c. Powerlifting      d. Boxing
10. To ..... is to work in an organised way to change things.  
a. campaign      b. amaze      c. break      d. complain
11. To ..... means to try to make someone do something.  
a. impact      b. access      c. benefit      d. put pressure on

## 2 Key Vocabulary

12. Becoming a world champion in your sport is an amazing ..... .  
(الاسكندرية - غرب الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. competition      b. winner      c. medal      d. achievement
13. Ambitious youth spare no efforts to ..... all their goals in life.  
(الدقهلية - بني عبيد ٢٠٢٤)  
a. inspire      b. achieve      c. compete      d. destroy
14. The brave young officer was given a ..... for his heroism. (الشرقية - بلبس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. memory      b. medal      c. belt      d. mark
15. She had ..... as a child and spent the rest of her life in a wheelchair.  
(الشرقية - الابراهيمية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. flu      b. diabetes      c. polio      d. toothache
16. In the club, I have seen a special ..... for the wheelchair users.  
(الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. camp      b. lamb      c. ramp      d. damp
17. Life is full of ..... . It's important to enjoy the good times and learn from the challenges.  
(الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)  
a. comes and goes      b. skies and crows  
c. highs and lows      d. sighs and woes
18. The Paralympic Games tournament is held for ..... athletes.  
(الاسكندرية - المنتزه ٢٠٢٤)  
a. normal      b. disabled      c. insane      d. natural
19. Nature ..... work tirelessly to draw attention to environmental issues.  
a. competitors      b. oculists      c. power lifters      d. activists
20. I looked ..... for the keys but it was in vain. دون جدوى  
a. dos and don'ts      b. ups and downs  
c. highs and lows      d. high and low
21. She is a formidable ..... for animal rights and the environment.  
(المنوفية - قويسنا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. Paralympian      b. champion      c. campaigner      d. sociology
22. Athletes play well and ..... against each other to win medals.  
(الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. complete      b. compete      c. competent      d. compliment
23. My friend has had a terrible accident. Now, he has a/an ..... ; he can't walk.  
(أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. ability      b. disability      c. activity      d. opportunity
24. The ..... put on a child has bad effects on them.  
a. damage      b. fire      c. plaster      d. pressure
25. Alexandria Governorate started a/an ..... to stop people throwing garbage on the beach.  
(البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)  
a. companion      b. campaign      c. accompany      d. company



26. He is a .....; he has strong muscles. (القليوية - غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. campaigner b. powerlifter c. colleague d. celebrity
27. Regular exercise will help strengthen your ..... . (دمياط - فارسكور ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. brain b. muscles c. liver d. kidney

### 3 Important Vocabulary

28. His injury forced him to ..... from taking part in the Olympics Games. (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. type b. retire c. train d. participate
29. My brother has been ..... from assistant manager to the manager of the company. (أسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. lifted b. promoted c. owned d. competed
30. All the necessary measures had been taken to ..... their safety. (الجيزة - كرداسة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. ensure b. share c. divide d. sure
31. Mohammed Salah is a ..... that all people like. (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. celebrity b. popular c. celebrated d. celebration
32. Good teachers can ..... their students to reach their full potential.  
 a. discourage b. inspire c. achieve d. employ
33. Smoking has a serious ..... on health. (الغربية - سمود ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. effect b. impact c. influence d. all mentioned
34. She was the greatest Egyptian ..... in swimming. (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. hero b. championship c. power d. champion
35. Egyptian ..... win more medals than Olympians.  
 a. activists b. Paralympians c. celebrities d. colleagues
36. Athletes with disabilities can take part in the ..... .  
 a. Olympics b. diversity c. Paralympics d. powerlifting
37. I think the ..... of opinion is an advantage.  
 a. campaign b. diversity c. Paralympics d. powerlifting
38. People who cannot see, suffer from a/an ..... disability.  
 a. disabled b. medicine c. physical d. Olympic
39. As they are injured, they need ..... treatment in a hospital or clinic.  
 a. disabled b. medical c. magical d. Olympic
40. .... follow particular food programmes and do regular exercise.  
 a. Athletes b. Athletics c. Recorders d. Records

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

<b>achieve</b>	success	يحقق النجاح	<b>do</b>	something good	يفعل شيئاً جيداً
<b>be</b>	a success	يحقق النجاح	<b>do/play</b>	a sport	يمارس رياضة

<b>arrange</b>	a meeting	يرتب لاجتماع / لمقابلة	<b>make</b>	a difference	يُحسِّن الأمور
<b>come</b>	fourth	يحصل على المركز الرابع	<b>play</b>	in a wheelchair	يلعب على كرسي متحرك
<b>give</b>	a talk	يلقي خطبة	<b>practise</b>	a sport	يمارس رياضة
	a challenge	يمثل تحدياً	<b>run</b>	a campaign	يدير حملة
<b>have</b>	a disability	لديه إعاقة	<b>take</b>	a lift up	يصعد بالأسانسير
	an impact	له تأثير		part in	يشارك في
	ramps	به مطالع للكراسي المتحركة	<b>win</b>	a medal	يفوز بميدالية
	positive effects on	له آثار إيجابية على		a prize	يفوز بجائزة

## 2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
affect	يؤثر على
achievement	إنجاز
amazing	مذهل
high and low	في كل مكان
interesting	شيق
main	اساسي / رئيسي
	influence, have an effect
	triumph, success, accomplishment
	astonishing, breathtaking, awesome, exciting
	everywhere, all over, all around, in all places, in every place, far and wide
	entertaining, amusing
	major, basic

## 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
achievement	failure, loss
amazing	everyday
celebrity	nonentity, nobody
physical	mental
	الفشل - الخسارة
	عادي
	تكرة
	عقلي / ذهني

## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

achieve	
<b>achieve(d)(v)</b>	يُنجز - يُحقِّق
<b>achievement(n)</b>	إنجاز
<b>achievable(adj)</b>	يمكن تحقيقه
- I am happy because I have <b>achieved</b> my goal.	
- I am happy because of the <b>achievement</b> of my goal.	
- I am happy because my goal has been <b>achievable</b> .	
activist	
<b>activate(d)(v)</b>	يُنشِّط - يُفَعِّل
<b>activity(n)</b>	نشاط
<b>activist(n)</b>	ناشط
<b>active(adj)</b>	نشط - مُفَعِّل
- I have to <b>activate</b> my Windows version.	
- We do some <b>activities</b> at school.	
- She is an environmental <b>activist</b> .	
- Sama is an <b>active</b> student.	



campaign	
<b>campaign(ed)(v)</b> يطالب بـ / يناصر - يَحْتِثِد	- They <b>campaigned</b> for their favourite star.
<b>campaign(n)</b> حملة	- They ran a <b>campaign</b> to defend their favourite star.
<b>campaigner(n)</b> مُدافع - مُؤَيِّد	- They were <b>campaigners</b> for their favourite star.
compete	
<b>compete(d)(v)</b> يُنَافِس - يتسابق	- The two teams <b>competed</b> fairly.
<b>competition(n)</b> مُسَابَقَة - مُنَافَسَة	- The two teams had a fair <b>competition</b> .
<b>competitive(adj)</b> تنافسي	- I like the <b>competitive</b> nature of this player.
disability	
<b>disability(n)</b> إعاقة - عَجْز	- He has a <b>disability</b> .
<b>disabled(adj)</b> مُعاق	- He is <b>disabled</b> .
paralympic	
<b>Paralympian(n)</b> لاعب أولمبي (من ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة)	- He is a <b>Paralympian</b> .
<b>Paralympics(n)</b> أولمبياد ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة	- He took part in the <b>Paralympics</b> .
<b>Paralympic(adj)</b> خاص بأولمبياد المعاقين	- He is a <b>paralympic</b> champion.

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a wider range of	عدد/كم كبير من	get a place at the Olympics	يتأهل للأولمبياد
above heads	فوق الرؤوس	hold Olympic Games	تنظيم الألعاب الأولمبية
benefits of sports	فوائد الرياضة	in charge of	مستول عن
children with disabilities	أطفال ذوي احتياجات خاصة	make it difficult for	يجعل من الصعب علي
different to / from	مُخْتَلِف عن	respect for diversity	احترام الاختلاف/التعددية
four times his body weight	أربع أضعاف وزن جسمه	win a medal for	يفوز بميدالية في

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

add ... to	يضيف ... إلي	go up	يصعد - يرتفع/يزداد
battle against	يقاتل/يكافح ضد	move around	يتنقل
campaign for	يشن حملة من أجل	promise to	يُعد بأن
compete in	ينافس في	refer to	يشير إلي

complain about  
fight with  
get around/round

يشكو من  
يفاتل باستخدام / مع  
يتجول - يتنقل

retire from  
talk about

يعتزل من  
يتحدث عن

## 7

## Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

## Olympics - Paralympics

تعنى كلمة (**Olympics**) الألعاب الأولمبية العادية، بينما تعنى كلمة (**Paralympics**) الألعاب الأولمبية لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة، ولاحظ مشتقات كل منهما:

Olympics = Olympic Games	الألعاب الأولمبية	Paralympics = Paralympic Games	أولمبياد ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
Olympic(adj)	أولمبى	Paralympic(adj)	خاص بأولمبياد ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
Olympian(n)	لاعب أولمبى	Paralympian(n)	لاعب بارالمبى (من ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة)

لاحظ أن كلمتى (**Olympics / Paralympics**) دائماً جمع ويأخذان فعل جمع فى اللغة الرسمية :

- The **Olympics / Paralympics** are watched on TV by millions of people.

(**Not: is watched**)

## -ing -- er

بعض الرياضات تنتهى بـ (**ing**) بينما ينتهى اسم الرياضى منها بـ (**er**)، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

sport		sportsperson	
cycling	ركوب الدراجات	cycler	راكب دراجات
powerlifting	رياضة القوة البدنية	powerlifter	لاعب قوة بدنية
running	الجرى	runner	عداء
snowboarding	التزلج	snowboarder	متزلج (على الجليد)
swimming	السباحة	swimmer	سباح
windsurfing	رياضة ركوب الأمواج	windsurfer	المتزلج على الماء (راكب أمواج)

## as well as

لاحظ استخدام (**as well as**) بمعنيين مختلفين :

## 1. as well as + n. / (inf. + ing)

بالإضافة إلى

ex. - I study Arabic **as well as** English.

- **As well as** growing plants, farmers keep animals.



## 2. as well as

بنفس الجودة أو الإتقان

**ex.** - She can't see **as well as** other people can. She has poor sight **بصر ضعيف**.

## Exercises On Vocabulary Study

### ★ MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. It is great to ..... in the Olympics. (بورسعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٠٢٤)  
a. complete      b. compete      c. campaign  
d. put pressure      e. take part
2. "What an amazing book! It's really interesting." 'Amazing' here can be replaced by ..... (الشرقية - الليبراهيمية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. old      b. exciting      c. expensive  
d. astonishing      e. boring
3. Smoking ..... our heath badly. (الاسكندرية - وسط الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. increases      b. decreases      c. improves  
d. influences      e. affects
4. "I found the book quite interesting." The synonyms of the word 'interesting' are ..... (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)  
a. amusing      b. boring      c. entertaining  
d. dull      e. gloomy
5. "The main reason for living here is the kind neighbours." The antonyms of the word 'main' are ..... and ..... (الدقهلية - ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٤)  
a. major      b. secondary      c. minor  
d. basic      e. dependable
6. Global warming is one of the main ..... that must be faced and solved. (الدقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. rules      b. reviews      c. roles  
d. issues      e. problems
7. They wanted to know which sport I used to ..... when I was young, but I refused to tell them.  
a. fill      b. cause      c. do  
d. make      e. play
8. He is determined مصمم to .....  
a. achieve success      b. be a success      c. success  
d. successful      e. take success
9. The word 'amazing' is synonymous with .....  
a. ordinary      b. breathtaking      c. usual  
d. awesome      e. normal
10. You can say that someone .....  
a. is a disability      b. disability      c. is disabled  
d. disabled      e. has a disability

11. We must look after children ..... disabilities.

- a. with                      b. who's                      c. who've  
d. who're                      e. whose

★ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The government should provide the necessary facilities for the .....

(السيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤)

- a. abled                      b. ability                      c. disabled                      d. capability

2. She often ..... talks advising children to acquire hygienic habits in her famous talk-show programme.

(الشرقية - الأبراهيمية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. takes                      b. decides                      c. fakes                      d. gives

3. I think you are good enough to be a ..... in the next Olympics.

(المنيا - أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢٣)

- a. competition                      b. compete                      c. competitor                      d. competitively

4. Ali who cannot walk can play tennis ..... a wheel chair.

(أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٣)

- a. onto                      b. in                      c. at                      d. for

5. Every athlete hopes to take ..... in the Olympic Games.

(البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)

- a. place                      b. part                      c. to                      d. off

6. The Ministry of Health is ..... a campaign to treat people who have Virus C.

- a. doing                      b. winning                      c. taking                      d. running

7. The World Cup Finals take ..... every four years.

- a. part                      b. part in                      c. place                      d. a & b

8. Mustafa Kamel was a great ..... for Egypt's independence.

- a. campaign                      b. campaigned                      c. campaigner                      d. campaigns

9. As well as ..... for a walk, he also played tennis.

- a. go                      b. going                      c. to go                      d. goes

### PART III

## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

Lesson 1 SB page 52

#### Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef

Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef was a **champion**<sup>(1)</sup> in **Kung Fu**<sup>(2)</sup> and won many medals in the sport at secondary school. After a terrible car accident, he now has a **disability**<sup>(3)</sup> which means he has to use a **wheelchair**<sup>(4)</sup>. Mahmoud cannot walk again, but that has not stopped his love of sport.



- (1) بطل رياضي  
(2) لعبة الكونغ فو  
(3) إعاقة  
(4) كرسي متحرك



He decided to practise a sport which you can play in a wheelchair and he became very good at wheelchair tennis. He has **competed**<sup>(5)</sup> in many international wheelchair tennis **competitions**<sup>(6)</sup> and became one of the best wheelchair tennis players in Egypt. That is an amazing **achievement**<sup>(7)</sup>, but Mahmoud has not stopped there. He also helps people who are in wheelchairs to **stay fit**<sup>(8)</sup>, and gives talks to help other people with disabilities.

(5) يتنافس

(6) مسابقات

(7) إنجاز

(8) يظل لائق بدنيا

### Lesson 1 SB page 53

#### Amany Ali

Amany Ali is an Egyptian **Paralympic**<sup>(1)</sup> **powerlifter**<sup>(2)</sup> who won a **bronze medal**<sup>(3)</sup> in the 2016 **Paralympic Games**<sup>(4)</sup> in Brazil in 2016. Amany had an **illness**<sup>(5)</sup> called **polio**<sup>(6)</sup> when she was younger and this **affected**<sup>(7)</sup> the **muscles**<sup>(8)</sup> in her feet. She did not start **powerlifting**<sup>(9)</sup> until she was 20, although she has always loved the sport. She **achieved**<sup>(10)</sup> her Paralympic success in Brazil aged 40, and at a very difficult time. Her father died two days before the competition, so she wanted to win the medal for him. She also **came fourth**<sup>(11)</sup> in the London Paralympic Games in 2012.



(1) خاص بأولمبياد ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة

(2) لاعب قوة بدنية

(3) ميدالية برونزية

(4) أولمبياد ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة

(5) مرض

(6) مرض شلل الأطفال

(7) أثر

(8) عضلات

(9) رياضة القوى البدنية

(10) حقق

(11) حصل على المركز الرابع

### Lesson 1 SB page 53

#### Tanni Grey-Thompson

Tanni Grey-Thompson is a **British**<sup>(1)</sup> Paralympian wheelchair **racer**<sup>(2)</sup> who has a **medical**<sup>(3)</sup> **condition**<sup>(4)</sup> called **spina bifida**<sup>(5)</sup>. She is **unable**<sup>(6)</sup> to walk, so she uses a wheelchair to get around. Tanni first competed in the 400 metres and wheelchair basketball at the Paralympics in **Seoul**<sup>(7)</sup> in 1988. Tanni won 16 Paralympic medals in **athletics**<sup>(8)</sup> events from the 100 metres up to the 800 metres, including 11 gold medals.



(1) بريطاني

(2) متسابق

(3) طبي

(4) حالة / وضع

(5) تشقق العمود الفقري

(6) غير قادر

(7) مدينة سول

(8) ألعاب القوى

Since she **retired**<sup>(9)</sup> from athletics in 2004, Tanni has worked for many different **organisations**<sup>(10)</sup> which help people, **especially**<sup>(11)</sup> **disabled**<sup>(12)</sup> people and women, to enjoy the **benefits**<sup>(13)</sup> of sports.

(9) يعتزل - يتقاعد

(10) مُنْظَّمات

(11) خاصة

(12) مُعاق

(13) فوائد

*Lesson 1 WB page 114***Wheelchair tennis**

Some amazing athletes compete in different sports even when they have a disability. For example, some play tennis in wheelchairs. The playing area is the same as for other tennis competitions, but the players need to have strong muscles in their arms to move around and to hit the ball. The best players enter the Paralympic Games, but few achieved as much success as Esther Vergeer, who is from the Netherlands. She won four gold medals between 2000 and 2012.

*Lesson 1 WB page 114***Olympic sports**

Many Olympic sports have always been part of the modern games, such as cycling and swimming. Some of the most famous Olympians are runners such as Usain Bolt and Mo Farah. New sports are sometimes added to the games. For example, windsurfing became an Olympic Sport in 1984 and snowboarding in 1998. Other sports are not part of the Olympic Games, for example, powerlifting. That means that great Egyptian powerlifters, like Sherif Othman, can only compete in the Paralympics.

*Lesson 2 WB page 115***A campaign for the disabled**

Disabled passengers who travel by plane often have a lot of problems, Frank Gardener, who has used a wheelchair since 2004, campaigns for air travel to be easier for disabled passengers. This started after he was left on a plane which had landed at London's Heathrow airport for a long time because his wheelchair was lost. The owner of the plane company, who was very sorry for what happened, promised to help disabled passengers more in the future. But Frank says the main problem is what happens to his wheelchair, which is often broken on long flights.



## 2 Listening Text

Lesson 2 SB page 54

### Listen to an interview with Leila about a charity organisation

**Nadia :** Hello everyone and welcome to the **podcast**<sup>(1)</sup>. Every week we talk to a different **guest**<sup>(2)</sup> about their job. Today we have a very special guest who's a charity **activist**<sup>(3)</sup> from Egypt. Her name is Leila El-Baz. Leila, who has been an equal opportunities **campaigner**<sup>(4)</sup> for almost ten years now, is here to talk about trying to change the world. Thank you very much for joining us, Leila.

**Leila :** Great to be here, Nadia.

**Nadia :** So, tell us a little bit about yourself, Leila. Where are you from?

**Leila :** I'm from Alexandria, which is a city in the north of Egypt, but I work in Cairo now.

**Nadia :** What did you study ?

**Leila :** I studied **sociology**<sup>(5)</sup> which I found really interesting.

**Nadia :** And how did you get into working for charities supporting equal opportunities ? It's not something that everyone does for living, is it ?

**Leila :** No, I guess it isn't, but it's a brilliant job. I would recommend it to all young people because you can really make a difference **that's why**<sup>(6)</sup> I love it so much. I started campaigning for **disabled people**<sup>(7)</sup> when I was at university actually. One of my best friends was disabled and she used a **wheelchair**<sup>(8)</sup> I noticed that she was having lots of problems just trying to get from one classroom to another, or from the library to the cafeteria. There were steps everywhere and **hardly**<sup>(9)</sup> any **lifts**<sup>(10)</sup> or **ramps**<sup>(11)</sup> to help disabled people get from one floor to the next.

**Nadia :** Oh. **That's awful**<sup>(12)</sup>.

**Leila :** Yes, I know, so my friend and I decided to try to **make changes**<sup>(13)</sup> in our university. We asked the teachers to talk to the people who were **in charge of**<sup>(14)</sup> the university about the **issue**<sup>(15)</sup> and they did.

**Nadia :** What happened next ?

**Leila :** Well, after about a year, we got four new lifts and lots of ramps. The university also promised to think about disabled students when they build new parts of the **campus**<sup>(16)</sup> or change existing buildings.

**Nadia :** That's excellent.



- (1) بث إذاعي
- (2) ضيف - زائر
- (3) ناشط
- (4) مدافع - مؤيد
- (5) علم الاجتماع
- (6) ولهذا السبب
- (7) ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة
- (8) كرسي متحرك
- (9) بالكاد
- (10) مساعد
- (11) مطالع للكراسي المتحركة
- (12) هذا فضيع
- (13) يحدث تغييرات
- (14) المسئول - المكلف بـ
- (15) مشكلة - مسألة
- (16) الحرم الجامعي

**Leila :** When I finished studying, I got a job at a charity which helps disabled young people find jobs. That was really interesting.

**Nadia :** But, now you **campaign**<sup>(17)</sup> for equal opportunities for a wider range of people; not just people with disabilities. Is that right ?

**Leila :** Yes, that's right. Now, I work for **an organisation**<sup>(18)</sup> called Open Eyes which campaigns in lots of different areas. We try to **ensure**<sup>(19)</sup> that people who are different to other people, in one way or another, still have the same **chances**<sup>(20)</sup> in life.

**Nadia :** That sounds like great work to be doing, but is there anything you don't like about your job ?

**Leila :** Well, I don't like it when you think you're going to succeed, but in the end, you don't. And, of course, not all of our work is exciting. We have to do **paperwork**<sup>(21)</sup> too, you know !

(17) يطالب / يناصر

(18) منظمة

(19) يضمن - يكفل

(20) فرص

(21) أعمال كتابية

## PART IV LANGUAGE

### Relative clauses عبارات الوصل

#### 1 who / which / whom / that : الذى / التى / الذين / اللاتى :

١ تُشير (who / that) إلى فاعل عاقل ويأتى بعدهما فعل ولا يمكن حذفهما :

- ex.** - I met my pen friend **who / that lives** in London.  
- Teachers are **people who / that work** at schools.

٢ تُشير (who / whom / that) إلى مفعول عاقل فى حالة المبنى للمعلوم ويأتى بعدهما فاعل ويمكن حذفهم :

- ex.** - The man **who / whom / that you met** with me yesterday is my uncle.  
= The man **you met** with me yesterday is my uncle.

٣ تُشير (which / that) إلى فاعل غير عاقل ويأتى بعدهما فعل ولا يمكن حذفهما :

- ex.** - The dog **which / that chased** me belongs to my neighbours.

٤ تُشير (which / that) إلى مفعول غير عاقل ويأتى بعدهما فاعل ويمكن حذفهما :

- ex.** - The car **which / that I bought** has a problem with the engine.  
- The car **I bought** has a problem with the engine.

٥ لا تستخدم (that) فى الجمل الاعتراضية - أى بعد الفاصلة التحتية (,) :

- ex.** - Ismail Yassen, **who is** still a famous actor, died in the 1970s. (**Not: that is....**)  
- Aswan, **which is** in the south of Egypt, is very hot. (**Not: that is....**)



## ٦ بالنسبة لحروف الجر مع (who / whom / that / which) :

١. لا تأتي حروف الجر قبل كل من (who / that) بل تأتي بعدهما في نهاية الجملة الموصولة:

- ex.** - This is my friend **who** I play tennis with. (**Not: with who....**)  
- This is the motorbike **that** I go to school on. (**Not: on that....**)

٢. يمكن أن تأتي حروف الجر قبل أو بعد كل من (whom / which) :

- ex.** - This is my friend **whom** I play tennis **with**.  
= This is my friend **with whom** I play tennis.  
- This is the motorbike **which** I go to school on.  
= This is the motorbike **on which** I go to school.

## 2 where : حيث / حيثما / المكان الذي :

١ تعود على المكان ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:

- ex.** - This is the room **where** I sleep.  
- She went to **Cairo University where** she studied Arabic language.

٢ لاحظ أن:

(حرف جر مناسب للمكان + ... / (which / that) / (حرف جر مناسب للمكان + where = which)

- ex.** - This is the room **in which** I sleep.  
- This is the room **which / that** I sleep **in**.

٣ يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع المكان بدون حروف جر عندما يكون المكان مفعول لجملة الوصل :  
- لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين :

- ex.** - This is **the house where** we live. (المنزل مكان نعيش فيه)  
- This is **the house which** we built. (المنزل مفعول، فهو الشيء الذي تم بنائه)

٤ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على المكان قبل أو بعد (where) :

- ex.** - I went to the room **in which** I sleep. (**Not: the room in where ....**)  
- I went to the room **which** I sleep **in**. (**Not: the room where .... in**)

### Extra Notes

## 3 when : حين / حينما / عندما / الوقت الذي :

١ تُشير إلى الوقت أو الزمن ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:

- ex.** - 2012 was **the year when** Rodayna was born.  
- Friday is **the day when** we don't go to school.  
- Two o'clock is **the time when** I return home from school.

**when** = (حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني) / (which / that + ... (حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني)

**ex.** - 2012 was **the year in which** Rodayna was born.

= 2012 was **the year which / that** Rodayna was born **in**.

- Friday is **the day on which** we don't go to school.

= Friday is **the day which / that** we don't go to school **on**.

- Seven o'clock is **the time at which** I get up.

= Seven o'clock is **the time which / that** I get up **at**.

٢ يمكن أن تستخدم (**which**) مع الوقت عندما يكون الوقت مفعول لجملته الوصل :  
- لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

**ex.** - Winter is **the season when** we go to Aswan.

= We **go to Aswan in winter**.

- Winter is **the season which** we spend in Aswan.

= We **spend winter in Aswan**.

٣ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على التعبير الزمني قبل أو بعد (**when**) :

**ex.** - Friday is **the day on which** my son was born. (**Not: the day on when ....**)

- Friday is **the day which** my son was born on. (**Not: the day when .... on**)

#### 4 **whose** = (nouns + 's) / my - his - her - its - our - your - their ...

تدل على الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم (أى لا يأتي بعدها فعل) :

**ex.** - I saw **an old man whose son** was kidnapped.

- She lives in **a house whose roof** is high.

#### Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ لاحظ أن :

اسم + **with** = اسم + **have / has / had** + **noun** / **who / which / that**

**ex.** - The little girl **who has long hair** is my daughter.

= The little girl **with long hair** is my daughter.

٢ بعد الأعداد الترتيبية يمكن استبدال عبارة الوصل بـ (**to + inf.**) :

- The first / second / third .... only / last + **وصل**

= The first / second / third .... only / last + **to + inf.**

**ex.** - Omar was the second student **who arrived** at school.

= Omar was the second student **to arrive** at school.

٢ في حالة المبنى للمعلوم يمكن استبدال عبارة الوصل بـ (**inf. + ing.**)

**ex.** - The man **who is carrying** a big bag is my neighbour.

- The man **carrying** a big bag is my neighbour.



❖ في حالة المبنى للمجهول يمكن استبدال عبارة الوصل بـ (p.p.)

- ex. - The car **which was stolen** yesterday belongs to me.  
- The car **stolen** yesterday belongs to me.

## Exercises On Language

● Apply

● ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- I visited the village ..... I was born. (الجيزة - أبو النمرس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. whom                      b. whose                      c. which                      d. where
- That's the shop ..... my brother works. (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. that                      b. which                      c. where                      d. whom
- Dina is the clever girl ..... won a prize in English. (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. when                      b. where                      c. which                      d. who
- The player ..... scored the goal was given a prize. (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. whom                      b. where                      c. whose                      d. who
- 20<sup>th</sup> October is the date ..... I was born. (الجيزة - السادس من أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. which                      b. when                      c. whose                      d. where
- You must revise the essay ..... you have written; it's full of mistakes. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. who                      b. whose                      c. when                      d. that
- Being disabled, he decided to practise a sport ..... he can play in a wheelchair. (أسيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. which                      b. who                      c. where                      d. when
- This is the box ..... I had put my English books. (الغربية - السنطة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. which                      b. who                      c. whom                      d. where
- Mohamed Salah is the player ..... goals are wonderful. (دمياط - فارسكور ٢٠٢٤)  
a. who                      b. whose                      c. who's                      d. which
- I have unforgettable memories of my village ..... I was born in. (الشرقية - الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤)  
a. at which                      b. which                      c. where                      d. in which
- Alexandria, ..... is Egypt's second biggest city, is a wonderful place for a holiday. (الدقهلية - السنبلواين ٢٠٢٤)  
a. which                      b. that                      c. where                      d. in which
- This is the dentist's ..... I always have my teeth checked. (الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. who                      b. when                      c. which                      d. where

13. The person ..... wishes have come true is very happy. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. who                      b. whose                      c. whom                      d. who's
14. That's the shop in ..... my brother works. (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. which                      b. where                      c. who                      d. whose
15. Giza is a beautiful city in ..... I like to live. (الجيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. where                      b. that                      c. which                      d. whom
16. The car for ..... I paid a lot of money is very high-tech. (أسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. which                      b. who                      c. that                      d. who's
17. I like the author ..... plays are shown everywhere. (الاسكندرية - المنزه ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. who                      b. whose                      c. who's                      d. which
18. The woman with ..... I had lunch yesterday is my wife. (الجيزة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. whom                      b. whose                      c. who                      d. who's
19. Nada is my best friend with ..... I enjoy my time and benefit a lot. (الدقهلية - أجا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. who                      b. which                      c. when                      d. whom
20. I admire the teacher ..... I borrowed this wonderful book. (الدقهلية - ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. who                      b. from who                      c. whom                      d. from whom
21. The person ..... you sent the letter has moved to a new address. (الغربية - سمند ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. who's                      b. who                      c. whose                      d. to whom
22. Some great novels ..... by Nagib Mahfouz have been made into films. (الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. writing                      b. were written                      c. written                      d. which wrote

## 2 Check your understanding

23. "No one left the meeting except for Ayman." What does this mean?  
 a. Ayman was the only person to leave the meeting.  
 b. Ayman was the second person to leave the meeting.  
 c. Ayman was the last to leave the meeting.  
 d. Ayman was the only person to attend the meeting.
24. "I have three close friends who work abroad." This means I have three close friends .....  
 a. who worked abroad                      b. are working abroad  
 c. worked abroad                      d. all of whom work abroad





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

department(n)	قسم	sign(ed) off(v)	يُسجّل خروج (من موقع إلكتروني)
employee(n)	مُوظّف	sign-off(n)	خاتمة - خروج
equal opportunities	فرص متكافئة	staff(n)	هيئة العاملين
madam(n)	سيدة - سيدتي	support(ed) (n - v)	يدعم - دعم
request(ed) (n - v)	طلب - يطلب	train(ed) (v)	يتدرب
sales (n)	مبيعات	training (n)	تدريب

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

access(n)	مُدخل / مُنفذ - وُصول	colleague(n)	زميل عمل
afraid(adj)	خائف	complaint(n)	شكوى
apologise(d) (v)	يعتذر	interview(ed)(n - v)	مقابلة شخصية - جوار - يُجري مقابلة
book(ed) (v)	يحجز	polite(adj)	مُهذّب - مُؤدّب
bother(ed) (v)	يضايق	regards(n)	احترامي - تحياتي
break - broke - broken(v)	يكسر - يخالف	undercooked(adj)	غير مطهي جيّدًا

### 3 Definitions التعريفات

Memorise	Understand
madam(n) سيدة - سيدتي	a polite way to call a woman whose name you do not know
request(n) طلب	you make this to say what you want
sign-off(n) خاتمة - خروج	another word for the close of an email

## Exercises On Vocabulary

### • Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Key Vocabulary

1. He is a young ..... and he looks forward to a promotion.

(القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. employee      b. employ      c. employment      d. employer

2. The conclusion of an email or a podcast is also known as a/an .....  
a. sign-off      b. inclusion      c. request      d. training
3. If the relatives couldn't pick the patient, he would be lodged in the causality .....  
(الأقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)      a. development      b. compartment      c. department      d. appointment
4. Increasing the company's ..... needs a better marketing plan.  
a. sails      b. sales      c. seals      d. soles
5. As a footballer, I do ..... at regular times.  
a. opportunity      b. support      c. request      d. training
6. He ..... his podcast in an attractive way. He put the whole matter in a nutshell.  
a. signed off      b. included      c. requested      d. trained
7. Once given equal ....., I'm sure they will do well.  
a. achievements      b. success      c. opportunities      d. failure
8. When you don't know the addressee in a formal letter, you say "Dear Sir or .....".  
a. Woman      b. Mistress      c. Mister      d. Madam
9. The captain of the attacked ship made an urgent ..... for help.  
a. opportunity      b. success      c. request      d. training
10. I run an office with a ..... of 27 employees.  
a. staff      b. stuff      c. sign-off      d. achievement
11. We all need some ..... when we are in trouble.  
a. sales      b. support      c. request      d. failure

## 2 Important Vocabulary

12. The manger hasn't replied to the ..... I have made.  
(الجيزة - الدقي ٢٠٢٤)      a. agreement      b. complaint      c. interview      d. campaign
13. I'm sorry to ..... you, but the music was really nice.  
(القليوبية - قليوب ٢٠٢٤)      a. quiet      b. bother      c. angry      d. relieve
14. There are some washing instructions on the .....  
(الجيزة - أبو النمرس ٢٠٢٤)      a. label      b. ticket      c. celebrity      d. diversity
15. I asked Mariam if she wanted a piece of cake and she ..... her head to say yes.  
(الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)      a. shocked      b. nodded      c. noted      d. shook
16. My ..... are wonderful. They help me when I need them.  
(البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٣)      a. colleges      b. collages      c. cottages      d. colleagues
17. The internet has given us ..... to all information we need.  
a. powerlift      b. ramp      c. access      d. muscle



18. He ..... the world record three years ago and he still holds it.  
 a. broke                      b. missed                      c. messed                      d. benefitted

### 3 Definitions

19. A/An ..... is what you make to say what you want.  
 a. sign off                      b. staff                      c. request                      d. madam
20. .... is a polite way to call a woman whose name you do not know.  
 a. Mum                      b. Madam                      c. Sir                      d. Honey

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

<b>break</b>	a record	يحطم الرقم القياسي	<b>make</b>	a complaint	يشكو
<b>do</b>	building work	يقوم بأعمال بناء	<b>make</b>	a request	يطلب
<b>get</b>	home	يصل للبيت	<b>make</b>	noise	يُخِذُ ضجيجاً
<b>have</b>	a reason to	لديه مُبرَّر لـ	<b>make</b>	sure	يتأكد
<b>hold</b>	a record	يحمل الرقم القياسي	<b>take</b>	place	يُحَدِّث
<b>receive</b>	training	يتلقى تدريباً			

### 2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
bother	اضايق
competition	مسابقة
diversity	التنوع - التعدد
employ	يوظف - يشغل
employ	يستغل
sign-off	خاتمة
suitable	مُناسب
	annoy, upset
	contest
	variety, variation
	take on, hire, recruit
	harness, make good use of
	close, closing, ending, conclusion
	appropriate, fit

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
bother	يسعد - يرضي
diversity	نمطية - تشابه
employ	يفصل من العمل
sign-off	افتتاحية
sign-off	تسجيل دخول
suitable	غير ملائم
	please, satisfy
	uniformity
	fire, sack, dismiss, discharge
	opening, start, beginning, introduction
	sign-in
	unsuitable, unfit, inappropriate

#### 4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

(be) qualified for	مُؤَهَّل لـ	like me	مِثْلِي
(be) suitable for	مناسب لـ	on long flights	في الرحلات الجوية الطويلة
break a world record for	يحطم الرقم القياسي العالمي في	sales department	قسم المبيعات
I do apologise	إنني أعتذر	sorry about / for	شاعر بالأسف بخصوص
I'm afraid	يؤسفني أن	training in how to	تدريب على كيفية
		Kind regards	مع خالص تحياتي

#### 5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	reply to	يُرَدُّ على
be out	بالخارج / غير موجود	speak to	يتحدث إلى
come in for	يأتي من أجل	start ... with	يبدأ ... بـ
go back to	يعود إلى	thank ... for	يشكر ... على
hear from	يتلقى أخبار من	train ... to	يُدرَّب ... على
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	turn ... down	يُخفض صوت ... - يرفض

### Exercises On Vocabulary Study

- ★ **MRQ** : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "The movie's sign-off left the audience in tears." "Sign-off" is opposite in meaning to ..... .  
(الأقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)

- a. start                      b. closing                      c. finish  
d. conclusion                      e. beginning

2. "Don't bother your brother while he is studying." The antonyms of the word 'bother' are ..... and ..... .  
(الاسكندرية - المنزهة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. neglect                      b. break                      c. please  
d. satisfy                      e. damage

3. My daughter, Mona, won a science ....., so I'm proud of her.  
(الغربية - سهنود ٢٠٢٤)

- a. competition                      b. condition                      c. fiction  
d. contest                      e. grade

4. "How many people did the company employ?" The antonyms of the verb "employ" are ..... .  
(القاهرة - النهضة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. hire                      b. fire                      c. understand  
d. learn                      e. discharge

5. He ..... extra training to lose weight before joining the first team.

- a. achieved                      b. made                      c. held                      d. received                      e. did

6. You can ..... a record.

- a. break                      b. hold                      c. mess                      d. receive                      e. go



7. "I think red is not suitable as a colour for a formal suit." The adjective 'suitable' in this context is a synonym of .....  
 a. appropriate      b. inappropriate      c. fit      d. unsuitable      e. unfit
8. When you want someone to do something for you, you .....  
 a. do it      b. make it      c. make a request  
 d. ask them to do it      e. depend on yourself

★ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I want to ..... a complaint. This shirt shrank when I washed it. (الجيزة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. do      b. draw      c. push      d. make
2. Crimes ..... place at midnight. (الاسكندرية - الجُمرك ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. do      b. have      c. make      d. take
3. The athlete was over the moon when he ..... the world record.  
 a. broke      b. crashed      c. splashed      d. devastated
4. Computers have ..... it possible for people to work from home. (إسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. done      b. taken      c. given      d. made
5. We can say someone ..... a difference, noise or a request.  
 a. does      b. achieves      c. makes      d. runs
6. 'Diversity' and 'variety' are .....  
 a. antonyms      b. opposites      c. synonyms      d. a & b
7. I trained my son ..... on himself.  
 a. depend      b. depended      c. to depend      d. depends
8. We always start an informal email ..... the greeting التحية.  
 a. for      b. with      c. of      d. to
9. I added some lemon ..... my soup.  
 a. to      b. of      c. from      d. at
10. He has ..... the world record for five years. No one else could even reach his record.  
 a. held      b. broken      c. missed      d. a, b & c

## PART III READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Text

Dear Christine Harrison,

Thank you for your **interest**<sup>(1)</sup> in working for our company. I am writing to reply to your questions.

Our company already has two disabled **employees**<sup>(2)</sup>. We do not have a **lift**<sup>(3)</sup> but we have **ramps**<sup>(4)</sup> to both of the floors in our building. All of our **staff**<sup>(5)</sup> are



- (1) اهتمام
- (2) موظفين
- (3) مصعد
- (4) مطالع للكراسي المتحركة
- (5) فريق العمل

Lesson 4 WB page 117

trained to<sup>(6)</sup> support<sup>(7)</sup> our disabled colleagues<sup>(8)</sup>.

I would like to know which **qualifications**<sup>(9)</sup> you have.

Could you come in for **an interview**<sup>(10)</sup> next week ?

I **look forward to**<sup>(11)</sup> hearing from you.

Kind regards<sup>(12)</sup>.

Medhat Shoukry

Manager

(6) متدرب لـ

(7) يساعد / يساعد

(8) زملاء

(9) مؤهلات

(10) مقابلة رسمية

(11) يتطلع إلى

(12) تحيات

## 2 Listening Texts

Lesson 3 SB page 56

Listen to three conversations where one person is making a complaint and the other person is responding to that complaint.

**Narrator** : One

**Woman 1** : Excuse me, I'd like to **make a complaint**<sup>(1)</sup>.  
My soup is cold.

(1) يقدم شكوى

**Woman 2** : I do **apologise**<sup>(2)</sup>. I'll make sure you get  
another soup which is hot.

(2) يعتذر

**Narrator** : Two

**Old Man** : I'm sorry to bother you, but the music is really loud.

**Man 1** : I'm sorry about that. I'll **make sure**<sup>(3)</sup> my son turns the  
music down.

(3) يتأكد

**Narrator** : Three

**Old Woman** : I'd like to speak to the manager, please.

**Woman 3** : I'm afraid she's out at the moment. Can I help you ?

**Old Woman** : Yes, the problem is that my train is now two hours late.  
How am I going to get home this evening ?

**Woman 3** : I'm sorry about that. Perhaps we can **book**<sup>(4)</sup> a taxi for you.

(4) يحجز

Lesson 3 WB page 116

### Conversation One

**Hana** : Excuse me, I'd like to make a complaint.  
My phone doesn't work.

(1) يصلح

**Assistant** : I do apologise. Perhaps we can **repair**<sup>(1)</sup> it.

(2) يضيّق - يزعج

### Conversation Two

**Hany** : I'm sorry to **bother**<sup>(2)</sup> you, but you're very tall. I can't see  
the play.

**Man** : I'm sorry about that. I'll change places with my wife. She is  
shorter.



### Conversation Three

**Heba** : I'd like to speak to the **manager**<sup>(3)</sup>, please.

**Waitress** : I'm afraid he's **out at the moment**<sup>(4)</sup>. Can I help you ?

**Heba** : Yes, the problem is that my meat is **undercooked**<sup>(5)</sup>.

**Waitress** : I'm sorry about that. We will give you a new meal.

(3) مدير

(4) بالخارج في هذه اللحظة

(5) غير مطبوخ جيدًا

## PART IV LANGUAGE

تنويه راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

### General Exercise On Language

● Apply

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Getting started : Check what you have learnt

1. The teachers ..... skills on the computer are limited will meet a big challenge next year.

(المنيا - مغافة ٢٠٢٣)

a. who                      b. who's                      c. whose                      d. that

2. Our flat, ..... is on the fifth floor, overlooks the Nile.

(اسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٣)

a. which                      b. what                      c. whose                      d. where

3. For me, my home is a place ..... I feel free and relaxed.

a. who                      b. where                      c. when                      d. that

4. For me, my home is a place ..... I feel free and relaxed in.

a. who                      b. where                      c. when                      d. which

5. Summer is the season ..... we go on holiday.

a. where                      b. which                      c. who                      d. when

6. This is the time ..... Rodayna usually arrives home.

a. whose                      b. who                      c. when                      d. which

7. The girl ..... has been injured in the accident is now in hospital.

a. whom                      b. when                      c. who                      d. where

8. The machine ..... broke down has now been repaired.

a. who                      b. which                      c. whom                      d. where

9. The bus ..... goes to the city centre runs every half an hour.

a. which                      b. on which                      c. where                      d. when

10. She works for a company ..... produces mobile phones.  
 a. who                      b. that                      c. where                      d. when
11. I can't find the books ..... I got from the library.  
 a. that                      b. where                      c. what                      d. when
12. The writer ..... novel won the first prize gave me a signed copy as a present.  
 a. whose                      b. which                      c. who                      d. when

## 2 Special cases

13. I can't remember the name of the person ..... I borrowed this pen.  
 a. from where                      b. from which                      c. to whom                      d. from whom  
 (القاهرة - الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)
14. The Eastern Desert, ..... is very dry, has very little wildlife.  
 a. where                      b. when                      c. that                      d. which
15. Lake Nasser, ..... was formed behind the High Dam, is the largest man-made lake.  
 a. where                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. which
16. Armstrong was the first ..... on the moon.  
 a. walking                      b. to walk  
 c. man he walked                      d. one who walking
17. A new tower was built next to the house ..... I was born.  
 a. in where                      b. in which                      c. when                      d. no pronoun
18. Will you lend me the DVD ..... you bought last week?  
 a. in which                      b. whose                      c. when                      d. no pronoun
19. I found the pen for ..... I was searching.  
 a. that                      b. which                      c. whose                      d. what
20. I went to the grocer's ..... I bought what I need.  
 a. when                      b. who                      c. which                      d. where
21. I met a man with ..... I used to work.  
 a. whom                      b. which                      c. that                      d. who
22. Eighteen is the age ..... you can vote in elections تُصوّت في الانتخابات.  
 a. with which                      b. in which                      c. which                      d. at which
23. Aswan, ..... is in the south of Egypt, is where I currently work.  
 a. where                      b. which                      c. in which                      d. that



24. "Awlad Elam", ..... by Karim Abd El-Aziz, is a fantastic movie.  
 a. which it was starred                      b. which is starred  
 c. that is starred                              d. was starred
25. He had a bitter argument with his wife, ..... annoyed him much.  
 a. that                      b. whose                      c. when                      d. which
26. Japan, ..... consists of a lot of islands, is a leading country in the Far East.  
 a. which                      b. where                      c. who                      d. that
27. Haven't I told you about the destination ..... I want to visit for my next holiday?  
 a. what                      b. where                      c. when                      d. that
28. The movie ..... yesterday was very interesting.  
 a. we watched it                      b. that watched it  
 c. which watched it                      d. we watched
29. This bookstore is ..... my brother works.  
 a. which                      b. that                      c. when                      d. where

### 3 Check your understanding

30. "Yesterday, Ahmed visited his aunt. He hadn't seen her for ages."  
 Which of the following gives the same meaning?  
 a. Yesterday, Ahmed visited his aunt who she hadn't been seen for ages.  
 b. Yesterday, Ahmed visited his aunt who he hadn't seen her for ages.  
 c. Yesterday, Ahmed visited his aunt who he hadn't seen for ages.  
 d. Yesterday, Ahmed visited his aunt who hadn't seen for ages.
31. "I like the sight of farmers when they water the fields." This means .....  
 a. I like the sight of the farmer watered the fields.  
 b. I like the sight of one farmer watering the fields.  
 c. I like the sight of farmers watered the fields.  
 d. I like the sight of farmers watering the fields.
32. "Most people prefer furniture that carpenters make in Damietta."  
 Which choice gives the same meaning?  
 a. Most people prefer furniture making in Damietta.  
 b. Most people prefer furniture made in Damietta.  
 c. Most people prefer furniture which made in Damietta.  
 d. Most people prefer furniture was made in Damietta.



للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الاسئلة

تنويه

## PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

١ يُمكن استخدام (some) كضمير بمعنى (البعض) ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد إذا كانت تشير لاسم غير معدود وفعل جمع إذا كانت تشير لاسم معدود:

- ex. - Most **information** on the internet is in English. **Some is** in different languages like Arabic.  
- The students are mostly clever. However, **some don't** work hard enough.

٢ أسماء الدول التي تتكون من كلمة واحدة لا تأخذ (the) إلا إذا كان الاسم جمعاً فتوضع قبله (the) مثل:

- ex. - The Netherlands هولندا - The Philippines الفلبين

٣ يأتي بعد (look forward to) اسم أو (inf. + ing):

- ex. - I look forward ..... from my uncle.  
a. to hear      b. to hearing      c. of hearing      d. hearing

٤ لاحظ استخدام (whatever):

Whatever + اسم + فاعل + فعل ..... •

- ex. - **Whatever work she had**, she found time to play the piano.

Whatever + فاعل + فعل •

- ex. - You must do **whatever I say**.

Whatever + فعل •

- ex. - I'll always support you **whatever happens**.

٥ الكلمات التالية يأتي بعدها فعل مفرد ويعوض عنها ضمير جمع

Someone - somebody - anyone - anybody - everyone -  
everybody - no one - nobody

- ex. - Somebody **has** knocked on the door but when I opened the door, **they** have gone.  
ex. - A disabled person is **someone** who cannot use part of **their** body in the way that most people can.

٦ يُمكن استخدام (do – does – did) قبل الفعل الأساسي (المصدر) في المضارع البسيط والماضي البسيط بشكل بلاغي للتأكيد أو لإعطاء قوة للمعنى:

- ex. - I **do know** who broke the window. - He **did shout** at me.



## Exercise On Language Hints

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Most of my friends like football, but ..... prefer handball.  
a. some                      b. any                      c. every                      d. each
2. A: Do you know who broke my glasses ? B: Yes, Sama ..... them.  
a. broke                      b. did break                      c. does break                      d. a & b
3. Everyone ..... waiting for your speech.  
a. has                      b. have                      c. is                      d. are
4. Someone is ringing the doorbell. I will see who .....  
a. she is                      b. he is                      c. they are                      d. are they
5. I'll help you whatever .....  
a. is happened                      b. happens                      c. happening                      d. a & b
6. Whatever ..... you make, I will support you.  
a. choose                      b. chose                      c. chosen                      d. choice
7. .... is an Arab country.  
a. Lebanon                      b. The Lebanon                      c. Lebanese                      d. a & b
8. .... is an Asian country.  
a. Philippines                      b. The Philippines  
c. Philippines'                      d. a & b

## PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1 Reading

☆ Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (الأنقص - أرمث ٢٠٢٤)

Cleopatra was the last of a series of rulers called the Ptolemies who ruled Egypt for nearly 300 years. She was also the last true pharaoh of Egypt. Cleopatra ruled an Empire that included Egypt, Cyprus, part of modern-day Libya and other territories in the Middle East.

Cleopatra was born in Egypt in 69 BC. In 58 BC, her father was forced to leave the throne, but Cleopatra helped him regain it. After his death, Cleopatra and her brother took the throne in 51 BC, yet she was exiled by her brother, who had taken control of Egypt.

So, Cleopatra created an army and joined forces with Julius Caesar. With his help, her brother was killed in 47 BC and Caesar pronounced Cleopatra queen of Egypt.

Cleopatra married Mark Antony around 35 BC, even though he was also married to a woman named Octavia. In 35 BC, war was declared upon Egypt from Octavia's brother because Antony had left Octavia for Cleopatra. Antony and Octavia divorced after that.

Cleopatra's army **was defeated** in the Battle of Actium, so Antony committed suicide. Saddened by Antony's death, Cleopatra poisoned herself in 31 BC.

- Cleopatra was a descendent of the .....  
a. Pharaohs      b. Egyptian      c. Ptolemies      d. rulers
- As used in the third paragraph, the underlined word '**pronounced**' means .....  
a. refused      b. denied      c. announced      d. deleted
- How old was Cleopatra when she died?  
a. 29      b. 38      c. 58      d. 69
- What does the underlined word "**it**" refers to?  
a. The throne      b. Egypt  
c. Libya      d. the Middle East
- Cleopatra ruled Egypt for nearly .....  
a. 30 years      b. 16 years      c. 3 centuries      d. 4 decades
- Cleopatra was Mark Antony's .....  
a. mother      b. sister      c. sister-in-law      d. wife
- As used in the last paragraph, the phrase '**was defeated**' is similar in meaning to .....  
a. was beaten      b. was stolen      c. conquered      d. won

## 2 Email Writing كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

### \* Model formal Email (SB page 57)

**From** : christine.harrison@mail.com

**To** : info@crispins.com

**Subject** : Questions about disabled access at your company

**Dear Sir / Madam ,**

I am writing because I would like to apply for a job at your company. However, I have a disability and need to use a wheelchair. Could you tell me if your company is suitable for disabled employees? Do you have ramps and lifts? Do your staff receive training in how to support disabled colleagues?

If your company is suitable for a disabled person like me, I will apply for a job in the sales department which I am qualified for.

I look forward to hearing from you.

**Kind regards ,**

Christine Harrison



\* Model professional Email (WB page 117)

**From** : info@crispins.com  
**To** : christine.harrison@mail.com  
**Subject** : Reply to a job application

**Dear Christine Harrison,**

Thank you for your interest in working for our company. I am writing to reply to your questions.

Our company already has two disabled employees. We do not have a lift but we have ramps to both of the floors in our building. All of our staff are trained to support our disabled colleagues.

I would like to know which qualifications you have.

Could you come in for an interview next week?

I look forward to hearing from you.

**Kind regards,**

Medhat Shoukry

Manager

**3 Writing**

**Your name is Rodayna. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words to your friend Sama on the following topic:**

*“Your role model in life”*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**4 الترجمة Translation**

● **A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:**

1. You should be ambitious. You must always have targets to pursue and a role-model to inspire you to achieve your dreams in life.

a. يجب أن تكون طموحاً، كما يجب أن يكون لديك دائماً أهداف تسعى لتدركها وقدوة تلهمك لتحقيق أحلامك في الحياة.

- b. يجب أن تكون طموحاً، كما يجب أن يكون لديك دائماً أهداف تسعى لتحقيقها وقدوة تلهمك لتحقيق ألامك في الحياة.
- c. يجب أن تكون طموحاً، كما يجب أن يكون لديك أحياناً أهداف تسعى لتحقيقها وقدوة تلهمك لتحقيق ألامك في الحياة.
- d. يجب أن تكون طموحاً، كما يجب أن يكون لديك دائماً أهداف تسعى لتحقيقها وقدوة تلهيك لتحقيق ألامك في الحياة.

2. Every one of us should have a hobby within their means. Otherwise, life loses its charm and becomes one long labour from beginning to end.

(الأقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)

- a. يجب على كل منا أن تكون له هواية بعيدة المنال، وإلا تفقد الحياة سحرها وتصبح عملاً طويلاً من البداية للنهاية.
- b. يجب على كل منا أن تكون له هواية في المتناول، وإلا تفقد الحياة قيمها وتصبح عملاً طويلاً من البداية للنهاية.
- c. يجب على كل منا أن تكون له هواية في المتناول، وإلا تفقد الحياة سحرها وتصبح عملاً شاقاً من البداية للنهاية.
- d. يجب على كل منا أن تكون له هواية في المتناول، وإلا تفقد الحياة سحرها وتصبح عملاً طويلاً من البداية للنهاية.

● B. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

١. يُعَدّ مترو الأنفاق من الإنجازات الهامة لمصر مؤخراً، وذلك لدوره الهام في حل مشكلة التكدس المروري والحد من الحوادث.

(أسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. The underground considered one of the important achievements for Egypt recently. This for its important roll in solving the problem of traffic jam and producing the number of accidents.
- b. The underground is considered one of the important achievement for Egypt recently for its important role in saving the problem of traffic jam and reducing the number of accidents.
- c. The underground isn't considered one of the important achievements for Egypt recently. This is for its important role in solving the problem of traffic jam and reducing the amount of accidents.
- d. For its important role in solving the problem of traffic jam and reducing the number of accidents, the underground is considered one of the important achievements for Egypt recently.

٢. إن العمل الجاد وحسن استغلال الوقت هما الطريق الوحيد لتحقيق هدفك.

(أسيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Work hard and the good use of time are the only way to achieve your goal.
- b. Hard work and the good use of time are the lonely way to achieve your goal.
- c. Hard work and the good use of time are the only way to achieve your goal.
- d. Hard work and the bad use of time are the only way to achieve your goal.



## campaign

- **campaign (n)** قتال / معركة / حملة عسكرية  
- The **campaign** succeeded in arresting the terrorists.
- **campaign (for / against) (n)** حملة (الصالح / ضد)  
- The government is running a **campaign** against Virus C.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:

- launch / begin a campaign يبدأ حملة
- run / carry out a campaign يقوم بحملة
- lead a campaign يقود حملة
- a national campaign حملة قومية
- an advertising / marketing campaign حملة إعلانية / تسويقية
- **campaign (for / against) (v)** يتناصر / يطالب / يقوم بحملة لصالح / ضد  
- The workers **campaigned for** less working hours.
- **campaigner (for) (n)** مدافع - مؤيد - مناصر  
- Martin Luther King was a great **campaigner** for equality المساواة.

## compete

- **compete (for / to / against / with / in) (v)** يتنافس / يتنافس (من أجل / لكي / ضد / مع / في)  
- The two shops are **competing for** attracting more customers.
- The two shops are **competing to** attract more customers.
- The USA and Russia have always **competed in** space technology.
- Mercedes is **competing against** BMW in the American market.

- **competition (n)** مسابقة  
- The weight lifting **competition** starts tomorrow.
- **competition (n)** منافسة - تنافس  
- The Egyptian athletes are preparing for the next **competition**.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:

- face a competition يواجه منافسة
- fair / unfair competition منافسة شريفة / غير شريفة
- take part in a competition يشارك في مسابقة
- have / hold a competition يقيم مسابقة
- run a competition ينظم مسابقة
- **competitor (n)** منافس - متسابق  
- There are 18 **competitors** for the gold medal.

### Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She speaks English ..... her sister.  
a. in addition      b. as good as      c. as well      d. as well as
2. Everyone ..... ready for the race.  
a. are      b. is      c. have      d. has
3. Someone has forgotten ..... money on the table.  
a. his      b. her      c. their      d. its
4. The majority of the staff work hard, but some ..... lazy.  
a. are      b. is      c. have      d. has
5. Some conservationists campaign ..... the rights of animals.  
a. of      b. by      c. to      d. for

### Advanced Exercise on Language

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I spent three hours studying the files ..... me.  
a. which sent to      b. sent to  
c. which you sent them      d. you sent them
2. Do you have an idea ..... Ahmed has left the front door key?  
a. that      b. what      c. where      d. which
3. We know a lot of people ..... lives are miserable.  
a. who      b. when      c. where      d. whose
4. Ayman and Ashraf, ..... visit to Aswan was enjoyable, decided to stay there for much longer.  
a. which      b. that      c. who      d. whose

أحرص علي إقتناء

EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق





# Test on Unit 11

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

تدويع

التقييمات  
الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار الكتروني

## 1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

- Taking part in the Olympics is a/an ..... you have to be prepared for.  
a. horror                      b. challenge                      c. shortage  
d. achievement                      e. delay
- "After a terrible car accident, he now has a disability." The antonym of the word 'disability' is .....  
a. identity                      b. power                      c. poverty  
d. ability                      e. happiness

(أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

## 2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- My parents always encourage me to do my utmost to ..... my goals.  
a. discourage                      b. publish                      c. motivate                      d. achieve  
(الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)
- All modern buildings have both steps for walkers and ..... for wheelchairs users.  
a. streets                      b. wires                      c. ramps                      d. shops  
(الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)
- Life is not always easy, so you need to expect some .....  
a. high and low                      b. highs and lows  
c. highs and dry                      d. high and mighty
- He is an ..... in the field of human rights.  
a. active                      b. activate                      c. activist                      d. activation  
(القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠٢٤)
- He has a permanent ..... which prevents him from working as a labourer.  
a. ability                      b. disability                      c. capacity                      d. mastery  
(الأقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)
- The child needs help as he is a/an ..... patient.  
a. ability                      b. polio                      c. campaign                      d. support  
(الدقهلية - السنبلوين ٢٠٢٤)
- The teachers ..... skills on computers are limited will meet a big challenge.  
a. who                      b. whose                      c. whom                      d. that  
(الغربية - شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤)
- Oliver Twist, ..... we read last year, is an interesting book.  
a. who                      b. which                      c. whom                      d. when  
(الشرقية - الصالحية ٢٠٢٤)
- I like those friends ..... likes are similar to mine.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. that  
(البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)
- Luxor is a city ..... is famous across the world.  
a. which                      b. where                      c. whose                      d. what  
(الاسماعيلية - التل الكبير ٢٠٢٤)



11. This is the shop ..... my brother works in. (السيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. who                      b. where                      c. which                      d. whose
12. The person ..... I received the letter is the manager of the company.  
 a. in whose                      b. who                      c. from which                      d. from whom

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (السيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)

In Egypt, the tourism industry has come to hold a position of great importance lately. It is felt that it could help increase the national income. In some European countries, tourism has brought in millions of dollars yearly, although they lack the natural and historical attraction we have in Egypt.

We could, for instance, establish tourist villages for children on the Red Sea. We could teach fishing, swimming, diving and sailing there. Another good idea would be a village in the New valley for horse riding. And what about a village for people with health problems like rheumatism? The warm dry climate of Aswan and Helwan would certainly help them get better.

Our tourist wants efficient and friendly service. He would probably prefer to try our samples of our local food rather than to eat the international meals which are served in some places. It must also be remembered that most tourists are seldom rich. Many of the them are students or hardworking employees. So, what is needed is not expensive hotels, but clean comfortable places to sleep and eat in at reasonable prices. This, too, would encourage Egyptians to travel more and more around their country.

1. The antonym of the verb 'increase' is .....  
 a. reduce                      b. produce                      c. introduce                      d. conclude
2. The underlined word 'seldom' here means .....  
 a. recently                      b. lately                      c. early                      d. rarely
3. Tourism has become very important because it ..... the national income.  
 a. decreases                      b. reduces                      c. increases                      d. releases
4. According to the writer, if someone has pain in their muscles and joints, they should go to .....  
 a. Europe                      b. Aswan                      c. the Red Sea                      d. the New Valley
5. What does the underlined pronoun 'it' in the first paragraph refer to?  
 a. industry                      b. commerce                      c. tourism                      d. agriculture
6. If prices are ....., people can afford them.  
 a. reasonable                      b. expensive                      c. high                      d. soaring
7. We should encourage and ..... tourism in Egypt.  
 a. destroy                      b. damage                      c. support                      d. spoil



4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Giving help to others and sharing their happiness and sadness are the most sublime qualities that every individual in our society should be marked with.

(الجيزة - كراسة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. إن تقديم العون للآخرين ومشاركتهم نجاحهم وأحزانهم من أسمى الصفات التي يجب أن يتحلى بها كل فرد في مجتمعنا.
- b. إن تقديم العون للآخرين ومشاركتهم أفراحهم وأحزانهم من أسمى الصفات التي يجب أن يتحلى بها كل فرد في مجتمعنا.
- c. إن تقديم العون للآخرين ومشاركتهم أفراحهم وأحزانهم من أسمى الصفات التي قد يتحلى بها كل فرد في مجتمعنا.
- d. إن تقديم العون للآخرين ومشاركتهم أفراحهم وأحزانهم من أسمى الصفات التي يجب أن يتحلى بها أي فرد في مجتمعنا.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

يجب علينا جميعاً أفراداً وحكومات أن نبذل أقصى ما في وسعنا لكي تتمكن من تحسين جودة منتجاتنا المحلية وبالتالي تحقيق النمو الاقتصادي.

(الاسكندرية - المنزه ٢٠٢٤)

- a. We all, individual and government, should make our best to be able to improve the quality of our global products and thus achieve economic progress.
- b. We all, individuals and governments, should do our best to be able to improve the quality of our local products and thus achieve economic progress.
- c. We all, individuals and governments, should do our better to be able to improve the quality of our local products and thus achieve economic progress.
- d. We all, individuals and governments, should do our best to be able to improve the quantity of our local products and thus achieve economic progress.

5. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think George was still angry after Silver answered the pirates' question ?

(دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٤)

2. If you were Dr Livesey would you look after the ill pirates ? Why/ Why not ?

3. Why did Jim decide to stay with Silver, and not leave with Dr Livesey ?

(القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٤)

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

(الشرقية - الصالحية ٢٠٢٤)

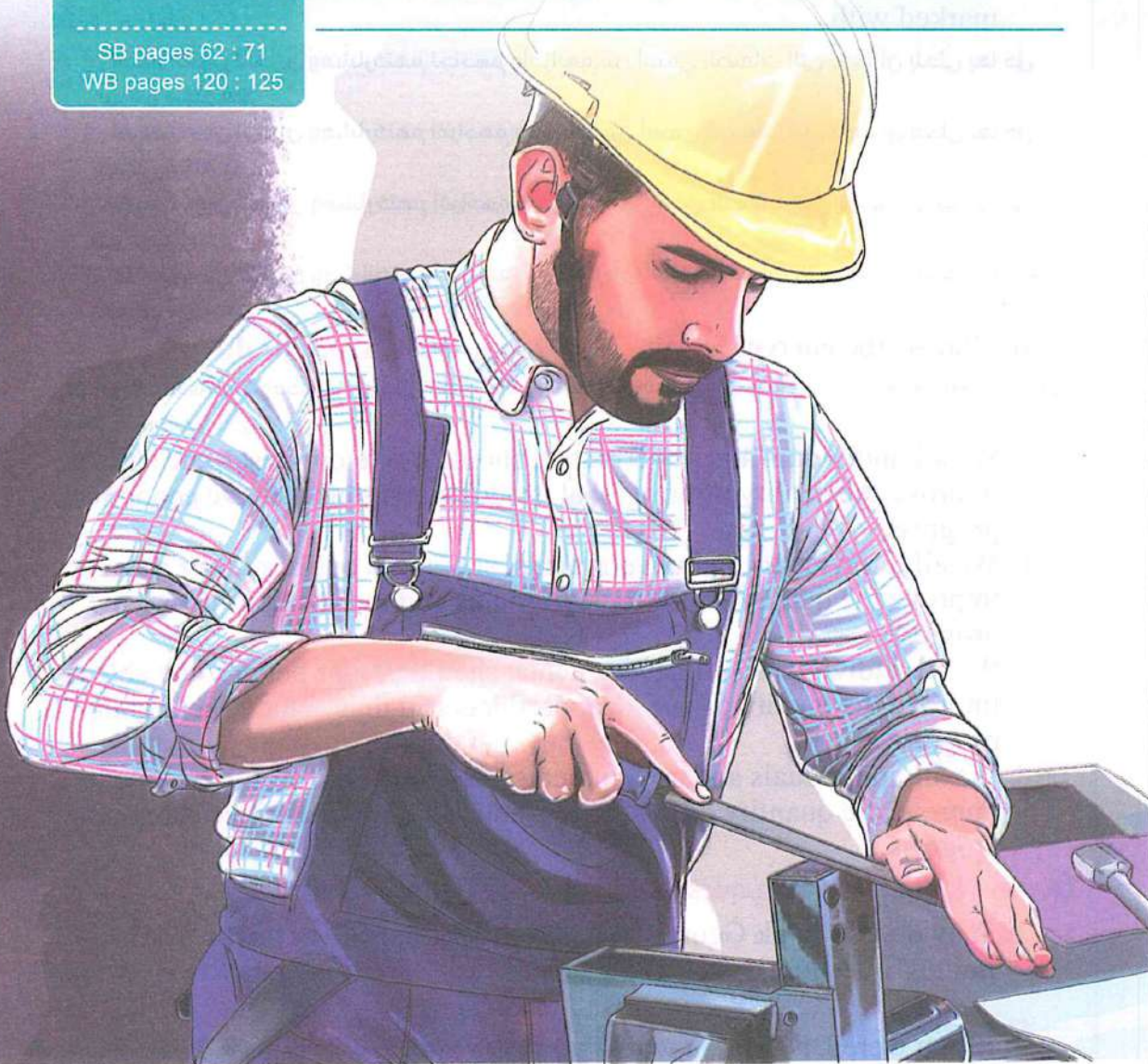
*"A well-educated citizen can build a good developed country"*



# UNIT 12

SB pages 62 : 71  
WB pages 120 : 125

## Hard work



Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- ✧ Reading : A summary of Silas Marner
- ✧ Writing : A book review ; a short story
- ✧ Listening : A conversation about how people work
- ✧ Speaking : Explaining mysteries

- ✧ Language : Modal verbs of possibility  
can't, might, must
- ✧ Critical thinking : Research and present  
answers to a famous  
mystery





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

disappear(ed)(v)	يختفي	mystery(n)	لغز - سر غامض
engaged(adj)	خاطب/مخطوبة	solve(d) (v)	يحل
guilty(adj)	مُذنب	weaver(n)	نساج / حائك

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

alone (adj – adv)	بمفرده	local(adj)	محلي
Artificial	الذكاء الاصطناعي	look(ed) (v)	يبدو - ينظر
Intelligence (AI)(n)		machinery(n)	آلات
call(ed) (v)	يُسمَّى - يتصل - ينادي	manual(adj)	يدوي
cloth(n)	القماش	operate(d) (v)	يُشغَل - يُدير
conditions(n)	ظروف	ordinary(adj)	عادي - معتاد
confused(adj)	مُتَحَيِّر - مُرتبك	pale(adj)	شاحب - باهت
cottage(n)	كوخ	prove – proved –	يُثَبِّت
crazy(adj)	مجنون	proved/ proven (v)	
customer(n)	زبون	realise(d) (v)	يُدْرِك
earlier(adv)	منذ - قبل ذلك	review(n)	عرض نقدي - معالجة نقدية
early years	السنوات الأولى - مقتبل العمر	sick(adj)	مريض
efficiently(adv)	بكفاءة	special(adj)	خاص - مُميَّز
empty(ied) (adj - v)	فارغ - يُفَرِّغ	steal – stole – stolen (v)	يسرق
fireplace(n)	مدفأة	survive(d)	يبقى على قيد الحياة - ينجو
hide - hid -	يُخْفِي	twist(ed) (v)	يلوي / يَتَزَم
hidden(n)		unpleasant(adj)	غير سار
instead(adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	village(n)	قرية
join(ed) in (phr. v)	يتحد - يشارك	villager(n)	شخص قروي
labour(n)	عمل	whole (adj – n)	بالكامل - كل

### 3 Definitions التعريفات

Memorise	Understand
disappear(ed)(v) يختفي	become impossible to see or find
engaged(adj) خاطب/مخطوبة	to be in a relationship to get married.

<b>guilty(adj)</b>	مُذْنِب	describes someone who has broken a rule or a law
<b>mystery(n)</b>	لُغْز - سِر غامض	something that is difficult to explain or understand
<b>solve(d)(v)</b>	يُحَل	find an answer to a problem
<b>weaver(n)</b>	نَسَّاج / حائك	a person who makes clothes by twisting wool together

## Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

### 1 Definitions

- To be ..... is to be in a relationship to get married. (أنسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. related      b. involved      c. engaged      d. approved
- A ..... is a person who makes cloth. (بني سويف - الواسطي ٢٠٢٤)  
a. solver      b. villager      c. thief      d. weaver
- To ..... is to find an answer to a problem.  
a. abandon      b. solve      c. weave      d. disappear
- To ..... means to become impossible to see or find.  
a. abandon      b. solve      c. weave      d. disappear
- ..... describes someone who has broken a rule or a law.  
a. Guilty      b. Close      c. Mysterious      d. Alone
- A ..... is something that is difficult to explain or understand.  
a. mystery      b. character      c. weaver      d. page-turner

### 2 Key Vocabulary

- The child's sudden disappearance is still a .....; no one could know the reason. (الشرقية - الإبراهيمية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. reason      b. discovery      c. mystery      d. recovery
- If a math problem is very difficult, I do my best to ..... it. (الفيوم - طامية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. solve      b. dissolve      c. disappear      d. neglect
- The ..... of one of my neighbours is still a mystery. No one has an idea where he is. (بورسعيد - الزهور ٢٠٢٤)  
a. disappear      b. appearance      c. disappearance      d. appear
- It is cloudy and the sun has ..... behind the heavy clouds.  
a. appeared      b. disappeared      c. solved      d. recovered
- He was ..... to his cousin, but unfortunately their marriage was cancelled. (الغربية - سمود ٢٠٢٤)  
a. engaged      b. invited      c. announced      d. contacted
- He is a loom ..... making elaborate carpets. (المنوفية - قويسنا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. weaver      b. builder      c. designer      d. writer



13. He is really .....; he did many things against the law. (سوهاج - ساقطته ٢٠٢٤)  
a. guiltless      b. guilty      c. guilt      d. innocent

**3 Important Vocabulary**

14. Shall I take the ..... bottles for recycling? (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. full      b. empty      c. occupied      d. complete
15. Heba hasn't eaten anything for two days, so she looks ..... . (القاهرة - الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)  
a. ball      b. plot      c. pole      d. pale
16. Only two little children ..... after the serious accident. (البحيرة - كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. destroyed      b. damaged      c. survived      d. broke
17. Living in a ..... is better for people who prefer simple life.  
a. whole      b. monster      c. village      d. mystery
18. Weavers are good at ..... wool together to make cloth.  
a. solving      b. disappearing      c. adopting      d. twisting
19. I want to discuss the problem as a ....., not only a single part of it.  
a. whole      b. monster      c. village      d. mystery
20. The farmer keeps his tools in a ..... .  
a. labour      b. fireplace      c. cottage      d. condition
21. In general, doing ..... work needs a lot of effort.  
a. pale      b. manual      c. local      d. sick
22. In unit 12, I have learnt how to write a detailed book ..... expressing what I think of it.  
a. review      b. shape      c. title      d. sale
23. Artificial ..... will play a more important role in the future.  
a. Review      b. Machinery      c. Cloth      d. Intelligence
24. He didn't go to prison because his lawyer ..... that he was not guilty.  
a. refused      b. denied      c. proved      d. disproved
25. I'm really ..... . I can't tell you what to do.  
a. close      b. confused      c. abandoned      d. local
26. Doing manual ..... is usually tiring.  
a. labour      b. fireplace      c. cottage      d. condition
27. I last met Ahmed yesterday. I had met him five days ..... .  
a. ago      b. earlier      c. since      d. yet
28. He started his career as a journalist in a ..... newspaper.  
a. pale      b. manual      c. local      d. crazy
29. This poor man lives in miserable ..... .  
a. labours      b. fireplaces      c. machinery      d. conditions
30. All my cousins ..... in to help me prepare for my wedding.  
a. joined      b. lied      c. forgot      d. recommended

31. This factory has heavy .....  
 a. intelligence      b. machinery      c. cloth      d. review
32. He reported that his motorbike had been .....  
 a. shaped      b. shared      c. stolen      d. recommended
33. I ..... my daughter Sama because it was the name of one of my polite and intelligent students.  
 a. called      b. told      c. adopted      d. abandoned
34. Children with disabilities need ..... care.  
 a. pale      b. manual      c. local      d. special
35. In winter, most European families sit by the .....  
 a. labour      b. fireplace      c. cottage      d. condition
36. She used a clean piece of ..... to clean the table.  
 a. intelligence      b. machinery      c. cloth      d. review

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

<b>be</b>	engaged to	تم خطبتها / خطبتها	<b>live</b>	lonely lives	يعيشون في عزلة
	married to	يتزوج من	<b>look / be</b>	sad	يبدو حزينا
<b>do</b>	practice	يتمرّن	<b>solve</b>	a crime	يفك غموض الجريمة
				a mystery	يكشف غموض اللغز
<b>earn / make</b>	money	يكسب مال	<b>take</b>	care of	يرعى / يعتني بـ
<b>feel</b>	confused	يشعر بالحيرة	<b>tell</b>	a story	يحكي قصة
	sorry for	يشعر بالأسف / بالحنن على		an accident	يتعرض لحادث
<b>win</b>	first place	يفوز بالمركز الأول	<b>have</b>	an argument with	يتجادل مع - يحتد علي

### 2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
disappear	vanish يختفي
disappear	die out, die يموت - ينقرض
disappear	get lost, go missing يضيع
earlier	former, previous أسبق - قبل ذلك
look after	care for, nurse يرعى / يعتني بـ
mysterious	secret, confusing, hidden غامض
engaged	busy, unavailable مشغول
guilty	convicted مُذنب
mystery	secrecy, ambiguity, puzzle لغز - بئر غامض



## 3

## Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
disappear	يختفي appear, come out يظهر
disappear	يموت - ينقرض survive يبقى حياً
earlier	منذ - قبل ذلك later تالي / لاحق
famous	مشهور unknown, unpopular غير معروف / مغمور
guilty	مُذنب innocent, guiltless بريء
prove	يُثبت disprove يدحض
solve	يحل complicate يُعقّد

## 4

## Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

disappear	
<b>disappear(ed)(v)</b> يختفي	- I do not know why he has <b>disappeared</b> .
<b>disappearance(n)</b> اختفاء	- I do not know the cause of his <b>disappearance</b> .
guilty	
<b>guilt(n)</b> الذنب	- He has a feeling of <b>guilt</b> .
<b>guilty(adj)</b> مُذنب	- He feels <b>guilty</b> .
mystery	
<b>mystery(n)</b> لغز - سِر غامض	- The cause of the fire is still a <b>mystery</b> .
<b>mysterious(adj)</b> غامض - غير مفهوم	- The cause of the fire is still <b>mysterious</b> .
solve	
<b>solve(d)(v)</b> يحل	- I <b>solved</b> the problem.
<b>solution(n)</b> حل	- I found a <b>solution</b> to the problem.
weaver	
<b>weave(v)</b> ينسج	- He <b>weaves</b> woolen pullovers.
<b>weaver(n)</b> نساج / حائك	- He is a <b>weaver</b> .

## 5

## Expressions &amp; Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

angry with	غاضب من	guilty of	مُذنب بـ
(be) gone	يُضيع	have a special skill	لديه مهارة خاصة
(be) in a hurry	يكون مُتَعَجِّلاً	in the early years	في السنوات الأولى
compared to	مقارنة بـ	meet ... for lunch	يقابل ... على الغداء
disappear from under	يختفي من تحت	new to the village	جديد في / وافد جديد إلى القرية
do something bad	يفعل شيئاً سيئاً	sure about	متأكد من
feel sorry for/about	يشعر بالأسف علي	take care of	يرعي / يعتني بـ
friendly to	ودود مع		
work hard	يعمل بجد		

## 6 فعل + حرف جر Verb + Preposition

care about	يهتم بـ	manage to	يتمكن أن - ينجح في
come back	يعود	move to	ينتقل إلى
come from	يأتي من	offer to	يُغرض أن
come to	يأتي إلي - يصل إلى	plan to	يخطط أن
disappear from	يختفي من	remember about	يتذكر ما يخص
forget about	ينسي ما يخص	return to	يعود / يُعيد إلى
hide ... from	يُخفي ... من	stay with	يقيم مع
join in	يشترك - ينفق - ينجد	steal ... from	يسرق ... من
look after	يرعى - يعتني بـ		

## 7 لاحظ الفرق Clear the confusion

## hard / hardly

لاحظ الفرق بين (hard) و (hardly) :

## • hard (adj)

جاد - شاق - صعب - قاسي

- He is a **hard** worker. جاد
- Mum does a lot of **hard** work every day. شاق
- The driving test is **hard** to me. صعب

## • hard (adv)

بجد - بشدة

- He works **hard**. بجد
- The bully hit him **hard** on the head. بشدة

## • hardly (adv)

بالكاد - قلماً

- He **hardly** arrives on time. قلماً

لاحظ أن :

## • hardly... any / hardly at all = almost no

- He **hardly** does **any** work. = He **hardly** works **at all**.

## cloth / clothes

لاحظ الفرق بين (cloth) و (clothes) :

## • cloth

قمماش (كلمة لا تُعد وتُعامل معاملة المفرد)

- In the past, **cloth** was made manually by weavers.

## • clothes

ملابس (اسم جمع دائماً وليس له مفرد)

- Your **clothes** are fashionable, Ashraf.

## earlier / ago

لاحظ الفرق بين (ago) و (earlier) :

## • ago

منذ مدة معينة وحتى الآن

- I visited the pyramids **three months ago**. (قمت بالزيارة قبل الآن بثلاث شهور)

## • earlier

منذ مدة معينة وحتى وقت معين في الماضي

- Last Friday, I found the money I lost **three months earlier**.



## Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- ☆ **MRQ** : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "I tried to call my friend last night but the line was always unavailable." The word 'unavailable' gives a meaning similar to ..... . (القاهرة - النهضة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. engaged                      b. busy                      c. accessible  
 d. available                      e. affordable
2. "She died in mysterious circumstances." The antonyms of 'mysterious' are ..... . (الدقهلية - أجا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. confusing                      b. obvious                      c. ambitious  
 d. apparent                      e. hidden
3. He is so wise and can solve hard ..... . (القاهرة - البساتين ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. robots                      b. mysteries                      c. infections  
 d. problems                      e. inventions
4. "A nurse looks after sick people." The synonyms of 'looks after' are ..... . (الشرقية - الصالحية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. cares for                      b. finds about                      c. leaves  
 d. ignores                      e. nurses
5. "The Pyramids are famous all over the world." The antonyms of the word 'famous' are ..... . (الشرقية - الصالحية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. celebrated                      b. unpopular                      c. well-built  
 d. unknown                      e. well-known
6. I don't know why she ..... sad.  
 a. breaks                      b. makes                      c. tells                      d. looks                      e. is
7. He ..... a lot of money as a doctor.  
 a. makes                      b. does                      c. is                      d. earns                      e. solves
8. "Dinosaurs disappeared long ago." The word 'disappeared' here means ..... .  
 a. survived                      b. still exists                      c. no longer exist  
 d. died out                      e. exist
9. Mai ..... Omar. They are going to get married.  
 a. is engaged to                      b. is engaged with  
 c. has got engaged to                      d. got engaged with  
 e. was married to
10. Although she has done nothing wrong, she ..... .  
 a. feels happy                      b. feels guilty  
 c. has a sense of guilt                      d. is surely guilty  
 e. looks pleased

- ☆ **MCQ** : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't know the cause of his ..... . (الفيوم - طامية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. disappear                      b. disappeared                      c. disappears                      d. disappearance

2. She learned the art of ..... from her grandmother who was a clever craftswoman. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)  
a. weaving      b. moving      c. waving      d. leaving
3. He ..... the first place and got the gold medal.  
a. won      b. felt      c. did      d. found
4. She ..... an argument with her sister.  
a. had      b. weaved      c. took      d. did
5. The story you have ..... us is very interesting, grandma.  
a. broken      b. made      c. told      d. looked
6. "This evidence proves that he is innocent برئ." The verb 'proves' is the antonym of .....  
a. approves      b. improves      c. disproves      d. a & c
7. 'Innocent' is to '.....' as 'earlier' is to 'later'.  
a. late      b. early      c. kind      d. guilty
8. The crime is still ..... and the criminal is still unknown.  
a. mysterious      b. mystery      c. guilt      d. guilty
9. You should ..... care of your appearance.  
a. get      b. do      c. make      d. take
10. He is guilty ..... robbing السطو على the bank.  
a. of      b. to      c. from      d. with
11. She works .....  
a. hard      b. hardly      c. harden      d. b & c
12. She is a ..... worker.  
a. hard      b. hardly      c. harden      d. b & c

## PART III

## READING &amp; LISTENING

## 1 Reading Texts

## Silas Marner

Lesson 1 SB page 62

Silas Marner is a **weaver**<sup>(1)</sup> who lives in the **village**<sup>(2)</sup> of Raveloe in England. The other people in the village aren't very **friendly**<sup>(3)</sup> to Silas because he's new to the village and he lives **alone**<sup>(4)</sup>.



- (1) نسيج / حائك  
(2) قرية  
(3) ودود  
(4) بمفرده  
(5) قبل ذلك  
(6) يخطب  
(7) يرعى  
(8) يختفي

Fifteen years **earlier**<sup>(5)</sup>, Silas had been **engaged**<sup>(6)</sup> to be married to a girl called Sarah. One day, while Silas was **taking care of**<sup>(7)</sup> a friend who was sick, a bag of money **disappeared**<sup>(8)</sup> from under the friend's bed.



A man called William Dane finds the **empty**<sup>(9)</sup> bag and Silas's friends decide that he is **guilty**<sup>(10)</sup> of **stealing**<sup>(11)</sup> the money. Later, William marries Sarah **instead**<sup>(12)</sup>, and Silas decides to **move**<sup>(13)</sup> to the village of Raveloe.

The only thing he **cares about**<sup>(14)</sup> is his work as a weaver. **All**<sup>(15)</sup> Silas wants to do is work as hard as he can to **earn**<sup>(16)</sup> as much money as he can. The richest man in Raveloe, Squire Cass, has two sons: Dunstan and Godfrey. The two sons have their own problems which they **hide**<sup>(17)</sup> from their father and they always want to have more money.

One night, a bag of gold is stolen from Silas's house and the **whole**<sup>(18)</sup> village **joins in**<sup>(19)</sup> to look for it. The **local**<sup>(20)</sup> people feel sorry for him and are more friendly to him. Silas is angry and wants to solve the **mystery**<sup>(21)</sup>.

(9) فارغ

(10) مُذنب

(11) سرقة

(12) بدلاً من ذلك

(13) ينتقل

(14) يهتم بـ

(15) كل ما

(16) يكسب

(17) يخفي

(18) بالكامل - كل

(19) يتحد - يشارك

(20) محلي

(21) اللغز

## Lesson 2 SB page 64

One evening, Silas returns to his **cottage**<sup>(1)</sup> and finds a small girl sleeping near the fireplace. The girl is cold and hungry. Silas thinks something must have happened to her parents. They might have had an accident. He decides to **look after**<sup>(2)</sup> her. He **calls**<sup>(3)</sup> her Eppie. The other people in the village are surprised, but they think that Silas can't be a bad person because he wants to look after the girl. They also help him.

Silas is now happier. He **realises**<sup>(4)</sup> that his new daughter is more **important**<sup>(5)</sup> to him than gold. When Eppie is eighteen, Silas's gold is found and returned to him.

It was Dunstan who took the money all those years ago because he did not want to ask his father for money. Godfrey is sorry about what his brother did and thinks Silas must be **angry with**<sup>(6)</sup> him. He and his wife offer to look after Eppie. However, Eppie wants to stay with Silas.

Silas decides to return to his old village with Eppie. He wants to **prove**<sup>(7)</sup> that he wasn't guilty of stealing all those years earlier. When he arrives, he finds that everything has changed and he can't find anyone that he used to know. Silas feels that he can now **forget**<sup>(8)</sup> about this **unpleasant**<sup>(9)</sup> part of his history and he returns happily to Raveloe.

(1) كوخ

(2) يعتنى بـ / يربي

(3) يسمي

(4) يذرك

(5) هام

(6) غاضب من

(7) يثبت

(8) ينسى

(9) غير سار

## Weavers in the countryside

Lesson 1 WB page 120

The story of Silas Marner begins in the English **countryside**<sup>(1)</sup> in the early years of the nineteenth century. There were only a few weavers in the countryside, and they usually looked **pale**<sup>(2)</sup> and thin **compared to**<sup>(3)</sup> the people who worked in the fields. These people didn't **trust**<sup>(4)</sup> anyone who was clever and they didn't like anyone who had seen the world outside their small village. Weavers had a **special**<sup>(5)</sup> skill and they usually came from large towns, so they often lived **lonely**<sup>(6)</sup> lives.

(1) الريف

(2) شاحب

(3) مقارنة بـ

(4) يثق بـ

(5) خاص - مُفَيِّز

(6) وحيد - منعزل

## 2 Listening Text

Lesson 1 SB page 63

**Listen to a conversation about Silas Marner that could have happened between two people in Raveloe**

**Woman :** Hello **husband**<sup>(1)</sup> ! Come and sit down, and I will get you some water.

**Man :** Look ! It's eight o'clock at night and Silas Marner is still working !

**Woman :** He must have got another new **customer**<sup>(2)</sup>.

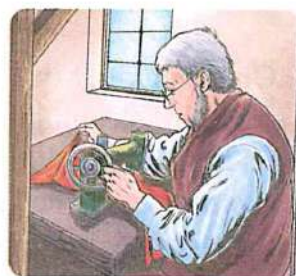
**Man :** Yes, that must be why he's working so late. I don't understand why he always works so much.

**Woman :** He might have lost a lot of money while he was living in the north.

**Man :** But all his customers are so happy with the things he makes. He can't have lost money. I've heard that he could stop working now if he wanted to - he's got bags and bags full of gold coins.

**Woman :** Really ? I just don't really like **weavers**<sup>(3)</sup>. I think **weaving**<sup>(4)</sup> is a very strange job to have. Why can't he work as a farmer or a fisherman instead of working with these crazy new machines ?

**Man :** I know what you mean. What is happening to the world today ? Soon there won't be any jobs for people like us who don't want anything to do with these machines.



(1) زوج

(2) زبون - عميل

(3) النساجون

(4) الحياكة - النسيج



## PART IV LANGUAGE

### 1 Present Deduction :

الاستنتاج فى المضارع :

١ للتعبير عن استنتاج قوى فى المضارع نستخدم :

**must** لابد / **can't** لا يمكن + **inf. ....** .

**ex.** - He has a villa and three cars. He **must be** rich. He **can't be** poor.

- تدل التعبيرات التالية على التأكد:

- I feel sure / certain أشعر بالتأكد

- certainly / surely / definitely من المؤكد - impossible مستحيل

**ex.** - It is impossible that he has left home. He **must be** at home. He **can't be** outdoors.

٢ تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن استنتاج ضعيف فى المضارع (عدم تأكد أو عدم معرفة أو عدم اعتقاد):

**may** من المحتمل / **might** من الممكن + **inf. ....** .

- I don't know where Sama is now. She **may be** at home. She **might be** out.

- تدل التعبيرات التالية على عدم التأكد:

- I'm not sure/ not certain لست متأكد

- perhaps / Maybe ربما

- It is probable / likely / possible من المحتمل

- I don't think / believe لا أظن - I don't know لست أدرى

- I'm not sure what is wrong with Ahmed. He **may / might be** ill.

٣ لعمل استنتاج عن حدث مستمر فى المضارع نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

**must / can't / may / might + be + (inf.+ing) .....** .

**ex.** - A: Why doesn't Amr answer the phone?

- B: I don't know. He **might be** having a shower.

### 2 Past Deduction :

الاستنتاج فى الماضى :

١ للتعبير عن استنتاج قوى فى الماضى نستخدم:

**must** لابد / **can't** لا يمكن + **have + p.p. ....** .

**ex.** - Abdu looked very happy after the exam. He **must have done** well.

- He was in London last Thursday. He **can't have attended** the meeting in Cairo that day.

٢ تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن استنتاج ضعيف فى الماضى (عدم تأكد أو عدم معرفة أو عدم اعتقاد):

**may** من المحتمل / **might** من الممكن + **have + p.p. ....** .

**ex.** - I have no idea why he was so sad. He **may / might have heard** some bad news.

٣ لعمل استنتاج عن حدث كان مستمرًا في الماضي نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

**must / can't / may / might + have been + inf.+ing .....**

- ex. - A: I phoned him three times this morning, but there was no answer.  
- B: I don't know why, but he **might have been sleeping**.

### Extra Notes

**should / shouldn't**

٤ تُستخدم (should / shouldn't + have + p.p.) للتعبير عن الانتقاد أو اللوم على موقف أو حدث وقع في الماضي :

- ex. - You **should have arrived** a bit earlier. The manager was very angry.  
- You **shouldn't have shouted** at your sister like that. She cried a lot.

## Exercises On Language

• Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The thief ..... have got into the house through the window. It was broken.  
(البحية - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. can't                      d. might not
- She ..... be your sister. She looks so different.  
(البحية - أبو النمرس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. must                      b. can                      c. might                      d. can't
- My father looks so tired. He ..... have worked very hard in the factory.  
(البحية - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. can't                      b. may                      c. must                      d. might
- Hatim is absent. He ..... be sick; I'm not sure.  
a. must                      b. may                      c. can't                      d. should
- They are looking under the table and all around. They ..... lost something.  
(الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. can't have                      b. should be                      c. must be                      d. must have
- No one knows where the tourist comes from; he ..... be Italian.  
(الشرقية - الأبراهيمية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. must                      b. shouldn't                      c. could                      d. can't
- Jane doesn't know any languages other than English; she ..... you when you spoke Chinese!  
a. might have understood                      b. can't understand  
c. must understand                      d. can't have understood
- She hasn't come yet. She ..... stuck in traffic.  
(الغربية - سمند ٢٠٢٤)  
a. must be                      b. might have been  
c. can't have been                      d. can't be



9. All the students were over the moon. The English exam ..... an easy one.

(البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)

- a. may be                      b. can't have been  
c. must have been          d. might be

10. He always does his work seriously. He ..... careless. (الأسبوت - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)

- a. must be      b. can't be      c. must have been      d. might be

11. Mr Adel hasn't come yet; he..... be stuck in traffic. I am not sure.

(أسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. must      b. should      c. might      d. mustn't

12. The players are all very happy. They ..... the match!

(الاسماعيلية - التل الكبير ٢٠٢٤)

- a. may win      b. must win      c. must have won      d. may have won

13. He was absent. He..... ill; I'm not sure.

- a. is                      b. must have been  
c. was                  d. might have been

14. He was absent. He..... ill; I visited him in hospital.

- a. is  
b. must have been  
c. was  
d. might have been

15. Farida ..... to the theatre, but she stayed at home to revise for the exam.

(الشرقية - بلبيس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. must have gone      b. should go  
c. could have gone      d. might go



أحرص علي إقتناء



## فِي اللُّغَةِ الْإِنْجِلِيزِيَّةِ

## امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق



## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

character(n)	شخصية	page-turner(n)	كتاب شيق / مثير
novel(n)	رواية	plot(n)	خبكة (رواية / مسرحية ...)
pace(n)	وتيرة الأحداث	theme(n)	الموضوع / الفكرة الرئيسية

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

abandon(ed) (v)	يَهْجُر - يترك	laugh(ed) (v)	يضحك
abandoned(adj)	مهجور	legend(n)	أسطورة
across(adv)	غیر	lie(d) (v)	يقع - يوجد
adopt(ed) (v)	يتبنى	lonely(adj)	وحيد - منعزل
archaeologist(n)	عالم آثار	monster(n)	وَحْش
around (adv. - prep.)	حول - حوالى	pharaoh(n)	فِرْعَوْن
bear(n)	دَب	pirate(n)	قُرْصَان
bury(ied) (v)	يدفن	puzzle(n)	لغز
close(adj)	قريب	recommend(ed) (v)	يُخَبِّذ - يوصي بـ
coast(n)	ساحل	shape(n)	شكل
crime(n)	جريمة	stone(n)	حصاة - حَجَر
deep(adj)	عميق	then(adv)	حينئذ - آنذاك
distant(adj)	بعيد	therapist(n)	معالج
divide(d) (v)	يُقَسِّم - ينقسم	traditional(adj)	تقليدي
equally(adv)	بالتساوي	unusual(adj)	غير مألوف
hole(n)	حفرة	warehouse(n)	مُخْزَن / مُسْتَوْدَع
lake(n)	بحيرة		

### 3 Definitions التعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>character(n)</b> شخصية	a person in a story
<b>pace(n)</b> وتيرة الأحداث	how quickly things seem to happen in a story
<b>page-turner(n)</b> كتاب شيق / مثير	a so exciting book that you want to read it quickly
<b>plot(n)</b> خبكة (رواية / مسرحية ...)	what happens in a story



<b>theme(n)</b> الموضوع / الفكرة الرئيسية	the main subject or idea in a book
<b>novel(n)</b> رواية	a long written story in which the characters and events أحداث are usually imaginary خيالي

## Exercises On Vocabulary

### • Understand

- ⚡ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Definitions

1. A/An ..... is a long written story in which the characters and events are usually imaginary.  
a. novel      b. poem      c. article      d. theme
2. A ..... is a person in a book, play, film etc.  
a. mystery      b. character      c. weaver      d. page-turner
3. .... is how quickly things seem to happen in a story.  
a. Plot      b. Theme      c. Pace      d. Solution
4. A ..... is a book that is so exciting that you want to read it quickly.  
a. mystery      b. character      c. weaver      d. page-turner
5. A ..... is the events that form the main story of a book, film, or play.  
a. plot      b. theme      c. solution      d. pace
6. A/An ..... is the main subject or idea in a book.  
a. novel      b. poem      c. article      d. theme

#### 2 Key Vocabulary

7. The main ..... of this film were played well by good actors.  
a. athletes      b. sailors      c. characters      d. managers
8. The novel lacks .....; it develops too slowly. (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. characters      b. themes      c. pace      d. plot
9. The novel's ..... is the conflict between love and duty. (القاهرة - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. page      b. buyer      c. owner      d. theme
10. You won't be able to put such a ..... down until you have finished it. (بورسعيد - بور فؤاد ٢٠٢٤)  
a. pacemaker      b. weaver      c. villager      d. page-turner
11. I didn't enjoy that novel because the ..... was very complicated.  
a. poet      b. publisher      c. plot      d. poem

#### 3 Important Vocabulary

12. I ..... a recent photo with my application form . (أسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. detached      b. separated      c. touched      d. attached

13. There are some big bones in the ..... of this fish. It is a big fish. (الجزيرة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. house      b. home      c. skeleton      d. skin
14. A speech ..... specializes in the treatment of speech disorders. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)  
a. therapist      b. anthropologist      c. paleontologist      d. pharmacologist
15. Which hotel do you .....? (الغربية - شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. speak      b. recommend      c. comment      d. say
16. He didn't watch out for the ..... in the middle. (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٤)  
a. hall      b. hill      c. hell      d. hole
17. Some ..... attacked the ship and stole a treasure from it. (البحيرة - الدلجات ٢٠٢٣)  
a. pilots      b. pirates      c. pioneers      d. parents
18. An honest manager should deal with his employees ..... . (القاهرة - المرح ٢٠٢٣)  
a. locally      b. particularly      c. equally      d. orally
19. I ..... that you do this job because I trust you.  
a. solve      b. disappear      c. recommend      d. prove
20. He ..... his village and moved to Alexandria.  
a. adopted      b. abandoned      c. hid      d. called
21. You can store the amount of goods you need at this ..... .  
a. workhouse      b. farmhouse      c. warehouse      d. fashion house
22. This is an ancient ..... that has never happened.  
a. reality      b. truth      c. fact      d. legend
23. Some Indians do not ..... the dead. They burn them instead.  
a. pace      b. engage      c. earn      d. bury
24. What you say is a/an ..... . I really find it difficult to understand.  
a. event      b. community      c. puzzle      d. shape
25. I thought he lived ..... to his family, but actually he moved to a faraway town.  
a. far      b. remote      c. close      d. distant
26. She lives in a ..... village. It takes long hours to reach it.  
a. traditional      b. guilty      c. distant      d. lonely
27. I apologise for not answering your call. I was taking a shower ..... .  
a. now      b. currently      c. then      d. yet
28. The person who killed this child is a ....., not a human.  
a. whole      b. monster      c. village      d. mystery
29. The manager liked my suggestion, so he ..... it.  
a. adopted      b. cheered      c. divided      d. laughed
30. An apple is round in ..... .  
a. community      b. event      c. puzzle      d. shape



## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

<b>break</b>	a rule / law	يخالف اللوائح / القانون	<b>make</b>	notes	يُدوّن ملاحظات
<b>find</b>	happiness	يجد السعادة	<b>take</b>	photos of	يلتقط صور لـ
<b>go</b>	wrong	يُخطئ - يتعطل		place	يحدث

### 2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
abandoned	مهجور
close	قريب
ensure	يضمن
then	حينئذ - آنذاك
	deserted
	near, neighbouring, coming
	make sure, make certain, guarantee
	at that (time, point, moment), on that occasion

### 3 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

abandon	
<b>abandon(ed)(v)</b>	يهجر - يترك
- They have <b>abandoned</b> their family house.	
<b>abandoned(adj)</b>	مهجور - متروك
- Their family house is <b>abandoned</b> .	
village	
<b>village(n)</b>	قرية
- I come from a small <b>village</b> .	
<b>villager(n)</b>	قروي
- I am a <b>villager</b> .	

### 4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as long as	في نفس طول - طالما	it is beautiful to read	من الجميل قراءتها
BCE = Before Common Era		keep ... for themselves	يحتفظون بـ ... لأنفسهم
be gone	قبل الميلاد	live on a farm	يعيش في مزرعة
find an answer to	يضيع - يتوه	nobody knows	لا أحد يعلم
full of surprises	يجد حلًا لـ	rather than	بدلاً من
good at his job	مليء بالمفاجآت	share it equally	يتقاسمونه بالتساوي
in answer to	يُجيد عمله	work better as	يعمل بشكل أفضل كـ
	لحل - حُكِّل لـ - ردًا على		

### 5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree to	يوافق على / أن	grow up	يكبر - يتربّع
ask for	يطلب من	know about	يعرف عن
belong to	ينتمي إلى - يخص	look like	يُشبهه - يبدو مثل
bring ... back	يُعيد	recommend ... to	يوصي بـ / يُرشح ... لـ

drive across	يقود عبر	seem to	يبدو أن
feel like	يشعر وكأنه - يرغب أن	take ... to	يأخذ ... إلى
go back	يعود - يرجع	try to	يحاول أن

## 6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

### alone / lonely

لاحظ الفرق بين (alone) و (lonely) :

- تُستخدم (alone) كظرف (adv) بمعنى (بمفرده / دون مساعدة أو مشاركة من أحد)  
- She did the housework **alone**.
- تُستخدم (alone) كصفة (adj) بمعنى (وحيد / ليس معه أحد) ولا تأتي قبل الموصوف  
- She was **alone** when the thieves attacked her.
- تُستخدم (lonely) كصفة (adj) بمعنى (مُنْعَزَل / شاعر بالوحدة) ولا تُستخدم كظرف  
- She was a **lonely** woman with no one to look after her.  
- They live in a **lonely** farmhouse.

## Exercises On Vocabulary Study

- ☆ **MRQ** : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. He is in prison because he has broken ..... .  
a. a rule                      b. research                      c. a sport  
d. a story                      e. the law
2. When something is distant, it is ..... .  
a. close                      b. nearby                      c. distance  
d. faraway                      e. a long distance away
3. A book which you like very much to read is ..... .  
a. a page-turner                      b. interesting                      c. interested  
d. excited                      e. boring
4. "I will do this as long as you want me to do it." 'As long as' here can be replaced by ..... .  
a. if                      b. when                      c. unless  
d. if not                      e. without

- ☆ **MCQ** : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She was sad in the party, she felt ..... . (الجيزة - بولاق الدكرور ٢٠٢٣)  
a. once                      b. alone                      c. lonely                      d. one
2. Finally, she got married and ..... happiness in her new life.  
a. won                      b. broke                      c. done                      d. found
3. The photo you have ..... is great.  
a. broken                      b. solved                      c. taken                      d. done



4. While he was talking, I ..... some notes.  
a. broke                      b. made                      c. told                      d. looked
5. Something ..... wrong and the car stopped.  
a. went                      b. made                      c. took                      d. did
6. "He abandoned his family." Which of the following is a synonym of the verb 'abandoned'?  
a. joined                      b. deserted                      c. vanished                      d. survived
7. We all agree that most ..... are simple and kind.  
a. weave                      b. weavers                      c. villages                      d. villagers
8. People no longer live in that ..... area.  
a. confuse                      b. confused                      c. abandon                      d. abandoned
9. I agree ..... what you have said.  
a. at                      b. to                      c. by                      d. from
10. In answer ..... your question, Salah deserves the 'Man of the Match' award.  
a. of                      b. with                      c. to                      d. about
11. My grandfather lives .....  
a. a lone                      b. lone                      c. lonely                      d. alone
12. My grandfather has a ..... life.  
a. a lone                      b. lone                      c. lonely                      d. alone

## PART III

## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

Lesson 3 SB page 66

### Reviews of Silas Marner Which reader liked the book more?

#### 1. Ismail

I had to read Silas Marner when I was at school and I didn't enjoy it very much **then**<sup>(1)</sup>. However, I've just finished reading it again and I liked it a lot more.

It's a long book, although it isn't as long as Eliot's other books. The **pace**<sup>(2)</sup> was quite fast and the **plot**<sup>(3)</sup> is full of surprises. I couldn't stop reading because I really wanted to know what was going to happen to these **wonderful**<sup>(4)</sup> characters. I would **recommend**<sup>(5)</sup> this book to anyone who enjoys **mystery**<sup>(6)</sup> stories.

#### 2. Nadia

This is a very **interesting**<sup>(7)</sup> story of a sad and **lonely**<sup>(8)</sup> man who finds **happiness**<sup>(9)</sup> when he **adopts**<sup>(10)</sup> a girl.

- |                       |
|-----------------------|
| (1) حينئذ - آنذاك     |
| (2) وتيرة الأحداث     |
| (3) حبكة              |
| (4) رانغ              |
| (5) يُخبِّد - يوصي بـ |
| (6) لغز - بسر غامض    |
| (7) شيق               |
| (8) وحيد - مُنعزل     |
| (9) السعادة           |
| (10) يتبنى            |

It isn't a **page-turner**<sup>(11)</sup>, but I liked the way Eliot used the **theme**<sup>(12)</sup> of **community**<sup>(13)</sup>. She shows us how some people, like Silas, can **feel like**<sup>(14)</sup> they don't **belong to**<sup>(15)</sup> their community but **events**<sup>(16)</sup> can bring them back into it. However, I think the novel is too long. The story of Silas Marner might have worked better as a short story **rather than**<sup>(17)</sup> a novel.

- (11) كتاب شيق - مثير  
(12) موضوع  
(13) المجتمع  
(14) يشعر وكأنه  
(15) ينتمي إلى  
(16) أحداث  
(17) بدلاً من

## What happened to the gold?

Lesson 4 SB page 67

Last week, three people, John, Jake and Jane, found gold in an **abandoned**<sup>(1)</sup> **warehouse**<sup>(2)</sup>. They agreed to **share**<sup>(3)</sup> it **equally**<sup>(4)</sup>. Jane found some boxes and put all the gold in one. John **checked**<sup>(5)</sup> to see if anyone else was **close**<sup>(6)</sup>. John and Jake took it to a house to divide it. Jane went to **ensure**<sup>(7)</sup> they had bags for the gold. When she arrived, she opened the box, but it was full of **stones**<sup>(8)</sup> and all the gold was gone. What happened to the gold?



- (1) مهجور  
(2) مخزن / مستودع  
(3) يشارك - يتقاسم  
(4) بالتساوي  
(5) يتحقق - يفحص  
(6) قريب  
(7) يضمن  
(8) حصى - أحجار

## Famous mysteries

Lesson 4 WB page 123

### 1. Cleopatra

Cleopatra VII died in around 30 **BCE**<sup>(1)</sup>. The famous writer, Plutarch, described the beautiful place where she was **buried**<sup>(2)</sup>. However, although **archaeologists**<sup>(3)</sup> have found much older **pharaohs**<sup>(4)</sup>, nobody knows where Cleopatra **lies**<sup>(5)</sup> today.



- (1) قبل الميلاد  
(2) يدفن  
(3) عالم آثار  
(4) المراجعة  
(5) يقع - يوجد  
(6) بساحل  
(7) قبرصان

In 2010, a famous archaeologist called Zahi Hawass found many things from Cleopatra's time at Taposiris Magna, near Alexandria, but he did not find Cleopatra. What might have happened to her?

### 2. Oak Island

Oak Island is on the east **coast**<sup>(6)</sup> of Canada. People believe that a **pirate**<sup>(7)</sup> called Captain William Kidd stole some treasure and buried it on the island in the seventeenth century.

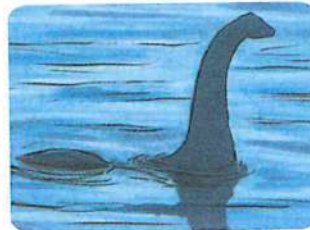




He wanted to **go back**<sup>(8)</sup> to the island to get his treasure, but he never returned. Since that time, hundreds of people have **tried to**<sup>(9)</sup> find the treasure, **without**<sup>(10)</sup> success. What might have happened to it?

### 3. Loch Ness

Loch Ness is a very **deep**<sup>(11)</sup> **lake**<sup>(12)</sup> in the north of Scotland. Since the seventh century, people have seen a large, **strange**<sup>(13)</sup> animal that lives in the deep water of the lake. They call it the Loch Ness **Monster**<sup>(14)</sup>.



Some people have even taken photos of a **distant**<sup>(15)</sup> **shape**<sup>(16)</sup> that could be the monster. However, scientists have studied the lake and they have not found anything **unusual**<sup>(17)</sup>. But people still believe that something lives in the lake. Might it be hiding **somewhere**<sup>(18)</sup>?

- (8) يعود - يرجع
- (9) يحاول أن
- (10) بدون
- (11) عميق
- (12) بحيرة
- (13) غريب
- (14) وحش
- (15) بعيد
- (16) شكل
- (17) غير مألوف
- (18) مكان ما

## 2. Listening Text

### Books' Reviews

Lesson 3 WB page 122

**Boy :** This book is about people living on a farm near a small village in the **mountains**<sup>(1)</sup>. The theme is how life in a village is changing in the **modern**<sup>(2)</sup> world. The pace is very slow and it is quite sad because many **traditional**<sup>(3)</sup> **parts**<sup>(4)</sup> of their life will never be the same again. But it is beautiful to read and I enjoyed it.

**Girl :** This book is very **funny**<sup>(5)</sup>! It is about a family who drive **across**<sup>(6)</sup> **the country**<sup>(7)</sup> for a holiday. They have to return their car to the airport before the end of the day. The plot is full of things that **go wrong**<sup>(8)</sup>! The car is stopped by a **bear**<sup>(9)</sup>, and they meet a lot of **strange**<sup>(10)</sup> people. My **favourite**<sup>(11)</sup> character is a **police officer**<sup>(12)</sup> who is not very good at his job! I **laughed**<sup>(13)</sup> a lot and would recommend this book.

- (1) جبال
- (2) حديث - معاصر
- (3) تقليدي
- (4) أجزاء
- (5) مضحك
- (6) غير
- (7) الريف
- (8) تسير الأمور
- (9) بشكل خاطئ
- (10) دُب
- (11) غريب
- (12) مفضل
- (13) ضابط شرطة
- (14) يضحك

## PART IV LANGUAGE

راجع القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

تنويه

## Exercises On Language

● Apply

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

## 1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Ali ..... injured. There is blood on his face.  
a. must be                      b. must have                      c. can't have been                      d. a & b
2. Ali ..... injured. There was blood on his face.  
a. must be                      b. must have been  
c. can't have been                      d. a & b
3. Hana is in a very difficult situation. It ..... easy for her.  
a. might have been                      b. might be  
c. can't have been                      d. can't be
4. Hana was in a very difficult situation. It ..... easy for her.  
a. might have been                      b. might be                      c. can't have been                      d. can't be
5. You've been travelling all day. You ..... be very tired.  
a. can't                      b. may                      c. might                      d. must
6. You've been travelling all day. You ..... be relaxed.  
a. can't                      b. may                      c. might                      d. mustn't
7. He ..... be French, but I am not sure.  
a. must                      b. might                      c. can't                      d. will
8. The criminal must have ..... by the police.  
a. arrested                      b. be arrested  
c. been arrested                      d. being arrested
9. Mona has a fever. She ..... ill.  
a. may be                      b. can't be                      c. should be                      d. must be
10. They are all wearing coats, so it ..... cold when they took the photograph.  
a. must be                      b. can be                      c. must have been                      d. can't have been
11. He looks very sad. He ..... the race.  
a. must have won                      b. can't have won  
c. might win                      d. must win
12. You look sleepy. You ..... have had enough sleep last night.  
a. might                      b. must                      c. can't                      d. may
13. I've lost one of my keys. I ..... have dropped them somewhere.  
a. can't                      b. must                      c. may                      d. might
14. They haven't lived here for long. They ..... know all their neighbours well.  
a. must                      b. may                      c. can't                      d. might



15. Sama rang but I didn't hear the phone. It ..... have been silent.  
 a. must                      b. can't                      c. should                      d. may not
16. That restaurant ..... be very good. It's always full of people.  
 a. must                      b. may                      c. can't                      d. might

## 2 Special cases

17. She isn't here. She ..... home to study for tomorrow's test.  
 a. can't have gone    b. must have gone    c. can't go                      d. must go
18. A: Do you know if he is OK after the accident?  
 B: I'm not sure, but he ..... his arm.  
 a. might break                      b. can't have broken  
 c. may have broken                      d. must have broken
19. A: Where is Ahmed, mum?  
 B: He ..... at school. He comes back at two, so he will be back in ten minutes.  
 a. may be                      b. must be                      c. can't be                      d. is
20. Be careful of that large dog. It ..... you.  
 a. might bite                      b. can't bite                      c. must bite                      d. should bite
21. I explained it, but she ..... have understood. My French is very bad.  
 a. can't                      b. can                      c. must                      d. shouldn't
22. I didn't know you were going to Rodayna's wedding yesterday. You ..... have told me!  
 a. must                      b. should                      c. might                      d. shouldn't
23. I'm glad you survived. You risked your life and ..... killed.  
 a. may have                      b. must have been    c. could have been    d. might have
24. She ..... have misunderstood my directions. Why else is she late?  
 a. must                      b. can't                      c. should                      d. could
25. I ..... have written down the number incorrectly. I've just called a hospital not the restaurant.  
 a. might                      b. may                      c. must                      d. can't
26. They ..... got there already. They only left ten minutes ago.  
 a. can't                      b. must                      c. must have                      d. can't have
27. A: Ali must have left hospital.  
 B: He ..... . My uncle is visiting him there now.  
 a. did                      b. does                      c. didn't                      d. doesn't
28. They ..... have got in through the window. It's on the 21<sup>st</sup> floor!  
 a. might                      b. can                      c. can't                      d. must
29. This ..... our train. It is too early.  
 a. must have been    b. can't have been    c. must be                      d. can't be

## 3 Check your understanding

30. "It is not possible that he caught the bus." What does this mean?  
a. He might catch the bus. b. He might not catch the bus.  
c. He can't have caught the bus. d. He might not have caught the bus.
31. "It was impossible that he didn't hear the news." This means .....  
a. he can't hear the news b. he can't have heard the news  
c. he must hear the news d. he must have heard the news
32. It took her a long time to solve the problem. I think .....  
a. it might be difficult for her b. it must be difficult for her  
c. it must have been difficult for her d. it must have been easy for her
33. "That house was almost certainly built a few years ago." This means .....  
a. it must build a few years ago  
b. it must have built a few years ago  
c. it must have been built a few years ago  
d. it must be built a few years ago
34. "I'm quite sure he didn't rob the bank." What does this mean?  
a. He needn't have robbed the bank. b. He mustn't have robbed the bank.  
c. He can't rob the bank. d. He can't have robbed the bank.

أحرص علي إقتناء

EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق







للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة **تنويه**

PART I

# GRAMMATICAL HINTS

## look angrily / look angry

١ لاحظ الفرق بين (look angrily) و (look angry) :

- She **looked angry** after the meeting. كانت تبدو غاضبة
- She **looked angrily** at me. كانت تنظر بغضب

## as long as

٢ لاحظ الفرق في استخدام (as long as) :

- **as long as** في نفس طول  
- It's a long book, although it isn't **as long as** Mahfouz's other books.
- **as long as** طالما - ما دام  
- I will work with you **as long as** you pay me enough money.

## what

٣ لاحظ عبارات الوصل التي تبدأ بـ (what) :

- **what = the thing that / the things that**  
يمكن أن تستخدم (what) كضمير وصل وهي لا تعود على اسم محدد وتكون عبارة الوصل كلها إما فاعل أو مفعول أو مجرور:  
- **What you do** will affect your position. (فاعل)  
- I didn't understand **what he said**. (مفعول)  
- She listened to **what the teacher said**. (مجرور)

## all

٤ لاحظ استخدام (all) كضمير بمعنى (كل / كل شيء / كل ما) :

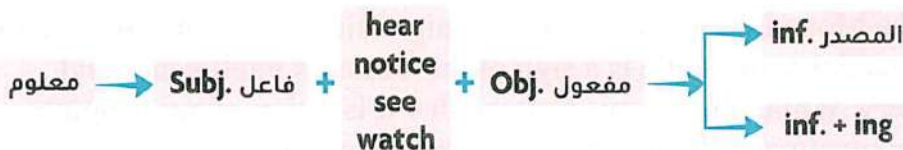
- **All** he wants to do **is** to earn enough money.

## whole

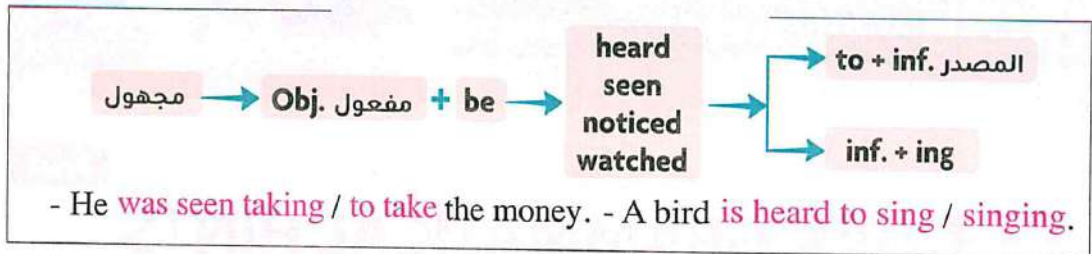
٥ لاحظ استخدام (whole) كصفة بمعنى (كله / بأكمله) :

- The **whole** trip was exciting.
- I spent the **whole** day working in the garden.

٦ لاحظ أفعال الإدراك التالية وطريقة بنائها للمجهول :



- I **saw** him **take / taking** the money.
- I **hear** a bird **sing / singing**.



### Exercises On Language Hints

☛ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- My brother looked ..... after the match.  
a. anger                      b. angry                      c. angrily                      d. b & c
- The coach looked ..... at the careless goalkeeper.  
a. anger                      b. angry                      c. angrily                      d. b & c
- She agreed to ..... I had said.  
a. where                      b. when                      c. who                      d. what
- ..... is well that ends well.  
a. All                      b. Both                      c. All of                      d. Both of
- We spent the ..... day on the beach.  
a. all                      b. whole                      c. each                      d. every
- I saw Omar ..... the street.  
a. cross                      b. crossing                      c. to cross                      d. a & b
- Omar was seen ..... the street.  
a. cross                      b. to crossing                      c. to cross                      d. a & b

## PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1 Reading

☛ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(الإسكندرية - شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣)

The Mona Lisa is a world-famous piece by Leonardo da Vinci, the great Italian painter, painted sometime between 1503 and 1519. It is considered to be one of the greatest works of art ever created. The Mona Lisa is a portrait of a woman believed to be Lisa Giocondo, the wife of Francesco del Giocondo.

The Mona Lisa is famous for its enigmatic غامضة smile. Some critics have said that the smile is a sign of the woman's intelligence and mystery. While others have claimed that it is a sign of her happiness and contentment. Whatever the true meaning of the smile may be, it has captivated audiences from all over the world for centuries.



The Mona Lisa is also notable for its unique style and technique. Leonardo da Vinci used a method known as 'sfumato' to create the paintings soft, blurred edges and subtle shading.

This technique gives the Mona Lisa its unique, lifelike appearance. The Mona Lisa is currently on display at the Louvre Museum in Paris, France. It is one of the museum's most popular attractions, with millions of visitors coming to see it each year.

Despite its fame and popularity, the Mona Lisa remains a mystery and continues to be a source of awe and fascination.

- The Mona Lisa is a portrait of a .....  
a. child                      b. boy                      c. woman                      d. man
- The Mona Lisa has a/an ..... smile  
a. funny                      b. mysterious                      c. stupid                      d. gloomy
- ..... people come to visit the Louvre Museum in Paris yearly.  
a. Some                      b. Little                      c. Few                      d. A lot of
- Leonardo da Vinci used a technique that gives the Mona Lisa its unique, ..... appearance.  
a. natural                      b. bad                      c. negative                      d. fearful
- The pronoun 'its' in the last paragraph refers to the .....  
a. art                      b. museum                      c. visitor                      d. painting
- People give ..... explanations for the smile of the Mona Lisa.  
a. the same                      b. different                      c. exact                      d. identical
- The Mona Lisa was painted during the ..... century.  
a. fourteenth                      b. fifteenth                      c. sixteenth                      d. twentieth

## 2 كتابة العروض النقدية Review Writing

كيف تكتب عرض نقدي (Review) لرواية / قصة / فيلم / مسرحية؟

١ ابدأ بفقرة قصيرة عن القصة / الرواية / الفيلم / المسرحية ككل، ويمكنك الاستعانة بالأفكار التالية:

- I am going to write about a book / novel / story / film / play called .....
- It was written / starred / directed by .....

٢ اكتب فقرتين منفصلتين إحداهما عمّا أعجبك والأخرى عمّا لم يُعجبك، وفي هاتين الفقرتين يمكن مناقشة العناصر الرئيسية وهي:

• **Setting** مكان وزمان الأحداث

- The incidents of this novel / story / film / play take place in .....

• **Characters** الشخصيات

- The main character is ..... - The other characters are .....

• **Plot** الحبكة

- The events start when ..... - The climax ذروة الأحداث is when .....

## • Theme

الموضوع

- The theme of the book / novel / story / film / play is about .....

## • Pace

وتيرة الأحداث

- The pace of events in the novel / story / film / play is (fast / slow) .....

## • Style

الأسلوب

- The style of the writer is (simple / complicated ...etc.)

٣ اكتب فقرة ختامية عن رأيك وهل توصي (بهذه) الرواية / القصة / المسرحية / الفيلم أم لا:

- Finally, I think this book / novel / story / film / play is .....

- I really recommend / don't recommend .....

## 3 Writing

☆ Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

(القاهرة - عين شمس ٢٠٢٤)

*"Your duty and role towards your parents in life"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 4 الترجمة Translation

● A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Reading literature introduces us to other people's experiences and cultures very different from our own, which helps us to become more tolerant towards others.

(الاسكندرية - وسط الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

a. إن قراءة الأدب تعرض لنا تجارب الشعوب الأخرى وثقافتهم التي تتناغم مع ثقافتنا، مما يجعلنا أكثر تسامحاً مع الآخرين.

b. إن قراءة الأدب تعرض لنا تجارب الشعوب الأخرى وحضاراتهم التي تتوافق مع حضارتنا، مما يجعلنا أكثر تسامحاً مع الآخرين.

c. إن قراءة الأدب تعرض لنا تجارب الناس الأخرى وثقافتهم التي تختلف عن ثقافتنا، مما يجعلنا أكثر قرباً من الآخرين.

d. إن قراءة الأدب تعرض لنا تجارب الشعوب الأخرى وثقافتهم التي تختلف كثيراً عن ثقافتنا، مما يجعلنا أكثر تسامحاً مع الآخرين.

2. Practising activities at school is very important, so teachers should encourage their students to take part in various activities.

(بني سويف - الواسطي ٢٠٢٤)

a. تُعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمراً مهماً إلى حد ما، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة في الأنشطة المختلفة.

b. تُعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمراً مهماً للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة في الأنشطة المختلفة.



- c. تُعتَبَر ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمراً مهماً للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تدعيم طلابهم على المشاركة في بعض الأنشطة.
- d. تُعتَبَر ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمراً مُسلياً للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة في الأنشطة المختلفة.

2. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

ا. لا أحد في هذه الحياة يمكن أن يحل محل الأب والأم، فهما الوحيدان اللذان يتمنيان لك أن تصبح أفضل منهما في كل شيء.

(الاسكندرية - العجمي ٢٠٢٤)

- No one in this life can replace mother and father. They are the only ones who would like you to be better at everything than they are.
- Everyone in this life can change mother and father. They are the only ones who would like you to be better at everything than they are.
- Everyone in this life can replace mother and father. They are the only ones who would like you to be better at everything than they are.
- No one in this life can replace sister and the brother. They are the only ones who would like you to be better at everything than they are.

ف. يُعتَبَر الجهل هو العدو الأول للإنسان والذي يعوق التنمية والتقدم في شتي المجالات، لذا لا بد من محاربته عن طريق محو الأمية ونشر الوعي القومي.

(الاسماعيلية - التل الكبير ٢٠٢٤)

- Ignorance is considered the first enemy of man that helps development and progress in various fields, so it must be fought through literacy and spreading national awareness.
- Ignorance is considered the first enemy of man which hinders development and progress in various fields, so it must be fought through literacy and spreading national awareness.
- Ignorance is considered the first enemy of man which hinders development and progress in various fields, so it must be fought through illiteracy and spreading national awareness.
- Ignorance is considered the first enemy of man which hinders development and progress in various fields, so it mustn't be fought through literacy and spreading national awareness.

PART III

JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

للفائقين فقط

guilty

• **guilt (at / about / over) (n)**

الجزى - العار

- He had a feeling of **guilt** about not looking after his family.

• **guilt (n)**

ذنب / خطيئة

- He felt sorry for his **guilt**.

• **guilty (of) (adj)**

مذنب (بـ)

- He was **guilty** of stealing.

## لاحظ الفرق بين:

• **guilty (about/for/at)**

شاعر بالجزي أو العار مما فعله

- I felt **guilty about** not lending him the money he wanted.

• **guilty (of)**

مُذنب (ب)

- They were **guilty of** robbing the bank.

• **guilty-ridden (adj)**

يتملكه الشعور بالذنب

- I don't know why you are **guilty-ridden**. You are not responsible for what happened.

## mystery

• **mystery = detective story (n)**

رواية بوليسية / فيلم بوليسي

- I like reading **mysteries**.

• **mystery (n)**

لُغز / سر غامض / مُغضلة

- The crime is still a **mystery**. The police haven't solved it.

لاحظ المتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- be / remain a mystery - solve a mystery

• **mystery (adj)**

غير مفهوم / غامض (لاحظ أن هذه الصفة تُستخدم قبل الاسم فقط)

- I don't trust that man who looks **mystery**. (✗)

- I don't trust that **mystery** man. (✓)

• **mysterious (adj)**

غير مفهوم / غامض

- I don't trust that man who looks **mysterious**. (✓)

- I don't trust that **mysterious** man. (✓)

## pace

• **pace (n)**

سُرعة السير

- The soldiers' **pace** was fast.

• **pace (n)**

خطوة

- Walk ten **paces** and turn right.

• **pace (n)**

سُرعة - وتيرة (الأحداث)

- The **pace** of change in modern world is getting faster.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- at your own pace - the pace of change

- the pace of development / reform

• **pacemaker (n)**

منظم ضربات القلب

- The doctor said my grandfather needed a **pacemaker**.

## plot

• **plot (n)**

حبكة الرواية أو الفيلم (الأحداث)

- The **plot** of the film was exciting.

• **plot (n)**

قطعة أرض (مساحة صغيرة)

- I have a small vegetable **plot**.



• **plot (n)**

مدفن العائلة

- My grandfather bought this **plot** a short time before his death.

• **plot (against) (n)**

مؤامرة / مكيدة (ضد)

- There was a **plot** against the company to make it lose a lot of money.

• **plot (against / to) (v)**

يتآمر (ضد)

- He **plotted** to steal the safe خزانة of the supermarket.

- They **plotted** against their manager.

**weave**

• **weave - wove - woven (v)**

ينسج

- In our family, only my mother can **weave**.

• **weave - wove - woven (v)**

يُدَبِّر - يحبك (رواية / قصة...)

- Naguib Mahfouz **wove** the plot of this novel professionally.

• **weaver (n)**

نَسَّاج

- The job of **weavers** nearly disappeared because machines now do all the work.

**Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary**

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Your grandfather is buried here, in our .....  
a. legend      b. turner      c. plot      d. monster
2. The ..... of change in science and technology is very fast.  
a. weaver      b. guilt      c. mystery      d. pace
3. I like this story because the plot is cleverly- .....  
a. woven      b. abandoned      c. buried      d. earned
4. I can't trust a man who has ..... against his brother.  
a. supported      b. plotted      c. hid      d. ensured
5. Let children learn ..... their own pace.  
a. in      b. on      c. at      d. out

**Advanced Exercise on Language**

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He ..... be joking. It is impossible for him to run as fast as a horse.  
a. would      b. must      c. should      d. can't
2. She ..... been looking where she was walking. She walked straight into a wall.  
a. must have      b. can't      c. couldn't have      d. b & c
3. Your jeans ..... be costly. They're old-fashioned.  
a. can't      b. might      c. must      d. may
4. She is famous for her wit. She ..... be a fool.  
a. might      b. mustn't      c. must      d. can't
5. Why didn't you apply for the job? - You ..... have got it.  
a. must      b. could      c. can      d. couldn't

# Test on Unit 12

● Understand

● Apply

● Create

تنويه

التقييمات  
الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار إلكتروني

## 1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "My daughter got married in a distant village. So, I can't visit her very often." 'distant' means .....  
(الجيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٤)

- a. remote      b. near      c. very far  
d. nearby      e. close

2. "The Ministry of Education is trying to change the traditional ways of teaching." The antonyms of "traditional" are '.....' and '.....'.

- a. ancient      b. nontraditional      c. strange  
d. recognized      e. up-to-date

## 2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. It is difficult to keep up with the rapid ..... of change.

- a. pace      b. peace      c. piece      d. base

2. I'm sure the police will solve the ..... and arrest the criminal.

- a. riddle      b. mystery      c. myth      d. quiz

3. Ali was trying to phone his mother, but the line was .....

- a. engaged      b. invited      c. announced      d. lengthened  
(القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠٢٤)

4. My grandfather worked as a ..... in a cotton factory in El-Mahlla El-Kubra.  
(أسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. guilty      b. weaver      c. mystery      d. novelist

5. It was a very difficult maths problem, but we managed to ..... it.

- a. fill      b. mix      c. solve      d. win

6. The criminal was found ..... and he was sent to prison.

- a. loyal      b. honest      c. guilty      d. innocent

7. I have just seen Omar at school. He ..... be at home. (الجيزة - كرداسة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. must      b. can't      c. can      d. mustn't

8. They ..... lost their way yesterday. I am not sure. (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. must have      b. can't have      c. may have      d. will have

9. He looks very sad. He ..... failed the exam. (الغربية - شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤)

- a. must      b. can't      c. must have      d. can't have

10. Miss Amany is a good nurse, so she ..... be very caring.

- a. must      b. can't      c. mustn't      d. have to

11. It ..... easy for Yara to move to another place. She liked her village very much. (القاهرة - الجملية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. can be      b. must be      c. can't have been      d. must have been



12. I wonder what broke the vase. It ..... have been the cat for being out all day.

(الأنقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)

- a. might                      b. may                      c. can't                      d. must

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

Camping is an outdoor activity that involves spending time in nature, exploring its different aspects and doing a wide variety of activities. It's an opportunity to get away from the usual day routine and get involved in something new and exciting. Many people love camping because of the excitement as it involves several activities that include hiking, hunting, fishing, riding bicycles and climbing.

Camping is a cultural concept that brings people together and strengthens their relationship by taking part in certain activities with each other. In today's society, technology has separated people from nature and led to the loss of human interaction. Therefore, camping gives people an opportunity to get away from the technological distractions of the modern world and spend time in quiet environments.

Camping has several health benefits that include physical exercise, absorption of vitamin D from sunlight, relaxation, and reduced blood pressure. Camping is not expensive because it provides people with an opportunity to take vacations without spending a lot of money. They prepare their own meals and as a result they save money. Also, the activities they do such as swimming, reading and cycling don't cost much money. Always nature wins

1. The main idea of the passage is about .....  
a. changing the routine of life and enjoying camping  
b. taking care of plants and animals  
c. cleaning the outside area of our houses  
d. spending most our time in work
2. When you go camping, you can learn several skills as being .....  
a. sociable and cooperative                      b. alone and depressive  
c. not helpful and lazy                      d. more nervous and sad
3. Camping is a popular ..... activity, which mean you spend most of the time in nature.  
a. indoor                      b. outdoor                      c. difficult                      d. boring
4. People should ..... to reduce the stress of life  
a. use more technology                      b. not get involved in any activities  
c. take rest and enjoy nature                      d. not sleep at home
5. Some people go camping because they have health problems as there are .....  
a. sunlight and fresh air                      b. polluted air and dryness  
c. bad weather                      d. bad environment



6. All activities that you can do when you go camping are .....  
 a. cheap and affordable                      b. very costly  
 c. not exciting and boring                      d. neither enjoyable nor useful
7. "Always nature wins". This means that being outdoor is .....  
 a. the best thing for our life and health      b. not suitable or even exciting  
 c. bad for our life and health                      d. not interesting but suitable

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:**

Students may learn from competitions and team work what cannot be taught inside their classrooms.

(أسبوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)

- a. ربما يتعلم الطلاب من المسابقات والعمل الجماعي ما لا يمكن تَعَلُّمه خارج الفصول الدراسية.  
 b. لقد تعلم الطلاب من المسابقات والعمل الجماعي ما لا يمكن تَعَلُّمه داخل الفصول الدراسية.  
 c. ربما يتعلم الطلاب من المسابقات والعمل الجماعي ما لا يمكن تَعَلُّمه داخل الفصول الدراسية.  
 d. ربما يتعلم الطلاب من المسابقات والعمل الجماعي ما يمكن تَعَلُّمه داخل الفصول الدراسية.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

من يترى من الشباب على الأخلاق الحميدة من الصعب أن يتأثر بما يسمعه أو يراه من سلوكيات سيئة مهما كانت طبيعة هذه المؤثرات.

(البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)

- a. It's difficult for the youth who have brought up on good morals to be affected by the bad behaviours they hear or see, whenever the nature of these effects is.  
 b. It's difficult for the youth who are raised at good morals to be effected by the bad behaviours they hear or see, however the nature of these influences is.  
 c. It's difficult for the youth who have been brought up on good morals to be affected by the bad behaviours they hear or see, whatever the nature of these effects is.  
 d. It's difficult for the youth who has raised in good morals to be affected by the bad behaviours they hear or see, whatever the nature of these influences is.

5. **Answer the following questions:**

1. If you were Jim, how would you feel while staying with the pirates ?

.....

2. Why do you think Silver gave Jim a gun ?

(الغريبة - بسيون ٢٠٢٤)

.....

3. Were you surprised when Silver escaped from the boat ? Why ?

.....

6. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:**

*"Hard work"*

(الجيزة - الصف ٢٠٢٤)

.....  
 .....  
 .....



# Revision 4

Based on Units 10, 11 & 12

SB pages 72 : 77 WB pages 126 : 129

## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Listening Text

#### Listen to a conversation in a book shop

Lesson 2 SB page 73

**Man** : Good morning. I'd like to speak to the manager, please.

**Manager** : Good morning. I'm the manager. How can I help you, sir ?

**Man** : Well, I'd like to make a **complaint**<sup>(1)</sup>.

**Manager** : I'm sorry to hear that. What's the problem ?

**Man** : I came here last week. I wanted to buy a book for my brother. It was his birthday, you see.

**Manager** : OK.

**Man** : I asked your assistant if he knew an exciting book that I could buy. He explained that he knew lots of exciting books. He asked me if I liked books about the past or the present. I said I liked books about the present.

**Manager** : Right. Which book did he **suggest**<sup>(2)</sup> ?

**Man** : He told me to buy a book called Run Away Fast. So, I said I would buy it for my brother's birthday the following day.

**Manager** : Did your brother not like the book ?

**Man** : No, he didn't. He complained that the **pace**<sup>(3)</sup> was quite slow, the story was too long and the characters were terrible.

**Manager** : I **apologise**<sup>(4)</sup>, but the problem is, we have hundreds of books in the shop and everyone likes different ones. Do you know the name of the person who told you to buy Run Away Fast ?

**Man** : No, but it was a young man with glasses.



(1) شكوى

(2) يقترح

(3) سرعة الأحداث

(4) اعتذر

**Manager:** A young man ? Well, it can't have been Tarek because he was on holiday last week. It might have been Ahmed but he doesn't usually wear glasses. I think it must have been Hassan.

(5) منصف - معقول

(6) حبكة القصة

**Man:** Well, can I speak to Hassan ?

**Manager:** I'm afraid he's not here at the moment. But this is what we can do. I'll let you buy two books for the price of one. You can give them both to your brother. I'm sure that your brother will like one of them.

**Man:** OK, that sounds fair<sup>(5)</sup>.

**Manager:** This book is my favourite. It's called Look Now. The novel is not very long, the pace is quite fast and the plot<sup>(6)</sup> is full of surprises. And here is a book called "Summer Time". The characters are wonderful.

**Man:** Well, thanks. You've been very helpful. I'm sure my brother will like one of these books.

## 2 Reading Texts

### Women Writers

Lesson 1 SB page 72

Many of the world's best writers are women. People read Egyptian writers like Aisha Abd al-Rahman and Miral Al Tahawy in different languages all over the world. You might also know Agatha Christie, famous for her **mystery**<sup>(1)</sup> novels, and Lucy Maud Montgomery, who wrote the **adventure**<sup>(2)</sup> story Anne of Green Gables.



(1) لغز - سر غامض

(2) مغامرة

(3) تَحْدِي

(4) ينشر

(5) مستحيل

(6) يتنافس

However, it has often been a **challenge**<sup>(3)</sup> for women to have their books **published**<sup>(4)</sup>. People thought that only men could write good stories. Of course, women have always written very good stories, but in the past, it was almost **impossible**<sup>(5)</sup> for women to **compete**<sup>(6)</sup> with men.



In the past, parents would put **pressure**<sup>(7)</sup> on women to get married. If they had a job, it would be something **practical**<sup>(8)</sup> like a teacher.

George Eliot, who wrote *Silas Marner*, was really a woman called Mary Ann Evans. She gave herself a man's name so that people would take her books **seriously**<sup>(9)</sup>.

Since that time, people have **campaigned**<sup>(10)</sup> for women and men writers to have **equal**<sup>(11)</sup> **opportunities**<sup>(12)</sup>, and it is now much easier for women. Many women writers have **achieved**<sup>(13)</sup> a lot of **success**<sup>(14)</sup>. However, even today, many women writers sometimes change their names. They still believe that they will have more success as a man than as a woman. **For example**<sup>(15)</sup>, English writer J.K. Rowling said she put J.K. **rather than**<sup>(16)</sup> Joanna on her books so more boys would read them.

(7) ضغط

(8) عملي

(9) بجدية

(10) يناصر - يؤيد

(11) متساوي

(12) فُرص

(13) يحقق

(14) نجاح

(15) على سبيل المثال

(16) بدلاً من

## What do they do ? This week :

Lesson 3 SB page 74

### A speech therapist

Judy is a **speech therapist**<sup>(1)</sup> in a hospital in Cairo. A speech therapist is someone who helps people who have difficulty speaking publicly



(1) أخصائي معالجة اللُّطق

(2) بوضوح

(3) شهادة جامعية

(4) مُهتَم - مُجِب

(5) مودونق به

(6) شخص لبق

### • Why did you choose to become a speech therapist?

My mother is a teacher. A child at her school had problems speaking. This made it difficult for her in class, so she also had problems learning. After she saw a speech therapist, she could speak much more **clearly**<sup>(2)</sup>. Now, she is one of the best students in her class. When I heard, I decided I wanted to be a speech therapist.

### • What skills do you need to be a speech therapist?

You need a **degree**<sup>(3)</sup> and you also need to be **caring**<sup>(4)</sup>, **reliable**<sup>(5)</sup> and a good **communicator**<sup>(6)</sup>.

• Can you give us some examples of the kinds of people you see?

Sometimes children find it difficult to talk because they have a **disability**<sup>(7)</sup>. I help by **developing**<sup>(8)</sup> **muscles**<sup>(9)</sup> around their mouth, for example. Other children have no disability, so you need to find out why they are finding it difficult to speak. They might not be very **confident**<sup>(10)</sup>.

• Is it the same for adults?

Most of the **adults**<sup>(11)</sup> have been ill. But there are some who are not very confident too. There is a very famous example of this.

• Who is that?

George VI was king of the United Kingdom from 1936 to 1952. When he became king, he found it very difficult to **give speeches**<sup>(12)</sup>. So, he asked to see a speech therapist. The therapist, who was an Australian called Lionel Logue, helped him to speak more clearly.

It **sounds**<sup>(13)</sup> an **amazing**<sup>(14)</sup> **achievement**<sup>(15)</sup>.  
Thank you for talking to us.



- (7) إعاقة
- (8) يُنمِّي - يُقَوِّي
- (9) عضلات
- (10) واثق
- (11) الكبار - البالغين
- (12) يلقي خطب
- (13) يبدو
- (14) مذهل
- (15) انجاز

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am writing because I am interested in working at your company. However, I know that you are only interested in people who have experience in banking. Could you tell me if your company has apprenticeships for reliable people who have a degree? I am honest, loyal and a good communicator and I think I have all the qualities that you need. However, I do not have a lot of experience at the moment.

If your company gives / offers me an apprenticeship for a few weeks or months, I will be able to apply for a full-time job when I have the necessary experience.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Kind regards

Lina Mohsen



Lesson 4 SB page 75



# Monthly assessments

## تقييمات شهرية

### 1. February test اختبار فبراير

#### 1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. When a place is messy, it is .....  
a. ordered                      b. disordered                      c. orderly  
d. tidy                              e. untidy
2. A hybrid car has a/an .....  
a. two wings                      b. a petrol engine                      c. the ability to fly  
d. three wheels                      e. an electric motor

#### 2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Please, open the door. It is so airless in here. I can hardly .....  
a. research                      b. breathe                      c. breath                      d. search
2. The pilot of the plane was forced to make a/an ..... landing as one of the engines had broken down.  
a. blanket                      b. immediately                      c. emergency                      d. evacuation
3. My wife is used to ..... the chicken in foil before cooking it.  
a. responding                      b. wrapping                      c. breathing                      d. feeding
4. Parents must care much about their children's personal .....  
a. evacuation                      b. emergency                      c. hygiene                      d. allergy
5. When the car went past us, a cloud of ..... rose in the air.  
a. soil                              b. dust                              c. rain                              d. bin
6. Today, in car factories, ..... can replace production workers.  
a. robots                              b. inventions                              c. vehicles                              d. rumours
7. It is extremely warm in here. We ..... better open some windows.  
a. had                              b. should                              c. ought to                              d. must
8. This library book is overdue. I ..... return it today. It is necessary to do that.  
a. should                              b. shouldn't                              c. mustn't                              d. must
9. I wish I were in India, I would visit the Taj Mahal. But I ..... there now.  
a. am                              b. were                              c. am not                              d. weren't
10. If you let me know when your computer comes, I ..... you connect it.  
a. help                              b. helped                              c. will help                              d. would help
11. You ..... smoke in hospitals. It is forbidden.  
a. must                              b. mustn't                              c. shouldn't                              d. should
12. I'm catching an early flight tomorrow, so I ..... stay up late.  
a. should                              b. must                              c. mustn't                              d. need to

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Have you ever imagined life without cell phones? People who are fifty or more will find this question surprising as they used to live without mobile phones. Younger generations, on the other hand, think that they cannot do without mobile phones.

If someone had said 50 years ago that people would be walking around with small wireless telephones in their hands, we would have called him or her mad. However, almost everyone now has at least one of them.

People everywhere are walking around talking on their mobile phones. The phones are even being used for more than just communication. People use them for **numerous** purposes. Mobile phones are used to play games, watch films, listen to music, pay money online, and find information. They have become a very important part of our lives.

Mobile phones have not only made our lives more convenient, but they have changed the way we live. Before we had mobile phones, it was hard to reach a friend that was away from home. But thanks to these small devices, people can now get in touch with anyone, at any place, and at any time. To conclude, they have made us reachable wherever we are and whenever anyone likes.

1. What can we not use mobile phones for?
  - a. Playing games.
  - b. Getting information.
  - c. Washing our faces.
  - d. Listening to music.
2. About fifty years ago, we .....
  - a. did not have mobiles
  - b. had mobile phones
  - c. used mobiles
  - d. were mad
3. Thanks to mobile phones, .....
  - a. we cannot find information
  - b. our lives are shorter
  - c. it is harder to reach a friend
  - d. our lives are easier
4. The antonym of the underlined word "convenient" is.....
  - a. improper
  - b. proper
  - c. suitable
  - d. available
5. The summary of the last paragraph is .....
  - a. the disadvantages of cell phones
  - b. the advantages of cell phones
  - c. decreasing the use of cell phones
  - d. improving of cell phones
6. The adjective "**numerous**" can be replaced with .....
  - a. many
  - b. little
  - c. few
  - d. small
7. The best title for the passage can be ".....".
  - a. Technology
  - b. Watching films
  - c. Cell phones
  - d. Playing games



4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Leaders from around the world gathered to discuss solutions to the climate change and global warming in an international conference known as COP27 last month in Egypt.

- a. حضر قادة من كل أنحاء العالم لمناقشة حلول لمشكلة التعديل المناخي والاحتباس الحرارى فى مؤتمر قارى معروف بمؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ فى مصر الشهر الماضى.
- b. تجمع قادة من كل أنحاء العالم لمناقشة حلول لمشكلة التغير المناخي والاحتباس الحرارى فى مؤتمر دولى معروف بمؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ فى مصر الشهر الماضى.
- c. قد يحضر قادة من كل أنحاء العالم لمناظرة حلول لمشكلة التغير المناخي والارتفاع الحرارى فى مؤتمر دولى معروف بمؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ فى مصر الشهر الماضى.
- d. قد يجتمع قادة من كل أنحاء العالم لمناقشة حلول لمشكلة التغير المناخي والاحتباس الحرارى فى مؤتمر دولى معروف بمؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لمشكلات المناخ فى مصر الشهر الماضى.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

ليس من السهل أن تحافظ على صحتك هذه الأيام بسبب انتشار الوجبات السريعة، لكن من لديه عزيمة ووعى يستطيع فعل ذلك.

- a. It's not easy to keep healthy nowadays because of the spread of the fast food, but who has the determination and the awareness can do that.
- b. It's not easy to keep health nowadays because of the spread of the fast food, but who has the separation and the awareness can do that.
- c. It's not hard to keep healthy nowadays because of the spread of the fast food, but who has the determination and the awareness can do that.
- d. It's not easy to keep healthy nowadays because of the spread of the fast food, but who has the determination and the awareness cannot do that.

5. Answer the following questions:

1. Why was the fort very important for Captain Smollet and his men ?

.....

2. Why do you think Ben Gun seemed a little crazy ?

.....

3. If you were Captain Smollet, would you accept the truce with the pirates ? Why/Why not ?

.....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

*"A holiday you would like to go on giving your reasons for your choice"*

.....  
.....  
.....

## تقييمات شهرية

## اختيار مارس

**1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :**

1. Which of the following describe a governess ?  
 a. She is a man.                      b. She is a woman.  
 c. She teaches a child at their school.    d. She teaches a child at their home.  
 e. She looks after the whole house.
2. Something that is ..... makes you feel good.  
 a. rewarding          b. unrewarding    c. satisfying  
 d. dissatisfying    e. unkind

**2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. A/An ..... is a child whose parents are dead.  
a. servant                      b. governess                      c. housekeeper                      d. orphan
2. Encouraging works well with most students but some need to ..... pressure on them to work.  
a. get                      b. put                      c. spend                      d. receive
3. The word "cruel" is ..... the word "kind".  
a. antonymous with                      b. synonymous with  
c. similar to                      d. the same as
4. Mrs Wafaa always asks her husband to get a ..... to help her in the housework.  
a. receptionist                      b. servant                      c. bully                      d. musician
5. Teaching is a/an ..... profession. Every teacher feels rewarded when he sees his student excel.  
a. cruel                      b. rewarding                      c. awarded                      d. harmful
6. Exams can be a/an ..... time for students. They always feel worried and tensed.  
a. rewarding                      b. stressful                      c. stressed                      d. enjoyable
7. It wasn't ..... Fatma had known her success news that she called me.  
a. as soon as                      b. after                      c. having                      d. until
8. .... by the manager, send the letter to me.  
a. Having signing                      b. After had been signed  
c. Signed                      d. When it signed
9. The tennis player ..... in the air. He had won the match.  
a. jumped                      b. had jumped                      c. jump                      d. was jumped
10. Sara picked up her glasses. They ..... . She had stepped on them.  
a. were broken                      b. was broken                      c. is broken                      d. are broken



11. If you ..... well at school, you'll pass your tests.  
a. do                      b. will do                      c. did                      d. would do

12. What ..... if you can't sleep at night?  
a. did you do                      b. were you doing  
c. do you do                      d. would you do

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The celebration of Earth Day began in the city of San Francisco and was started by their mayor at the request of John McConnel. The first Earth Day celebration was held on March 21<sup>st</sup> which was the first day of spring. Earth Day is important because it reminds us to stop and look at the problems of our environment. These cause health problems to people living on Earth. Each of us must do our part to recycle and reuse products instead of throwing them away. The trash we deliver to our landfills each week is taking up valuable land and space we need for homes and farms. Earth Day is now celebrated each year on April 22<sup>nd</sup>. Schools around the world **take part** in making sure that our world is a cleaner place. Students volunteer to pick up trash at their schools, homes, and neighborhoods to do their part in helping our environment.

1. The smoke released into the air, by automobiles and industry is .....  
a. healthy to breathe                      b. unhealthy to breathe  
c. helpful to plants                      d. helpful to animals

2. What does Earth Day help us to do ?  
a. Think of ways to recycle materials      b. Pick up trash  
c. Clean up our water sources              d. All of these

3. The underlined word "mayor" means the .....  
a. governor                      b. deliver                      c. scientist                      d. doctor

4. What can students do to help celebrate Earth Day ?  
a. Have a party for it                      b. Sing songs  
c. Pick up trash in their community      d. Pick up trash to their schools

5. The first Earth Day celebration was held in .....  
a. autumn                      b. winter                      c. summer                      d. spring

6. The phrasal verb "**take part**" can be replaced by " .....".  
a. happen                      b. participate                      c. influence                      d. ignore

7. The best title of the passage is " .....".  
a. Everyone has the choice                      b. Effects of nature  
c. Earth Day                      d. Climatic changes

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Lifelong learning is a voluntary continuous process of looking for new information all the time either for personal or professional reasons.

a. التعلم مدى الحياة هو عملية اختيارية متصلة للبحث عن معلومات جديدة طول الوقت إما لأسباب علمية أو مهنية.

b. التعلم عبر الحياة هو عملية تطوعية مستمرة لتقديم عن معلومات جديدة طول الوقت إما لأسباب شخصية أو مهنية.

c. التعلم مدى الحياة هو عملية تطوعية مستمرة للبحث عن معلومات جديدة طول الوقت إما لأسباب شخصية أو مهنية.

d. التعلم عبر الحياة هو عملية تطوعية متصلة للبحث عن معلومات جديدة طول الوقت إما لأسباب شخصية أو مهنية.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

من وجهة نظري الشخصية أن أحد أهم أسباب المشكلات الاجتماعية في مجتمعنا هو نقص القيم والوعي الأخلاقي في شوارعنا وبين شبابنا.

a. In my person point of view, one of the most important causes for the social problems in out society is the lack of values and the formal awareness in our streets and among our youth.

b. In my personal point of view, one of the most important causes of the sociable problems in our society is the leak of values and the moral awareness in our streets and among our youth.

c. In my personal point of view, one of the most important causes of the social problems in our society is the lack of values and the moral awareness in our streets and among our youth.

d. In my personal point of view, one of the most important reasons for the social problems in our society is the lake of values and the moral awareness in our streets and among our youth.

5. Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think Captain Smollett's men won the first fight ? How do you know ?

2. If you were Dr Livesey, would you leave the fort on your own to find Ben Gun ? Why/Why not ?

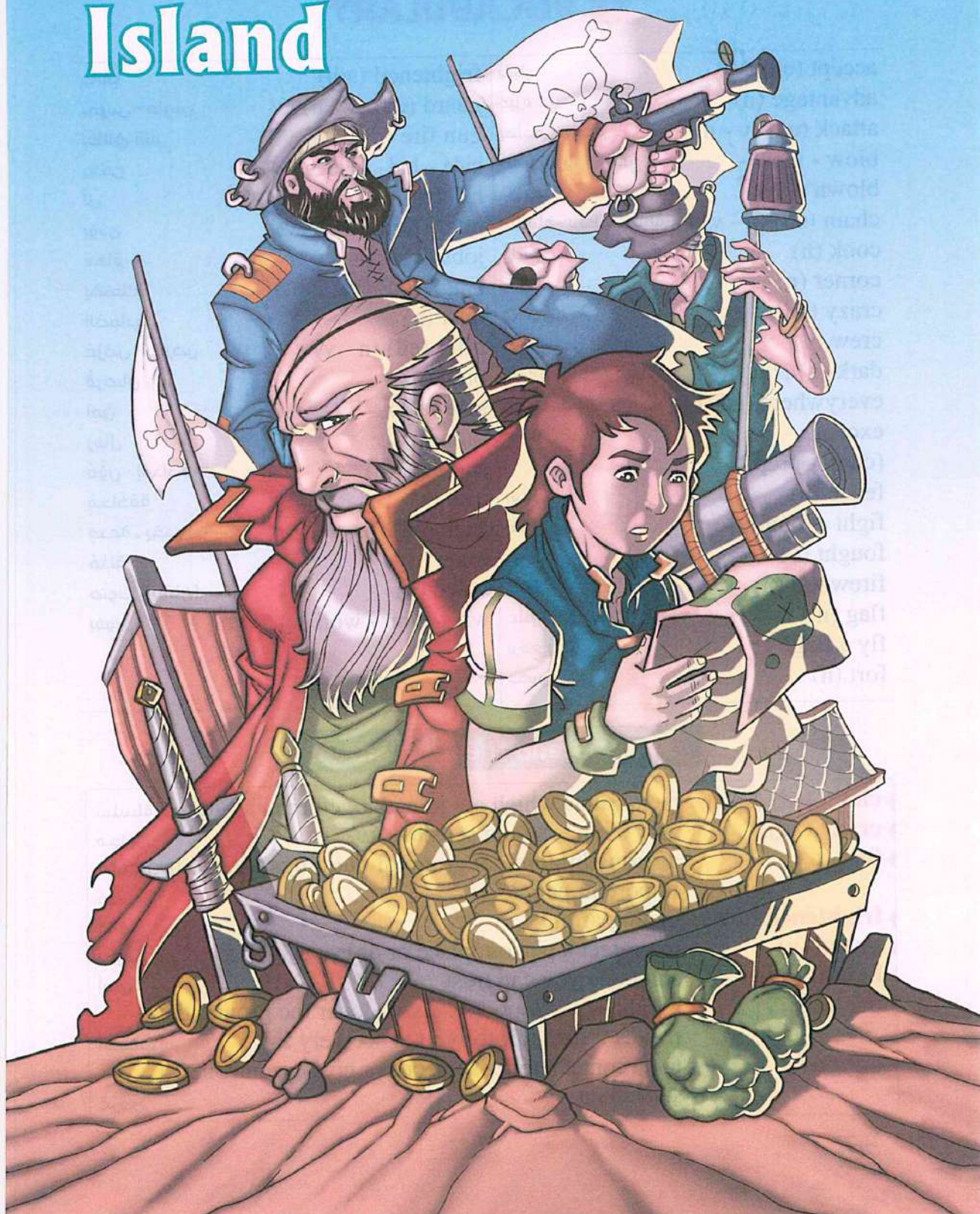
3. Why do you think Jim asked Hands to sail the ship to the north of the island ?

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

*"How modern technology helps students learn better"*



# Treasure Island







## I VOCABULARY

accept (ed) (v)	يقبل	frightened (adj)	خائف
advantage (n)	ميزة	guard (ed) (v - n)	يحرص - حارس
attack (ed) (v - n)	يهاجم - هجوم	gun fire (n)	إطلاق النار
blow - blew -	تَهْب (الرياح) - ينفج	hide - hid - hidden (v)	يخْتبئ
blown (v)	- يدفع	hill (n)	تَلّ
chain (ed) (n - v)	سلسلة - يربط بسلسلة	hurt - hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي
cook (n)	طباخ	jobs (n)	مَهَام
corner (n)	رُكن	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
crazy (adj)	مجنون	mist (n)	الضباب
crew (n)	طاقم (العمل على السفينة)	offer (ed) (n - v)	عَرْض - يعرض
dark (n) , (adj)	الظلام - الليل / مظلم	pirate (n)	قُرْصان
everywhere (adv)	في كل مكان	safe (adj)	أَمِن
except	ما عدا	sand (n)	رمال
(conj. - prep.)		supplies (n)	مُؤْن - إمدادات
fence (n)	سور	trial (n)	مُحاكَمَة
fight - fought -	يقاتل	trick (ed) (n - v)	خدعة - يخدع
fought (v)		truce (n)	هُدنة
firewood (n)	خَطَب	voice (n)	صوت (إنسان)
flag (n)	عَلَم - راية	win - won - won (v)	يفوز
fly a flag	يرفع راية		
fort (n)	حصن		

## Words and their definitions

- ▶ **chain (ed) (v - n):** metal rings which are joined together in a line سلسلة
- ▶ **crazy (adj)** : very strange or not sensible عاقل مجنون
- ▶ **fort (n)** : a strong building or group of buildings used to protect important people حصن
- ▶ **frightened (adj)** : feeling afraid خائف
- ▶ **guard (v)** : to protect a person, place or object شيء يحرس
- ▶ **honest (adj)** : someone you can trust أمين
- ▶ **mist (n)** : a light cloud low over the ground that makes it difficult for you to see very far الضباب
- ▶ **offer (n)** : to do something for someone or give to someone something عَرْض



▶ <b>trial (n)</b>	: a legal process عملية قانونية to decide if someone has committed ارتكب a crime	محاكمة
▶ <b>trick (n)</b>	: an action that is meant to deceive يخدع someone	خدعة
▶ <b>truce (n)</b>	: stopping the war for a certain period of time	هدنة

## II CHAPTER SEVEN IN POINTS

1. Ben and Jim find the fort. Ben can see the Hispaniola flying the Pirates' flag. Jim goes inside the fort. His friends are there.
2. The wind blows sand inside. The room is full of smoke and sand. Captain Smollett gives them jobs to do. They are better.
3. Jim thinks Ben is a bit crazy and Dr Livesy agrees. "Any man on an island for three years will be a bit crazy." They give some cheese to Ben.
4. They hope the Pirates will leave the island with the Hispaniola but the Pirates come with a white flag. Silver is with them to ask for a truce هدنة.
5. Captain Smollett asks them to be careful. He speaks to Silver. He is sure it was a trick.
6. Silver asks them to go to his ship and talk about how to go home. The captain asks Silver to come into the fort. Silver comes and speaks to the captain.
7. The captain asks Silver if he is a cook or a pirate then.
8. Silver asks for the map and in return he will take them home safely on the ship or he will leave them some supplies to stay on the island and he can ask another ship to go and take them.
9. Silver hopes they can accept his offer or they will only hear the sound of guns. The captain says if Silver and his men come, the captain will put them in chain and take them for trial.
10. The captain tells Silver that Silver can't find the treasure without the map nor does he have enough men to sail the ship back to England.
11. Silver is angry. Captain Smollett says Silver will attack the fort but the captain thinks they have the advantage inside the fort.

## III TEXT OF CHAPTER SEVEN

**Jim Hawkins:**

I walked with Ben Gun and we soon saw the fort.

"Your friends will be inside, Jim," said Ben.

"It might be the pirates,"

I replied.



"No, look at the flag! They will be good men **1**," he answered. "The fort was made by Flint. He was a clever man and he wasn't frightened of anyone, except Silver."

"Let's go inside," I said.

"I can't go in there," Gun replied. "I don't trust anyone. I'll wait for you. Remember what I told you. I can help you. Come and find me tomorrow."

Before I could go to the fort, there was the sound of more gun fire and I had to hide so I wouldn't be hit. From the trees where I waited, I could now see the Hispaniola. It was also flying a flag, but it was the black pirate's flag.

When it was nearly dark, I walked round to the back of the fort and called out. The door opened, and Dr Livesy let me inside.

I sat down and told them my story. The wind blew sand inside the fort and we found it everywhere, in our clothes, in our food and in our eyes **2**. There was a fire to keep us warm, but the room was also full of smoke and we all coughed.

Captain Smollett gave us all jobs: some looked for firewood, others went to cook food, and I was asked to guard the door. He kept us all busy, and that made us all feel better.

"Captain Smollett is a good man," said Dr Livesy later that day. "And what about Ben Gun? Is he a good man?"

"I don't know," I answered. "I think he's a little crazy."

"Any man on an island for three years will be a bit crazy," **3** explained the doctor.

"Did you say that he wanted some good food?"

"Yes," I replied.

"I've brought some cheese with me on this journey. Let's give it to Ben Gun!" said the doctor.

That evening, the men talked about how little food we had. We hoped that the pirates would leave the island with the Hispaniola. The doctor said that they

### Suggested Questions

- 1** How do you think Ben Gun know Jim's friends were inside the fort ?

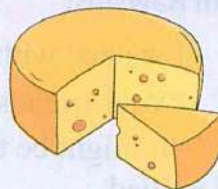


### Suggested Questions

- 2** How did the wind affect Jim and his friends in the fort ?

### Suggested Questions

- 3** Why do you think Ben Gun was a little crazy ?





would become ill if they slept outside on the island for long. And if the pirates left, we could wait until help arrived.

I slept very well that night. The next morning, a voice woke me up. I heard someone say, "Some pirates are coming to the fort with a white flag. Look, it's Silver! He wants a truce!" **4**

I got up and looked from the fort. It was a cold morning, and although it was sunny, there was a low mist. We could only see the head of Silver and another pirate.

"Stay in the fort," said Captain Smollett. "I'm sure that this is a trick" **5** Then he called out to Silver, "Tell us what you want."

**Suggested Questions**

**4** What did Silver want ?

"I want a truce," said Silver.

Captain Smollett quietly told us to move to different corners of the fort and to watch Silver carefully. Then he called to Silver, "What do you want us to do?"

**Suggested Questions**

**5** Do you think Silver really wanted a truce ?

"Come to my ship and we can talk about how to get home," said Silver.

"Your ship? I didn't know you had a ship here," replied Captain Smollett.

"Well, the crew chose me to be their captain after you left the ship," said Silver.

"If you have something to say, you can come into the fort and say it," said Captain Smollett.

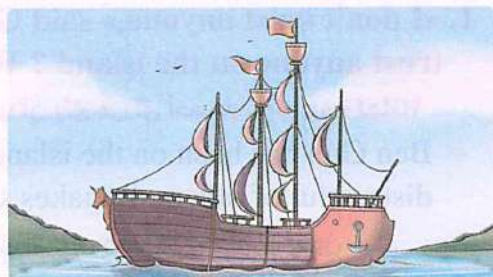
The other pirate tried to stop Silver, but he laughed and walked quickly towards the fort. He climbed over one of the fences and walked slowly up the hill. Soon he was standing in front of Captain Smollett, who was waiting for him outside the door to the fort.

"Can't I come inside?" asked Silver. "It's a cold morning."

"If you were an honest man, you could come inside," said Captain Smollett. "But are you my ship's cook, who I looked after, or Captain Silver, a pirate?"

"OK, we can stay here," said Silver, sitting down on the sand. "You've got a nice place here. Look, there's Jim! Good morning."

"If you have anything to say, say it now," said Captain Smollett.





"Captain, we want the treasure, and we're going to find it. However, I think you all want to leave the island safely. You have the map, don't you?" asked Silver.

"Perhaps," said Captain Smollett.

"I know you have it," said Silver. "We don't want to hurt you. Give us the map and then we will take you home on the ship. We'll take you to somewhere safe **6**. Or, if you prefer, we'll leave you some supplies and you can stay on the island. Then we can ask another ship to come and take you home. It's a kind offer, and I hope you all want to take it." He said this last part loudly, so that we could all hear in the fort.

"Is that all you can offer?"  
said Captain Smollett.

"It is, and if you don't  
accept my offer, all you will  
hear from me is the sound of guns!"

### Suggested Questions

**6** Silver made offers to Smollett. Explain.

"Now you can listen to me," replied Captain Smollett. "If you come up to the fort, one by one, without any guns, I'll put you all in chains and take you back to England for trial. If you don't, you'll have problems. You can't find the treasure. You don't have enough men to sail the ship, and you can't fight us here in the fort."

Silver looked very angry. "This will not end well for any of you," he said, and then he walked slowly back down the hill.

Captain Smollett came back into the fort and said to us, "He'll be back in an hour to attack us. There are more of them than us, but we have the advantage inside the fort, and I am sure that we can win."

## IV QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

### Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers

#### 1 Longman website questions

أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونغمان

**1. «I don't trust anyone,» said Gun. Do you agree that Gun shouldn't trust anyone on the island? Why?**

- «أنا لا أثق بأحد» قال جن. هل توافق أن «جن» لا يجب أن يثق في أي أحد على الجزيرة؟ لماذا؟

- Ben Gun has been on the island for three years and has grown distrustful of others. It makes sense for him to be cautious.

- بن جن كان على الجزيرة لثلاث سنوات وازداد عدم ثقته في الآخرين وهذا ما يجعله أن يكون حذراً.



## 2. What do you think might have happened if the team hadn't cooperated on the island ? Why ?

- ماذا تعتقد كان يمكن ان يحدث إذا لم يتعاون الفريق على الجزيرة ؟ لماذا ؟

- They likely would not have been able to secure the fort or survive after the attack by the pirates.

- كان من الممكن ألا يستطيعوا أن يأمنوا الحصن أو يبقوا على قيد الحياة بعد هجوم القراصنة.

## 3. «If you come up to the fort, one by one, without any guns, I'll put you all in chains and take you back to England for trial.» If you were in Smollette's place, would you do the same ? Why ?

- «إذا أتيتم إلى الحصن واحدًا تلو الآخر بدون بنادق، سأضع الأصفاد في أيديكم وأخذكم إلى إنجلترا للمحاكمة» لو كنت مكان كابتن سموليت، هل كنت تفعل نفس الشيء ؟ لماذا.

- It makes sense for Smollett to do this as a means of control and defense. It would be difficult for the pirates to attack in this way.
- كنت سأفعل مثل كابتن سموليت كنوع من الدفاع والتحكم في الحصن، كان سيكون من الصعب الهجوم بهذه الطريقة.

## 4. If you were the leader of the team looking for the treasure, which would you prefer to have : the map or more food supplies ? Why ?

- لو كنت قائد الفريق في البحث عن الكنز، ماذا كنت تفضل أن يكون معك الخريطة أو مؤن الطعام أكثر؟ لماذا؟

- The map is clearly the more important tool for finding the treasure, making it the better choice for the leader.
- الخريطة بالنسبة لي كقائد ستكون أهم أداه لإيجاد الكنز هذا هو الاختيار الأفضل للقائد.

## 5. Why do you think Captain Smollett put up a flag on the fort ?

- لماذا تعتقد أن كابتن سموليت وضع علمًا على الحصن.

- The flag acts as a symbol of authority and a warning to potential intruders.
- العلم يمثل رمز السلطة وتحذير لأي متطفلين من القدوم للحصن

### 2 SB, El-Moasser & Previous Exams

اسئلة من الكتاب المدرسي وكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة مع إجاباتها المقترحة

### 1. How do you think Jim got to the fort? (SB)

- برأيك، كيف وصل «جيم» إلى الحصن؟

- Perhaps Ben Gun led him to the fort.
- ربما قاده «بن غان» إلى الحصن.

### 2. Why do you think the fort was very important for Captain Smollett and his men? (SB)

- لماذا في اعتقادك كان الحصن مهماً جداً للكابتن «سموليت» ورجاله؟

- The fort gave Captain Smollett and his men protection from the pirates. It was where they had a fire for warmth and food to eat.
- لقد منح الحصن القبطان «سموليت» ورجاله الحماية من القراصنة. إنه المكان الذي كانوا يوقدون فيه النار من أجل الدفء وطعام ليأكلوه.



### 3. Why do you think Ben Gun refused to enter the fort with Jim?

- برأيك، لماذا رفض «بن غان» دخول الحصن مع «جيم»؟
- I think he didn't want to take part in the conflict between the two groups.
- أعتقد أنه لم يكن يريد الدخول في الصراع بين الطرفين.

### 4. How do you think Ben knew that Jim's friends, not the pirates, were inside the fort?

(أسوان - إدفو ٢٠٢٤)

- في اعتقادك كيف عرف «بن جن» أن أصدقاء جيم وليس القراصنة هم من كانوا داخل الحصن.
- Because he saw the flag on the fort. It wasn't the pirates' flag.
- لأنه رأى العلم على الحصن وكان ليس علم القراصنة.

### 5. What do you think showed Jim that the Pirates took control of the Hispaniola?

- في رأيك، ما الذي أظهر لـ «جيم» أن القراصنة سيطروا على السفينة «هيسبانيولا»؟
- The ship had the pirates' flag.
- كانت السفينة ترفع علم القراصنة.

### 6. Captain Smollett proved to be a wise leader inside the fort. Show how.

- أثبت القبطان «سموليت» أنه قائد حكيم داخل الحصن. وضع كيف.
- He gave everybody jobs to do and that made them all feel better.
- لقد كلف كل فرد بالقيام بمهمة، وهذا جعلهم جميعاً يشعرون بتحسن.

### 7. Why do you think Ben Gun seemed a little crazy?

- برأيك، لماذا كان «بن غان» يبدو مجنوناً بعض الشيء؟
- I think living alone on the island for three years had a bad effect on him.
- أعتقد أن العيش بمفرده في الجزيرة لمدة ثلاث سنوات كان له تأثير سيء عليه.

### 8. Captain smollett ordered his men to do various tasks. What does this show about his character.

(أسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)

- كابتن سموليت أمر رجاله بالقيام بمهام مختلفة ؟ ماذا يوضح ذلك عن شخصيته ؟
- It shows that he is a good, wise leader.
- هذا يوضح ذلك أنه قائد جيد وحكيم.

### 9. "Any man on an island for three years will be a bit crazy". What man does Dr Livesy talk about ? Why would that man be crazy ?

(أسيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)

- أي شخص على جزيرة لمدة ثلاث سنوات سيكون إلى حد ما مجنوناً ؟ من هو الرجل الذي يتحدث عنه دكتور ليفسي ولماذا هذا الرجل مجنوناً.

- Dr Livesy talked about Ben Gun. It is difficult for any man to live alone in an island for three years without talking to any one and eating strange food. He might be crazy.

- تحدث دكتور ليفسي عن بن جن ، فمن الصعب لأي إنسان يعيش بمفرده على جزيرة لمدة ثلاث سنوات بدون التحدث إلى أحد بجانب تناول طعام غريب، فربما يكون مجنوناً.

### 10. Why do you think Silver came to the fort with a white flag?

(الإسكندرية - غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- برأيك، لماذا أتى سيلفر إلى الحصن بعلم أبيض؟
- I think he wanted to show that he was not attacking the fort.
- He only wanted a truce.

- أعتقد أنه أراد إظهار أنه لن يهاجم الحصن. لقد أراد فقط الهدنة.



### 11. Doctor Livesey proved to be generous. Show how.

- لقد أثبت الدكتور «ليفسي» أنه كريم. وضع كيف.
- He offered to give Ben Gun some cheese.
- لقد عرض أن يعطي «بن غان» بعض الجبن.

### 12. If you were Captain Smollett, would you accept the truce with the pirates? Why/Why not?

- لو كنت القبطان «سموليت»، هل تقبل الهدنة مع القراصنة؟ لماذا/لماذا لا؟
- I wouldn't accept it because it was just a trap. لم أكن لأقبلها لأنها مجرد خدعة.

### 13. "Come to my ship and we can talk about how to get home." What do you think the message Silver wanted to convey was?

- «تعالوا إلى سفينتي ويمكننا أن نتحدث عن كيفية العودة.» ما رأيك في الرسالة التي أراد «سيلفر» إيصالها؟
- He wanted to show that he took control over the Hispaniola.
- أراد أن يُظهر أنه سيطر على السفينة «هيسبانيولا».

### 14. What advantages did the Pirates have over Captain Smollett and his men?

- ما المزايا التي كانت تميز القراصنة على القبطان «سموليت» ورجاله؟
- They were more in number. They had the ship and they had more weapons.
- كانوا أكثر عدداً، وكانت لديهم السفينة وكان لديهم أسلحة أكثر.

### 15. What advantages did Captain Smollett and his men have over the Pirates?

- ما هي المزايا التي كانت تميز القبطان «سموليت» ورجاله على القراصنة؟
- They had a strong fort. They also had the map to the treasure.
- كان لديهم حصن قوي، وكان لديهم أيضاً خريطة الكنز.

### 16. What do you think of Silver as a negotiator? (الإسكندرية - الجمر ٢٠٢٤)

- ما رأيك في «سيلفر» كمفاوض؟
- He was intelligent and cunning.
- لقد كان ذكياً ومكرراً.

### 17. "... I hope you all want to take it." Why do you think Silver says these words loudly?

- «... أتمنى أن ترغبوا جميعاً في قبوله.» برأيك، لماذا قال «سيلفر» هذه الكلمات بصوت عالٍ؟
- I think he wanted Captain Smollett's men to hear this offer and accept it against their leader's will.
- أعتقد أنه أراد أن يُسمع رجال القبطان «سموليت» هذا العرض وأن يقبلوه ضد إرادة قائدهم.

### 18. On what condition did smollett allow silver to enter the fort ? What did that show ? (الأقصر - ارميت ٢٠٢٤)

- ما الشرط الذي اشتراطه سموليت لیسمر أن یدخل الحصن؟ وماذا یوضح ذلك؟
- Smollett would allow Silver to enter the fort if he was an honest man.
- سموليت كان سيسمح لـ سيلفر أن يدخل الحصن لو كان رجلاً أميناً.



## Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students

أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر وإجاباتها

### 1. What did Long John Silver want from Captain Smollett? (SB)

- ماذا أراد «لونغ جون سيلفر» من القبطان «سموليت»؟  
- أراد «سيلفر» الخريطة إلى الكنز.

### 2. Why did Silver arrive at the fort with a white flag? (SB)

- لماذا وصل «سيلفر» إلى الحصن بعلم أبيض؟  
- He wanted a truce. He wanted to make an offer so that he could get the map to the treasure.  
- لقد أراد الهدنة. أراد أن يقدم عرضاً حتى يتمكن من الحصول على خريطة الكنز.

### 3. Why didn't Captain Smollett allow Silver to enter the fort? (SB)

- لماذا لم يسمح القبطان «سموليت» لـ «سيلفر» بدخول الحصن؟  
- Because Silver was dishonest.  
- لأن «سيلفر» كان شخص غير أمين.

### 4. What did Silver want the men in the fort to do? (SB)

- ماذا أراد «سيلفر» من الرجال في الحصن أن يفعلوا؟  
- He wanted them to protest against Captain Smollett and accept the offer.  
- أراد منهم الاحتجاج على القبطان «سموليت» وقبول العرض.

### 5. Why did Captain Smollett refuse Silver's offer to leave them with some supplies? (SB)

- لماذا رفض القبطان «سموليت» عرض «سيلفر» بتركهم مع بعض الإمدادات لهم؟  
- It was a bad offer from a dishonest man who wouldn't keep his word.  
- لقد كان عرضاً سيئاً من رجل غير أمين لن يلتزم بكلمته.

### ★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Ben Gun has been on the island for ..... years.  
a. 3                      b. 4                      c. 5                      d. 6
- Ben Gun knew that Jim's friends were good men when he saw the .....  
a. trick                      b. flag                      c. mist                      d. guard
- The room was full of smoke, and they all .....  
a. ate                      b. guarded                      c. coughed                      d. stayed
- Ben Gun was a little .....  
a. honest                      b. dishonest                      c. crazy                      d. messy
- ..... went to the fort with another pirate to ask for a truce.  
a. Silver                      b. Jim                      c. Dr Livesy                      d. Ben Gun
- Silver came to the fort with a ..... flag.  
a. black                      b. red                      c. white                      d. pink
- Dr Livesy was sure that silver came to the fort for a .....  
a. play                      b. subject                      c. truce                      d. trick

### Answers

- |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. a | 2. b | 3. c | 4. c | 5. a | 6. c | 7. d |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|



# General Exercises On Chapter 7

## ★ Answer the following questions :

**A** 1. Captain Smollett was a good leader. Illustrate. (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)

2. The flag is very important to any ship. Explain.

3. Silver and the pirates gave a sign that they didn't want to fight against Captain Smollett's team. How ? (أسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)

**B** 1. Why do you think that silver is very clever ? (أسوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)

2. Why didn't Captain Smollette allow silver to enter the fort ? (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)

3. Why do you think Ben Gun seemed a little crazy ?

**C** 1. Do you think Ben Gun was a careful person? How can you prove your opinion? ثبت

2. "The fort was made by Flint. He was a clever man and he wasn't frightened of anyone, except Silver." What can we infer نستنتج from these words?

3. Captain Smollett proved to be a good leader. Illustrate.

**D** 1. Living alone on the island for three years affected Ben Gun. Discuss.

2. In your point of view من وجهة نظرك, who suffered a lot from living on the island? Why?

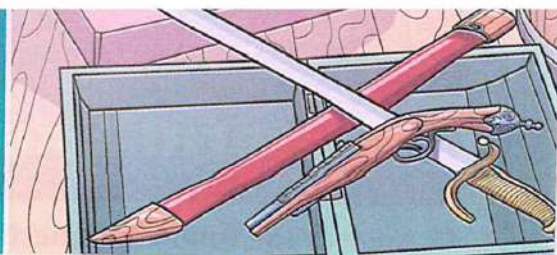
3. "Come to my ship and we can talk about how to get home." Does the speaker really have a ship? What does he mean by these words?

**E** 1. "If you were an honest man, you could come inside." What does the speaker mean by these words?

2. "Give us the map and then we will take you home on the ship." Why do you think Captain Smollett refused Silver's offer?

3. "It is, and if you don't accept my offer, all you will hear from me is the sound of guns!" What can we understand from these words?





## I VOCABULARY

anchor (n)	مِزْسَاة (هَلَب)	paddle (d) (n - v)	مِجْدَاف - يَجْدَف
badly (adv)	بشکل سيء - بشدة	pocket (n)	جَنْب
both (deter. - pron.)	كلا - كلتا	prepare (d) (v)	يُعَدِّد - يَجْهِّز
by (adv. - prep.)	بجوار - عند	quickly (adv)	بسرعة
Cape (n)	رَأْس (جغرافياً)	realise (d) (v)	يُذَكِّر
cliff (n)	مُنْخَذَر صَخْرِي	rope (n)	خَبْل
completely (adv)	بالكامل - تماماً	seem (ed) (v)	يبدو
cry (n)	صَيْخَة - صِيَّاح	shore (n)	شَاطِئ
darkness (n)	الظلام	shot (n)	طَلْق نَارِي
distant (adj)	بعيد	side (n)	جَانِب
fast (adj - adv)	سريع - بسرعة	skin (n)	جلد - بشرة
fence (n)	سور	steer (ed) (v)	يُوجِّه - يحدد اتجاه
fire (d) (v - n)	يُطْلِق النار - النار	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
fort (n)	جِصْن	sword (n)	سَيْف
impossible (adj)	مستحيل	tent (n)	خَيْمَة
lie - lay - lain (v)	يتمدد - يرقد	terrible (adj)	سيء - فظيع
mist (n)	الضباب	thick (adj)	سميك - غليظ
mostly (adv)	في الغالب	waves (n)	أمواج
noise (n)	ضوضاء - ضجيج	weakly (adv)	بضعف - بوهن
on its own	من تلقاء نفسها	weapon (n)	سلاح

## Words and their definitions

- ▶ **anchor (n)** : a heavy object **مِزْسَاة (هَلَب)** used to stop a boat moving
- ▶ **cry (n)** : a loud sound made by an animal or bird **صَيْخَة - صِيَّاح**
- ▶ **fence (n)** : a structure **سور** made of wood, metal, etc. that surrounds a piece of land
- ▶ **noise (n)** : a high sound **ضوضاء - ضجيج**
- ▶ **paddle (n)** : a short pole **مِجْدَاف** used to move a small boat along
- ▶ **rope (n)** : very big, strong string **خَبْل**
- ▶ **shot (n)** : an act **طَلْق نَارِي** of firing a gun
- ▶ **steer (ed) (v)** : to control the direction of a car, boat etc. **يُوجِّه - يحدد اتجاه**
- ▶ **tent (n)** : a structure for sleeping in, usually made of cloth fixed to metal poles **خَيْمَة**
- ▶ **thick (adj)** : wide (for an object) **سميك - غليظ**



## II CHAPTER EIGHT IN POINTS

1. The captain told his men what to do, the Pirates attacked the fort. Nobody was hurt.
2. The Pirates attacked again from the north. Joyce shot two but the Pirates got inside the fences and were killed. Joyce and Hunter were dead. The captain was hurt.
3. They won over the Pirates and killed many of them. The Pirates didn't attack the following day.
4. The doctor took the map and left the fort. He had a plan. Maybe he was going to visit Ben Gun. Jim also took a gun and went down the east of the island.
5. The weather became better. Jim found Ben's boat. He saw the ship and Silver talking to his men in a boat. Jim had a plan to go to the ship in the dark and cut the rope to the anchor.
6. The boat was difficult to steer but the wind helped him. He cut the rope and heard some pirates fighting.
7. The wind was taking his boat and the ship out to sea. The wind took the boat into a large wave.
8. Jim fainted then found himself on the south-west end of Treasure Island but he couldn't take the boat to the shore because of the big waves.
9. Jim remembered a place on the map, called Cape of Woods that had tall trees and a beach. He tried to sail the boat to get there.
10. Jim got wet but he lay down in the boat and it moved through the waves on its own; it moved slowly towards the Cape of Woods.

## III TEXT OF CHAPTER EIGHT

**Jim Hawkins:**

We **prepared** our **weapons** and the captain told us what to do.

"Doctor, you stay **by** the door. Hunter, stay at the east of the **fort**. Joyce can stand at the west. Gray and Trelawney will stay at the north. If the pirates get inside the north of the fort, we're **in trouble**."



After an hour, Joyce said that he saw someone coming. We all looked and listened, and we got our weapons ready. Suddenly, Joyce **fired** his gun. Then, we heard guns firing at us from all **sides** of the fort. There was a lot of noise and smoke, but nobody was hurt. Then everything went quiet again.



Did you hit anyone?" the captain asked Joyce.

"I don't think so," he replied.

"How many people fired on your side, Doctor?" asked Captain Smollett.

"There were three," he replied.

"How many on your side, Trelawney?"

Trelawney and Gray were not sure. They thought seven, eight or nine **1**. There was only one **shot** fired from the east and west. So, we knew that the pirates wanted to attack **mostly**

from the north. But Captain Smollett told us to stay where we were.

We didn't have much time to talk. A group of pirates ran from the trees towards the north of the fort, and their guns started firing again. Some of the pirates tried to climb the **fence**, but Joyce shot two of them and one ran back to the trees. However, four were now inside the fences and seven more continued to fire at us from the trees.

Our men fired at the four pirates, but did not hit them. They were now running up the hill to the fort, and one of them climbed up and took Hunter's gun. Another ran in through the door, where the doctor killed him.

Captain Smollett then told us to go to the other side of the fort. I ran there quickly, and suddenly found one of the pirates, **Anderson 2, in front of me.**

He was going to attack me with his **sword**, but Gray saw him and killed him before I was hurt. At the same time, the pirates inside the fences were killed by our guns.

I was safe, but others were not. **Poor Joyce and Hunter 3** were dead and Captain Smollett was hurt.

"Have the pirates gone?" asked Captain Smollett **weakly**.

"Some of them have gone," said Doctor Livesy, "but five of them will never walk again."

"That's good," said Captain Smollett. "There are fewer pirates for us to fight **4**. I know that we can win."

The pirates did not return that day, so we had time to eat

### Suggested Questions

- 1 How do you think Captain Smollett knew that the pirates wanted to attack mostly from the north ?

### Suggested Questions

- 2 Who was going to attack Jim with his sword ?

### Suggested Questions

- 3 Who were the victims from Jim's party ?

### Suggested Questions

- 4 Why did Captain Smollett said "I know that we can win" ?



and look after the people who were hurt. Doctor Livesy said that Captain Smollett would get better, but he should not walk or even talk if he didn't need to.

In the early afternoon, Doctor Livesy took his hat and a gun, then he put the map in his **pocket** and left the fort.

"What is he doing?" asked Gray when we saw him walk into the trees. "Is he crazy?"

"The doctor has a plan," I said. "I think he's going to visit Ben Gun."

That afternoon, I thought about where the doctor was. I remembered how good it felt to walk through the trees and on the beach. It was much nicer than staying inside the hot fort 5. I decided to take some biscuits and a gun. I wanted to go down to the rocks where Ben Gun said there was a boat. When nobody was looking, I quietly left the fort.



I walked quickly towards the east of the island. It was now late afternoon but the sun

was still high. As I went nearer to the coast, the wind became stronger and it wasn't as hot. Soon I could see the big waves of the blue sea and then I walked down the beach, feeling happy.

At the end of the beach I climbed a hill. I could see the Hispaniola, with the pirate flag flying in the wind. And I could see Silver in one of the small boats, talking to his men. I could not hear what they said, although I could hear the **cry** of the parrot, Captain Flint.

The sun was going down and soon there was a **mist**. I knew that I needed to be quick and find the boat that evening. It took me a long time to walk to the white rock where Ben Gun said his boat was. It was nearly dark when I finally found it inside a **tent** made of animal **skins**. It was badly made from old wood and it was very small, although I thought that it would be very fast on water.

Now, I had my own plan. I thought that I could go to the Hispaniola in the night and cut the rope to the anchor 6. So, I ate my biscuits while I waited for it to become dark.

When I stood up later, there was mist everywhere. I picked

#### Suggested Questions

5 Why did Jim leave the fort ?

#### Suggested Questions

6 What did Jim want to do to the Hispaniola ?



up the boat and carried it to the beach. In the **darkness**, I could just see a fire where the pirates were sleeping in the trees, and another **distant** light from the Hispaniola. I put the small boat into the water, and began my journey to the ship.



I found that the boat was very difficult to **steer**, but the wind helped me to get to the Hispaniola. Soon, I was next to the big ship and I began cutting the **thick** anchor rope. I could now hear some of the pirates talking on the ship. One of the men was called **Hands** **7**, but I did not know the other man. They **both** seemed angry.

The rope finally broke, and I moved away from the ship.

### Suggested Questions

**7** Who was angry on the Hispaniola ?

As I was leaving, I saw a light in one of the windows where the sailors were talking. I don't know why, but I decided to look into the window. I saw that Hands and the other pirate were fighting each other.

I sat down in the boat, but I realised that the wind was taking me quickly out to sea. Now it no longer had the anchor rope, the wind was moving the Hispaniola, too! The wind took my boat into large waves. I closed my eyes and waited for a **terrible** end, dreaming of my home and the Admiral Benbow.

The next thing I knew, it was light and I found myself in the boat on the south-west end of Treasure Island. The sun was up, but I couldn't see it because of the high **cliffs** on this side of the island. There were big waves hitting the rocks below, and it would be **impossible** for me to take the boat to the **shore**.

I remembered that on the map, there was a place called **Cape of Woods**. This was a place of tall trees and it also had a beach. I would try to get there. The boat sailed well, but when I tried to steer it, the boat hit the waves and I was soon completely wet. I **realised**, however, that if I **lay** down in the boat, it found its way through the waves **on its own**. I used a **paddle** to steer the boat a little, and it moved very slowly towards the Cape of Woods.





## IV QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

### Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers

#### 1 Longman website questions

أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونغمان

#### 1. What do you think would have happened if Captin Smollett hadn't organised work well and shown how to defend the fort ?

- في اعتقادك ماذا كان سيحدث إذا لم ينظم كابتن سموليت عمله جيدًا وأوضح كيفية الدفاع عن الحصن ؟

- It is likely that the pirates would have been able to take the fort as they are highly skilled fighters and well-equipped.

- ربما كان استولى القراصنة على الحصن حيث أنهم محاربين ذو مهارة عالية ومجهزين جيدًا.

#### 2. If you were in Smollett's place, would you lead the group in a different way ? Why ?

- هل لو كنت مكان كابتن سموليت، هل كنت ستقود فريقك بطريقة مختلفة ؟ لماذا ؟

- No, I wouldn't because he led his group wisely and well

- لا لن أغير طريقي حيث أنه كان يقود فريقه بحكمة وبشكل جيد.

#### 3. Why do you think Dr Livesy wanted to find Ben Gun ?

- في اعتقادك لماذا أراد دكتور ليفيسي أن يعثر على بن جن ؟

- Dr. Livesy believes that Ben gun can be helpful to them. He has knowledge of the island and has the ability to help them.

- يعتقد دكتور ليفيس أن بن جن يمكن أن يكون مفيدًا ومعرفته بالجزيرة سيساعدهم.

#### 2 SB, El-Moasser & Previous Exams

أسئلة من الكتاب المدرسي وكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة مع اجاباتها المقترحة

#### 1. Which side of the fort do you think is the weakest? How do you know?

- في إعتقادك، أي جانب كان الأضعف في الحصن؟ كيف عرفت ذلك؟

- I think it was the north side. Captain Smollett asked two men to protect that side.

- أعتقد أنه كان الجانب الشمالي، فلقد طلب القبطان «سموليت» من رجلين حماية هذا الجانب.

#### 2. Do you think Captain Smollett's men won the first fight? How do you know?

- هل تعتقد أن رجال القبطان «سموليت» انتصروا في المعركة الأولى؟ كيف علمت بذلك؟

- Yes. They killed five of the pirates but lost only two men.

- نعم. لقد قتلوا خمسة من القراصنة لكنهم فقدوا رجلين فقط.

#### 3. If you were one of the Pirates, would you go into the fort? Why/ Why not?

- لو كنت أحد القراصنة، هل ستذهب إلى الحصن؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟

- No, I wouldn't. It would be easy for the people inside to kill me.

- لا، لن أفعل، فمن السهل على الأشخاص الموجودين بالداخل قتل.



#### 4. Do you think Captain Smollett is a good captain? Why/Why not? (SB)

- هل تعتقد أن القبطان «سموليت» كان قائداً جيداً؟ لماذا/لماذا لا؟

- Yes, because he made good decisions in the fight with the Pirates.

- نعم، لأنه اتخذ قرارات جيدة في الحرب مع القراصنة.

#### 5. Why do you think Captain Smollett said, "I know that we can win" after the fight? (SB) (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)

- لماذا قال القبطان «سموليت» بعد القتال: «أعلم أننا قادرون على الفوز»؟

- There are fewer pirates now because some of them died in the fight.

- أصبح عدد القراصنة أقل الآن لأن بعضهم مات في القتال.

#### 6. If you were Dr Livesy, would you leave the fort on your own to find Ben Gun? Why/Why not?

- لو كنت الدكتور «ليفسي»، هل ستترك الحصن بمفردك للعثور على «بن غان»؟ لماذا/لماذا لا؟

- No, I wouldn't. It was easy for the Pirates to kill him.

- لا، لن أفعل، فمن السهل على القراصنة قتله.

#### 7. Why do you think Dr Livesy wanted to find Ben Gun? (SB) (الجيزة - الهرم ٢٠٢٤)

- برأيك لماذا أراد الدكتور «ليفسي» العثور على «بن غان»؟

- I think he wanted Ben to tell him about the place of the treasure.

- أعتقد أنه أراد من «بن» أن يخبره عن مكان الكنز.

#### 8. What was Jim's plan when he saw the little boat? Was his plan successful till the end? (SB)

- ماذا كانت خطة «جيم» عندما رأى القارب الصغير؟ وهل كانت خطته ناجحة حتى النهاية؟

- He planned to go to the Hispaniola in the night and cut the rope to the anchor. So, it would float away. This plan was successful until his boat was carried in the waves.

- لقد خطط للذهاب إلى السفينة «هيسبانيولا» ليلاً وقطع حبل المرساة حتى تتحرك السفينة بعيداً. كانت هذه الخطة ناجحة حتى جرفت الأمواج قاربه.

#### 9. Do you think Jim was right to cut the rope on the Hispaniola? Why/Why not? (الدهليّة - أجا ٢٠٢٤)

- هل كان «جيم» على حق في قطع حبل «هيسبانيولا»؟ لماذا/لماذا لا؟

- Yes, I think he was right. The ship gave the Pirates an advantage over them.

- نعم، أعتقد أنه كان على حق. أعطت السفينة القراصنة ميزة عليهم.

#### 10. Jim proved to be brave. Show how. (الإسكندرية - غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- لقد أثبت «جيم» أنه شجاع. وضح كيف.

- He left the fort alone, took Ben's boat and cut the rope of the Hispaniola.

- لقد ترك الحصن بمفرده، وأخذ قارب «بن» وقطع حبل السفينة «هيسبانيولا».

#### 11. In what way do you think Jim was lucky? كيف كان «جيم» محظوظاً؟

- He didn't drown when he lost control over the small boat.

- لم يغرق عندما فقد السيطرة على القارب الصغير.



## 12. Why do you think Dr Livesey left the fort? Do you agree that he is crazy as Gray said?

(الدقهلية - ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٤)

- لماذا في رأيك غادر الدكتور «ليفسي» الحصن؟ هل توافق على أنه مجنون كما قال «غراي»؟  
- He wanted to find Ben Gun. I agree that it was a crazy thing to do.  
- أراد أن يجد «بن غان». أوافق على أنه كان أمراً مجنوناً للقيام به.

## Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students

أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر واجابتها

### 1. Why did Dr Livesey leave the fort?

(SB)

- لماذا غادر الدكتور «ليفسي» الحصن؟  
- He wanted to visit Ben Gun.  
- لقد أراد أن يزور «بن غان».

### 2. Why did Jim leave the fort?

(SB)

- لماذا غادر «جيم» الحصن؟  
- He thought it was much nicer to be outside the fort and to find the boat.  
- كان يعتقد أنه من الأجمل أن تكون خارج الحصن لكي تجد القارب.

### 3. Where did Jim find the boat?

(SB)

- أين وجد «جيم» القارب؟  
- He found it by a white rock inside a tent made of animal skins.  
- وجده بالقرب من صخرة بيضاء داخل خيمة مصنوعة من جلود الحيوانات.

### 4. What did Jim find near a white rock?

(SB)

- ما الذي وجده «جيم» بالقرب من صخرة بيضاء؟  
- He found a small boat.  
- لقد وجد مركباً صغيراً.

### 5. Who did Jim see through the window of the Hispaniola and what were they doing?

(SB)

- من الذي رآه «جيم» من خلال نافذة السفينة «هيسبانيولا» وماذا كانوا يفعلون؟  
- He saw Hands and another pirate fighting each other.  
- لقد رأى «هاندز» وقرصاناً آخر يتقاتلان مع بعضهما البعض.

### ❖ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- If the pirates got inside the north of the fort, the group would be in .....  
a. trick      b. trouble      c. noise      d. happiness
- ..... was going to attack jim with his sword but Gray killed him.  
a. Anderson      b. Hands      c. Hunter      d. Joyce
- Captain Smollett was hurt, but Joyce and Hunter were .....  
a. alive      b. dead      c. ugly      d. nice
- Dr Livesey wanted to find ..... and he had the map in his pocket.  
a. Ben gun      b. Hands      c. Silver      d. Joyce
- Jim went to the Hispaniola in the night and cut the rope to the .....  
a. metal      b. boat      c. anchor      d. rope

### Answers

- |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. b | 4. a | 5. c |
|------|------|------|------|------|



## General Exercises On Chapter 8

- A** 1. Why do you think Jim cut the rope to the anchor for Hispaniola ?

(أسوان - نصر النوبة ٢٠٢٤)

2. Why did the captain think that they can win after the first battle ?

(أسبوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)

3. Jim proved to be brave in different situations. Explain.

- B** 1. Was Jim brave when he cut the rope on the Hispaniola ? Why ?

(الجيزة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤)

2. Jim was an adventurous boy. Illustrate.

(الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٤)

3. Do you think that Jim's plan was a good one ? Why ?

(الفيوم - ابشواي ٢٠٢٤)

- C** 1. Why do you think there were two men to protect the north side?

2. In your point of view, did the Captain and his men prepare well for the first fight with the Pirates? How did they do that?

3. Captain Smollett studied the situation well and was a good leader for the first fight. To what extent do you agree with this sentence? Why?

- D** 1. The Pirates' first attack was just the beginning. Illustrate.

2. Joyce did a great job before his death. Discuss.

3. Despite their big number, the Pirates lost the first fight against Captain Smollett's men. Give two reasons.

- E** 1. Compared to Silver, Captain Smollett was more efficient? Do you agree? Why / Why not?

2. "But five of them will never walk again." What does this sentence mean?

3. "Have the pirates gone?" asked Captain Smollett weakly. What can we infer from this question?





## I VOCABULARY

away from	بعيداً عن	paddle (d) (n - v)	مُجَدَّف - يُجَدِّف
bandage (n)	ضَمَّادَة	painfully (adv)	بشكل مؤلِم
catch - caught -	يَقْبِضُ عَلَى - يَمْسِكُ بِـ	pick (ed) (v)	يَتَنَاوَل - يَلْتَقِطُ
caught (v)		reach (ed) (v)	يَتَنَاوَل - يَصِلُ إِلَى
close (d) (v - adj)	يُغْلِقُ - قَرِيب	rocky (adj)	صَخْرِيّ
come any closer	يَقْتَرِبُ أَكْثَر	sail (ed) (n - v)	بِشَرَاةٍ - يَنْجِرُ
correct (adj)	صَحِيح	shallow (adj)	ضَخْل - غَيْرَ عَمِيق
dead (adj)	مَيِّت	shoulder (n)	كَتِف
deck (n)	سَطْحُ السَّفِينَةِ	steer (ed) (v)	يُوجِّه
dirty (adj)	مُتَسَيِّخ - قَذِر	thirsty (adj)	عَطْشَان
empty (adj)	فَارِغ	towards (prep.)	بِجَاه
flat (adj)	مُسْتَوِي - مُسَطَّح	weapon (n)	سِلَاح
getting closer	يَدْنُو - يَقْتَرِبُ أَكْثَر	wet (adj)	مُتَبَلِّل - رَطْب
give a cry	يَصْرُخ	worried (adj)	قَلِق
lying (adj)	مُفَدَّد - رَاقِد	wound (ed) (n - v)	جُرْح - يَجْرَحُ
mast (n)	صَارِي السَّفِينَةِ	wreck (n)	خَطَامُ السَّفِينَةِ
move (d) (v)	يَتَحَرَّكُ	wreck (ed) (v)	تَتَحَطَّمُ السَّفِينَةُ

## Words and their definitions

- ▶ **bandage (n)** : a long piece of cloth that you can put around an injury ضَمَّادَة
- ▶ **catch (v)** : to stop someone from escaping يَقْبِضُ عَلَى - يَمْسِكُ بِـ
- ▶ **deck (n)** : the top part of a ship where you can walk سَطْحُ السَّفِينَةِ
- ▶ **flat (adj)** : smooth and level مُسْتَوِي - مُسَطَّح
- ▶ **mast (n)** : the tall pole which carries the sails on a ship صَارِي السَّفِينَةِ
- ▶ **reach (v)** : to move your hand or arm forward to hold or take something يَصِلُ إِلَى
- ▶ **shallow (adj)** : not deep; measuring only a short distance from the top to the bottom ضَخْل - غَيْرَ عَمِيق
- ▶ **shoulder (n)** : the part of your body between your arms and your neck كَتِف
- ▶ **wound (n)** : an injury, especially a deep cut from a knife; a sword, etc. جُرْح
- ▶ **wreck (n)** : a ship that is badly damaged and cannot be used again خَطَامُ السَّفِينَةِ



## II CHAPTER NINE IN POINTS

1. Jim was very thirsty and then saw the ship but nobody was sailing it.
2. Jim decided to go to the ship and could climb to it through a rope.
3. Jim saw Hands and the man he was fighting. Jim thought they were dead but then Hands asked for water. Jim brought him some. Jim asked Hands to call him captain.
4. Hands agreed to help Jim take the ship to the north if Jim gave him some food and drink, and helped him with his wound.
5. Hands helped Jim sail the ship and stop it without an anchor. Jim knew Hands was not honest and was planning something.
6. Hands sent Jim to get him some water and then Hands moved painfully and picked a knife and hid it. Jim saw him.
7. Jim knew Hands could not hurt him until the ship stopped in a safe place. Hands tried to attack Jim. Jim moved quickly, got a gun but it didn't work.
8. Jim was good at games and could easily escape from Hands. Jim climbed the mast and could repair the gun.
9. Hands climbed the mast as well and could throw his knife into Jim's shoulder. The gun fired at Hands who fell down into the sea.
10. Luckily, the knife went through a small piece of Jim's skin. Jim took it out, found a bandage for the wound, put down most of the sails, and jumped into the shallow water, leaving the ship half on the beach and half in the water.

## III TEXT OF CHAPTER NINE

### Jim Hawkins:

It was very hot and I was thirsty. The trees were near now, but before I could feel happy, I saw the Hispaniola sailing around. I was so thirsty that I did not know whether I would be happy or sad if the pirates found me.

I watched the Hispaniola and saw that it went east, then west, then stopped. Then it did the same again and again. **1** Nobody

was sailing it! But, where were the men? I thought if I could get onto the ship, I could return it to Captain Smollett.



### Suggested Questions

- 1 How was the Hispaniola moving ?



I started to paddle the boat, sometimes hitting waves, but slowly getting closer to the ship. As I got nearer, I saw nobody on the ship. It was so close that I could almost touch it. Suddenly, the wind changed and the ship was almost on top of me. I held onto a rope at the side of the ship just before it hit my little boat, which went under the waves. So, I found myself on the Hispaniola, with no other boat to save me.

I climbed up onto the deck, which seemed empty. The wind blew and the sails moved to the right, and then I saw them: Hands and the man he was fighting **2**.

I thought they were both dead, but then Hands said weakly:

“Water!”

### Suggested Questions

- 2** What were Hands and the other pirate doing on the Hispaniola ?

I went downstairs. The pirates had broken all the cupboard doors when they were looking for the map, and the floor was dirty with sand and mud from the island. I found some water and some food, which I put in my bag, and I went back to give the water to Hands. He drank all of it, very quickly.

“Are you hurt?” I asked him.

“With a doctor, I’ll be fine,” he said. “And where have you been?”

“Well, I’ve decided to take the ship, so you must now call me Captain,” I said.

He looked at me angrily, but he also looked very ill.

“Also, Mr Hands, we can’t have this flag on the ship,”

I said, and then I went to take down the black pirate flag.

Hands looked at me, and then said, “You’ll want to go to the island, won’t you, Captain Hawkins? Let’s talk.”

“That’s a good idea,” I agreed.

“I don’t think you can sail this ship,” Hands said.

“So, if you give me food and drink, and help me with my wound, I’ll help you.”

“OK,” I said, “But I’m not going back to where the ship was before. We’re going to the north of the island.”

“The north?” he asked. “Of course, I’ll sail the ship wherever you want to go!”

So, I agreed to help him. I found a bandage to put on his wound and I also gave him some food and some more water. He soon looked better.

He told me how to sail the ship. It moved quickly along the coast of Treasure Island and soon we could see the rocky north of the island. I felt good. I had water and food. The only thing that worried me was Hands. He



looked at me all the time and I knew that he was planning something.

We arrived near the north of the island, and Hands told me how to stop the ship without an anchor. Then we sat down to eat.

### Suggested Questions

- 3 Do you think Hands was an honest man ? Why ? Why not ?

“Could you go downstairs and get me some more water?” he asked.

I did not think for a minute that Hands was an honest man. He wanted me to leave the deck for a reason 3 but I did not know what this was. However, I also knew that Hands was not a clever man, so I agreed to go.



I went downstairs, made a lot of noise, then took off my shoes and went quietly to another part of the ship, where I could see him. He was moving slowly and painfully across the deck, where he picked up a knife. He then hid the knife in his jacket and sat down where he was.

Now, I knew that he could move, that he had a weapon, and that he planned to hurt me 4. I did not know what he planned to do after that, but I knew that he could not hurt me until the ship stopped in a safe place near the island.

### Suggested Questions

- 4 What do you think Hands planned to do with Jim ?

I went back downstairs, put on my shoes and returned with a bottle of water. Hands was sitting quietly, and took the bottle without saying thank you. Then he said, “Look, the wind has changed. If we move the ship now, we’ll be safe.”

We had only two miles to go to the shore. It was difficult to get to the correct place on the coast, but Hands told me what to do. This part of the island was full of trees and we could see the wreck of an old ship lying on a flat beach.

“We can stop there, on the beach,” said Hands.

I steered the ship slowly onto the beach, where it stopped with a low noise. I was so excited to arrive back at the island that I forgot to watch Hands. I suddenly turned round and there he was, standing with a knife in his hand.

I cried out and he jumped at me. I moved quickly to one side and he fell on the deck. Before he could stand up again, I took a gun from my jacket. However, the gun was wet from my journey and it did not work. I was very angry with myself.



I was surprised at how fast he could move with the wound in his leg. As he ran towards me, I got ready to run away from him again, and he stopped. I remembered a game that I used to play with my friends in Black Hill Cove when one of us would try to catch the other. I was always good at this game and I thought that I could easily run away from this older pirate with a bad leg.

At that moment, a wave hit the Hispaniola. When the ship moved, we both fell over and I nearly fell onto Hands. Before he could stand, I decided to climb up the mast of the ship. Up in the sails, I had time to repair my gun and soon it would be ready to fire again.

Hands looked up at me and saw my plan. He, too, started to climb the sails, but he could only climb slowly because of his bad leg. Before he was near me, I had the gun ready.

"If you come any closer, Mr Hands, you will be dead!"

He stopped and I could see he was thinking about what he could do.

"You're clever, Jim Hawkins," he said. "You've won."

I started to laugh, thinking I was clever, when suddenly he threw something at me. His knife flew through the air and hit me in the shoulder.

I was so surprised that, without knowing how, my gun fired.

Hands gave a cry and fell down into the sea. I never saw him again 5 .

#### Suggested Questions

5 What happened to Hands at the end ?

The knife passed through my shoulder into the wood of the mast, so I could not move. It hurt badly. It took a long time before I could think. When I finally looked at the knife, I saw that it only went through a small piece of skin. It was not difficult to take out.

I climbed back to the deck and found a bandage for my wound. I was now alone on the ship and it was nearly dark. I quickly took down all the sails I could reach and then jumped down into the shallow water. I walked onto the sand, leaving the Hispaniola half on the beach and half in the water.

## IV QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

### Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers

#### 1 Longman website questions

أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونغمان

1. "I didn't know whether I would be happy or sad if the pirates found me," said Jim.

What did this reflect about Jim's character at that time ?

- «لم أعرف ما إذا ما كنت سعيدًا أم حزينًا لو أن القراصنة عثروا عليّ» قال جيم. ماذا يعكس ذلك عن

شخصية جيم في ذلك الوقت ؟



- Jim is torn between the desire to be rescued and his fear of the pirates. He is starting to understand the danger of the situation.

- جيم ممزق بين الرغبة في أن يتم انقاذه وجوفه من القراصنة، بدأ يفهم خطر الموقف.

## 2. If you were in Jim's place, would you give the water you found on the ship to Hands ? Why ?

- لو أنك مكان جيم هل كنت ستعطي الماء الذي وجدته على السفينة إلى «هاندز» ؟ لماذا.

- Yes, I would give him water as he is an injured man. It has nothing to do with whether I trust him or not.

- نعم كنت سأعطيهِ الماء لأنه رجل مصاب بغض النظر عن أنى أثق به أم لا.

## 3. Why do you think Jim trusted Hands and helped him ?

- في اعتقادك، لماذا وثق "جيم" في "هاندز" وساعده؟

- Because Hand was weak and injured. Jim also needed someone to help him sail the ship.

- لأن هاندز كان ضعيفاً ومصاباً و"جيم" أيضاً كان يحتاج لأحد يساعد في قيادة السفينة.

## 4. In your opinion, do you think Jim was lucky ? Why ?

- في رأيك هل تعتقد أن جيم كان محظوظاً ولماذا ؟

- Jim was lucky that he survived the encounter with Hands and that he was able to escape the pirates.

- جيم كان محظوظاً لأنه نجا من المواجهة مع «هاندز» وأنه استطاع الهرب من القراصنة.

## 2 SB, El-Moasser & Previous Exams

أسئلة من الكتاب المدرسي وكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة مع اجاباتها المقترحة

### 1. "I was so thirsty that I did not know whether I would be happy or sad if the Pirates found me." What do you think Jim means by this?

- «لقد كنت عطشاً جداً لدرجة أنني لم أكن أعرف ما إذا كنت سأكون سعيداً أم حزناً إذا وجدني القراصنة». في رأيك ماذا يقصد «جيم» بهذا؟

- He meant that he was so thirsty that he wanted to find water anyway.

- كان يقصد أنه كان عطشاً جداً لدرجة أنه كان يريد أن يجد الماء بأي طريقة.

### 2. If you were Jim, would you sail to the Hispaniola on your own?

- لو كنت مكان «جيم»، هل ستبحر إلى السفينة «هيسبانيولا» بمفردك؟

- No, I wouldn't. The ship was under the Pirates' control.

- لا، لن أفعل. لقد كانت السفينة تحت سيطرة القراصنة.

### 3. How do you think Jim tried to prove to be strong?

- في رأيك كيف أثبت «جيم» أنه قوي؟

- He climbed up the mast quickly.

- صعد الصاري بسرعة.

### 4. How do you think Jim was good to Hands on the ship ? (أسوان - ادقو ٢٠٢٤)

- في اعتقادك كيف كان جيم طيباً مع «هاندز» على السفينة ؟

- He gave Hands some water and a bandage.

- أعطى «هاندز» بعض الماء وضمادة.



### 5. To what extent did Jim prove to be brave?

- إلى أي مدى أثبت «جيم» أنه شجاع؟
- He sailed out to the ship alone and got onto it just as his small boat was destroyed.
- أبحر إلى السفينة بمفرده وصعد إليها في لحظة تحطم قاربه الصغير.

### 6. What do you think was the reason that the Hispaniola was moving in different directions and stopped several times ?

(أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

- في اعتقادك ما هو السبب أن السفينة كانت تتحرك في اتجاهات مختلفة وتوقفت عدة مرات ؟
- The Hispaniola no longer had the anchor rope and the wind was moving it. No body sailing it.
- السفينة لم يعد لها حبل الهلب «التثبيت» وكانت الرياح تحركها. لم يكن أحد يقودها.

### 7. If you were Jim, would you trust Hands and help him ?

Why / Why not ?

(الإسكندرية - شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- لو أنك مكان جيم، هل كانت تثق في «هاندز» أن يساعدك؟ لماذا؟ لماذا لا؟
- No, I wouldn't trust Hands because he was one of the pirates.
- لا لم أكن أثق به فهو أحد القراصنة.

### 8. Why do you think Jim wanted to take the Pirates' flag down from the ship?

(WB)

- في رأيك لماذا أراد «جيم» إنزال علم القراصنة من السفينة؟
- To show that he was the captain then, not the Pirates.
- لإظهار أنه كان القبطان في ذلك الوقت، وليس القراصنة.

### 9. What does a flag mean to a ship?

(WB)

- ماذا يعني العلم للسفينة؟
- It shows who (or which country) a ship belongs to.
- إنه يُظهر من يملك (أو إلى أي بلد تنتمي) السفينة.

### 10. In what way can Hands help Jim?

(WB)

- بأي طريقة يمكن أن يساعد «هاندز» «جيم»؟
- Hands knows how to sail the ship but Jim doesn't.
- كان «هاندز» يعرف كيف تبحر بالسفينة لكن «جيم» لا يعرف.

### 11. Why do you think Jim asked Hands to sail the ship to the north of the island?

- برأيك، لماذا طلب «جيم» من «هاندز» الإبحار بالسفينة إلى شمال الجزيرة؟
- I think he wanted to keep the ship away from the Pirates.
- أعتقد أنه أراد إبعاد السفينة عن القراصنة.



## 12. "Of course, I'll sail the ship wherever you want to go." Did Hands really help Jim? How? (SB)

- «بالطبع، سأبحر بالسفينة إلى أي مكان تريد الذهاب إليه». هل حقاً قام «هاندز» بمساعدة «جيم»؟ كيف؟
- Yes, he did. He helped Jim by showing him how to sail the ship.
- نعم لقد فعل. لقد ساعد «جيم» من خلال تعليمه كيفية الإبحار بالسفينة.

## 13. What kind of person do you think Hands was? Why? (SB)

- برأيك، أي نوع من الأشخاص كان «هاندز»؟ لماذا؟
- I think he was dishonest. He planned to kill Jim with a knife.
- أعتقد أنه كان غير أمين. لقد خطط لقتل «جيم» بسكين.

## 14. "I went downstairs and made a lot of noise, then took off my shoes and went quietly to another part of the ship." Why do you think Jim does this? (SB)

- «نزلت إلى الطابق السفلي وأحدثت ضجة كبيرة، ثم خلعت حذائي وذهبت بهدوء إلى جزء آخر من السفينة». لماذا يفعل «جيم» هذا؟
- Because he wanted to watch Hands secretly to see what he would do.
- لأنه أراد أن يراقب «هاندز» سرّاً ليرى ماذا سيفعل.

## 15. "I went downstairs and made a lot of noise, then took off my shoes and went quietly to another part of the ship." What does this tell you about Jim? (SB)

- «نزلت إلى الطابق السفلي وأحدثت ضجة كبيرة، ثم خلعت حذائي وذهبت بهدوء إلى جزء آخر من السفينة». ماذا يخبرك هذا عن «جيم»؟
- It shows that Jim is clever and does not trust Hands.
- يدل على أن «جيم» ذكي ولا يثق في «هاندز».

## 16. Jim was clever. Explain (SB)

- كان جيم ذكياً - فسر ذلك؟
- He quietly watched Hands and realised he cannot be trusted.
- راقب «هاندز» بهدوء وأدرك أنه لا يمكن الوثوق به.

## Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students

◀ أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الازهر واجابتها

### 1. After he had left the Hispaniola on the small boat, why did Jim return to it? (SB)

- بعد أن غادر «جيم» السفينة «هيسبانيولا» على متن القارب الصغير، لماذا عاد إليها؟
- He thought nobody was on the ship, so he thought he could return the Hispaniola to Captain Smollett.
- كان يعتقد أنه لا يوجد أحد على متن السفينة، لذلك اعتقد أنه يستطيع إعادة السفينة «هيسبانيولا» إلى القبطان «سموليت».

### 2. How did the Hispaniola look when Jim came nearer to it? (WB)

- كيف كانت تبدو السفينة «هيسبانيولا» عندما اقترب «جيم» منها؟
- It looked empty.
- لقد بدت فارغة.



### 3. What happened to Ben Gun's boat?

(SB)

- ماذا حدث لقارب «بن غان»؟

- The Hispaniola hit it and it went into the sea.

- لقد صدمته السفينة «هيسبانيولا» وغرق البحر.

### 4. How was Jim saved after the Hispaniola hit his boat?

(WB)

- كيف تم إنقاذ «جيم» بعد أن اصطدمت السفينة «هيسبانيولا» بقاربه؟

- He held onto a rope at the side of the ship.

- لقد أمسك بحبل على جانب السفينة.

### 5. What did Jim give the Pirate (Hands)?

(SB)

- ماذا أعطى «جيم» للقرصان «هاندز»؟

- Some water.

- بعض المياه.

### 6. Why does Hands call Jim 'Captain Hawkins'?

(WB)

- لماذا ينادي «هاندز» على «جيم» بلقب «الكابتن هوكينز»؟

- Because Jim said he was taking over the ship from the Pirates so he is now the captain.

- لأن «جيم» قال أنه سيتولى قيادة السفينة من القراصنة، لذا فهو الآن القبطان.

### 7. "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship." What flag did Jim mean?

(WB)

- «أيضاً يا سيد «هاندز»، لا يمكننا رفع هذا العلم على السفينة.» ما العلم الذي يقصده «جيم»؟

- The Pirates' flag.

- إنه علم القراصنة.

### 8. How did Jim take the Hispaniola back to the island?

(SB)

- كيف أعاد «جيم» السفينة «هيسبانيولا» إلى الجزيرة؟

- The Pirate, Hands, showed him how to sail the ship.

- لقد أخبره القرصان «هاندز» كيفية الإبحار بالسفينة.

### 9. What did Hands plan to do with Jim?

(WB)

- ماذا خطط «هاندز» ليفعل مع «جيم»؟

- He planned to kill him.

- لقد خطط لقتله.

### ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It was very hot and Jim was .....

a. hungry

b. sad

c. thirsty

d. ugly

2. .... wanted to put down the Hispaniola's flag.

a. Hands

b. Jim

c. Silver

d. Dr Livesy

3. Jim found a ..... on the ship and put it on Hands' wound.

a. fruit

b. bandage

c. rock

d. tissue

4. Hands picked up a ..... and hid it in his jacket.

a. rifle

b. gun

c. knife

d. weapon

5. Hands gave a cry and fell down into the sea because Jim's gun .....

a. played

b. hurt

c. hired

d. fired

### Answers

1. c

2. b

3. b

4. c

5. d



# General Exercises On Chapter 9

## ★ Answer the following questions :

**A** 1. Jim was in trouble, but he could turn things upside down. Explain.

(الأقصر - ارمنت ٢٠٢٤)

2. Why do you think Jim watched Hands secretly on Hispaniola ? What does this show about Jim ?

(البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)

3. Do you think Jim succeeded in his adventure on the Hispaniola ?

(الحيزة - كرداسة ٢٠٢٤)

**B** 1. Jim wasn't afraid of looking for adventure everywhere. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

2. Thirst led Jim to get control on the Hispaniola. Illustrate.

3. "Nobody was sailing it!" Why do you think Jim knew that?

**C** 1. Ben Gun's small boat was very useful to Jim. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

2. What's your opinion of Jim's reaction to Hands when he asked for water?

3. In your opinion, was Jim serious when he told Hands to call him "Captain" ?

**D** 1. If you were Jim, how would you behave with Hands?

2. Although Jim was kind to Hands, Hands was a wicked and cunning person. Illustrate.

3. "So if you give me food and drink, and help me with my wound, I'll help you." What do you think of the speaker?

**E** 1. "If you come any closer, Mr Hands, you will be dead!" Why did the speaker say so?

2. At the end of his adventure with Hands, Jim managed to kill him. Do you think he deserved it? Why?

3. Jim was lucky in his fight with Hands. Do you think so? Why / Why not?





## I VOCABULARY

adventure (n)	مغامرة	now that (conj.)	لأن - بما أن
alive (adj)	علي قيد الحياة	parrot (n)	ببغاء
anchor (n)	مرساة (الهرب)	pleased (adj)	سعيد
anymore (adv)	بعد الآن - مرة أخرى	remain (ed) (v)	يظل - يبقى
badly (adv)	بشدة - بشكل سيء	rule (n)	قاعدة - قانون
bring - brought - brought (v)	يُخْضِر	run into (v)	يصطدم بـ - يصادف
care (ed) (v - n)	يهتم - اهتمام	save (d) (v)	يُنْقِذ
dark (n - adj)	الظلام - مُظْلِم	somewhere (adv)	مكان ما
find my way	أجد طريقي	still (adv)	مازال
frightened (adj)	خائف	take back to (v)	يُعيد إلى
gang (n)	عصابة	torch (n)	شُعْلَة - كُشَاف
go back (v)	يعود	trap (ped) (v)	يحتجز - يقع في فخ
join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى	trapped (adj)	مُخْتَجَز
leader (n)	قائد	trial (n)	مُحاوَلَة - مُحاكَمَة
look after	يرعى	unusual (adj)	غير مألوف
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	waste (d) (v)	يُبْذَر - يُضَيِّع
more of a man	أكثر رجولة	weak (adj)	ضعيف

## Words and their definitions

▶ <b>alive (adj)</b>	: living; not dead	علي قيد الحياة
▶ <b>care (v)</b>	: to be concerned about or interested in something	يهتم - يرعى
▶ <b>rules (n)</b>	: instructions about what you can and can't do	قواعد
▶ <b>torch (n)</b>	: a stick that you burn at one end for light	شُعْلَة
▶ <b>trapped (adj)</b>	: unable to leave or escape	مُخْتَجَز

## II CHAPTER TEN IN POINTS

1. Jim was excited to go back and looked forward to telling his friends about his latest adventure.
2. Jim was trapped because the fort was full of pirates who caught him when captain Flint said "Who is it ? Who is it ?".



3. Silver asked Jim either to stay alone or join them because his friends thought he left them.
4. Jim was clever and could show to the Pirates that they needed him because he knew where the ship was and could help them so it was them to decide.
5. Morgan tried to kill Jim but Silver shouted at him and stopped him. Silver said he liked Jim and had never seen a better boy than Jim.
6. The other Pirates didn't like Silver or his plans and decide to talk alone away of Silver.
7. When the Pirates knew that Silver didn't have the ship, they didn't want him to be the captain
8. Silver asked Jim to help him and then Silver could look after Jim.
9. Silver told Jim that he (Silver) was with Mr Trelawney and his men and that the doctor gave him the map. Jim was surprised.
10. The other pirates talked to each others and went towards Silver and Jim.

### III TEXT OF CHAPTER TEN

#### Jim Hawkins:

At last, I was back on the island. The ship was safe from the pirates, ready for our men to go back to sea. I looked forward to telling my friends about my latest adventure and started to walk back across the island.



I remembered the map, so I knew how to return to the place where I had met Ben Gun for the first time.

#### Suggested Questions

- 1 Why did Jim walk slowly towards the fort ?

As I continued, it was very dark. It was difficult for me to find my way, but the light of the moon helped me. When I was near the fort, I went more slowly. I did not want my friends to think I was a pirate 1. Suddenly, I saw a red light through trees. What was it? Then I saw that there was a big fire next to the fort. I thought that this was unusual, as Captain Smollett was always very careful not to waste wood for the fire.

I quietly went back inside the dark fort, and I was very pleased to hear the men inside talking quietly. However, I realised that they were not good guards because nobody saw me return.

I was about to climb into my bed when I heard the words, "Who is it? Who is it?" I realised that it was Captain Flint, Silver's parrot!

Everyone in the room woke up, and I heard someone call out: "Who's



there?" It was Long John Silver! I turned to run away but I ran into a man, who held on to me. I was trapped.

"Bring a torch, Dick," said Silver.

When he returned with a torch, I could see inside the room. I realised that the fort was now full of pirates 2.

Our food was on the table, too, but I could not see any of my friends. Was it possible that they were all dead?

There were five pirates standing in the room. Another pirate lay in bed. He looked badly hurt. Silver looked tired. His parrot was on his shoulder, and his clothes were dirty.

"So, Jim Hawkins!" said Silver. "It's nice of you to visit us. You don't have to stand up for Jim!" he told his men and they lay down on their beds again.

"I knew you were clever," Silver said to me.

"I always wanted you to be one of us, because I was like you when

I was a boy. Now, you can't go back to your friends because they think you've left them. So, unless you want to stay on your own, you'll have to join us now."

I was pleased to hear that my friends were still alive 3, but I was not happy to hear that they did not want me anymore.

"Now, you don't have to say yes," said Silver. "I can't tell you what to do."

"I'll answer you," I said, in a weak voice. "First, I want to know where my friends are."

"Yesterday morning," explained Silver, "Dr Livesy came down with a white flag. He told me that the Hispaniola was not there any more.

We looked round and he was right! The ship was gone! Then the doctor said that we could have the fort. I asked him how many of them were in the fort, and he said there were four, and one of them was hurt. And he said he did not know or care where you were. So, here we are. I don't know where they are now."

"Do I have to decide now?" I asked.

"Yes, you have to decide now," said Silver.

"Very well. But there are some things you need to know. First, you have lost your ship, you have lost your treasure and you have lost many of your men. How did you lose them?

### Suggested Questions

2 What happened to the fort ?



### Suggested Questions

3 What was the thing that pleased Jim to hear ?



It was me! I heard your plans on the Hispaniola and told Captain Smollett. And I cut the anchor ropes of the ship, and took it to a place that you don't know. I'm not frightened of you! You can kill me if you want, but remember: if you don't kill me, I'll help you at your trial. So, now you have to decide. What will you do with me?"

I stopped talking and all the men looked at me angrily.

"That was the boy who knew Black Dog in Bristol!" said one of the pirates called Morgan. "And he was the boy who got the map from Billy Bones!" Morgan then stood up with a knife.

"Stop!" called Silver. "Do you think that you're the captain now? You do as I say!"

Morgan and the other pirates were quiet.

"I like this boy," Silver continued. "I've never seen a better boy than him. He's more of a man than any of you."

The other pirates did not look happy and they started to talk quietly to each other.

"What are you saying?" said Silver.

"We don't like all of your rules," said one of the pirates. "We're going to talk together without you. You can't stop us."

Soon, all the men left the room, and only Silver and I remained.

"Listen Jim," said Silver. "I don't think that they want me to be the captain any more. But I can look after you, if you look after me."

"Do you mean that they want to kill you?"

"They don't need me now that I don't have the ship. But if you save me, I can save you."

I was surprised to hear this. He was the leader of the gang of pirates, and now he wanted the help of a boy 4.

"I'll do what I can," I told him.

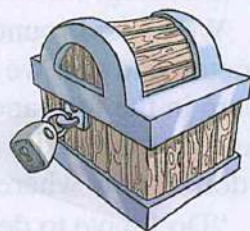
"You're a good boy!" he said. "I know you've got the ship safe somewhere. I don't know how you did it, but you did. Remember, I'm now with Mr Trelawney and his men. So, why did the doctor give me the map, Jim?"

He saw that I was surprised.

"Yes, he gave it to me. He must have a plan, you know. Let's hope it's a good one."

#### Suggested Questions

- 4 Why was Jim surprised at Silver's words ?





I looked out of the fort and saw the pirates talking in a group. One of the men had some paper and a knife and the others were watching him. Then they started to walk back towards us.

"They're coming!" I told Silver.

"Let them come!" he said.

## IV QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

### Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers

#### 1 Longman website questions

أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونجمان

#### 1. What do you think the most useful actin Jim took on the island was ?

- في اعتقادك ما هو أكثر الأعمال المفيدة التي قام بها جيم على الجزيرة؟

- Jim was very helpful in cutting the anchor rope, which enabled him to control the ship.

- جيم قطع حبل الهلب الخاصة بالسفينة التي مكنته من السيطرة على السفينة.

#### 2. In your opinion, how would Jim have known his way to the fort in the darkness without the light of the moon ?

- في رأيك كيف عرف جيم طريقه إلى الحصن في الظلام بدون ضوء القمر؟

- Jim was familiar with the island, having been there for a while. He likely knew the path and was able to navigate using his memory.

- كانت الجزيرة مألوفاً لجيم فكان يعرف الطريق باستخدام ذاكرته؟

#### 3. Why do you think some of the pirates didn't want Jim to be their captain ?

- لماذا تعتقد بعض القراصنة أن جيم لا يصلح أن يكون القائد؟

- The pirates likely did not trust Jim's ability to lead them. He was young and inexperienced.

- القراصنة لم يثقوا في قدرة جيم على القيادة فقد كان صغير السن وعديم الخبرة.

#### 2 SB, El-Moasser & Previous Exams

أسئلة من الكتاب المدرسي وكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة مع اجاباتها المقترحة

#### 1. To what extent was Jim successful in his adventure on the Hispaniola?

- إلى أي مدى نجح «جيم» في مغامرته على السفينة «هيسبانيولا»؟

- He was very successful. He took over the ship and took it away from the Pirates' control.

- لقد كان ناجحاً جداً. لقد استولى على السفينة وأبعد عنها سيطرة القراصنة.

#### 2. If you were Jim, would you join the Pirates? Why/Why not?

(أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

- لو كنت «جيم»، هل ستتنضم إلى القراصنة؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟

- No, I wouldn't. They were all evil criminals.

- لا، لن أفعل. لقد كانوا جميعاً مجرمون أشرا.



### 3. Silver tried to mislead Jim concerning Jim's friends. Explain how.

- حاول «سيلفر»، تضليل «جيم»، فيما يتعلق بأصدقائه. اشرح كيف؟
- He tried to make Jim think that his friends thought he had left them and would never want him with them again.
- حاول أن يجعله يعتقد أن أصدقائه ظنوا أنه تركهم ولن يريدوه معهم مرة أخرى.

### 4. Some of the pirates do not want Silver to be their captain any more. Explain.

- (أسيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤)
- بعض القراصنة لا يريدون سيلفر أن يكون القائد بعد الآن. فسر ذلك.
- Silver wanted Jim to be one of the pirates but Jim was the one who spoiled all their plans so, they didn't like silver's rules.
- أراد سيلفر أن يكون جيم أحد القراصنة وهو الشخص الذي أفسد كل خططهم لذلك لم يعجبوا بقواعد سيلفر.

### 5. When Jim arrived at the fort, he was sad, then he was very happy but worried. Explain. (WB)

- عندما وصل «جيم» إلى الحصن، كان حزيناً ثم أصبح سعيداً جداً ولكنه قلق. اشرح ذلك.
- He was sad because at first, he thought his friends were dead. He was happy when he found they were alive, but worried because he did not know where they were.
- كان حزيناً لأنه في البداية ظن أن أصدقائه قد ماتوا، وأصبح سعيداً عندما وجدهم على قيد الحياة، لكنه كان قلقاً لأنه لم يكن يعرف مكانهم.

### 6. Jim was in trouble, but he could turn things upside down. Explain. (WB)

- كان «جيم» في ورطة، لكنه استطاع أن يقلب الأمور رأساً على عقب. اشرح ذلك.
- Although he was with the Pirates - and in trouble - he could use his knowledge of where the ship was to have power over Silver.
- على الرغم من وجوده مع القراصنة - وفي ورطة - إلا أنه استطاع استخدام معرفته بمكان السفينة ليتمكن من السيطرة على «سيلفر».

### 7. "I'm not frightened of you! You can kill me if you want, but remember: If you don't kill me, I'll help you at your trial. So, now you have to decide. What will you do with me?" Why do you think Jim was not frightened of Silver? (WB)

- «أنا لست خائفاً منك! يمكنك قتلي إذا أردت، لكن تذكر: إذا لم تقتلني، فسوف أساعدك في محاكمتك. لذا، عليك الآن أن تقرر. ماذا سوف تفعل بي؟ لماذا تعتقد أن «جيم» لم يكن خائفاً من «سيلفر»؟
- Because Silver knew that Jim had the ship, so he could not do anything to Jim.
- لأن «سيلفر» كان يعلم أن «جيم» كانت لديه السفينة، لذلك لن يتمكن من فعل أي شيء ضد «جيم».

### 8. Silver had two offers to Jim and both were surprising. Explain. (WB)

- سيلفر كان لديه عرضان لـ «جيم»؛ وكلاهما كان مثيراً للدهشة. اشرح ذلك.
- First, he asks Jim to join the Pirates, then he asks Jim to help him, perhaps against the pirates.
- أولاً، طلب من «جيم» الانضمام إلى القراصنة، ثم طلب من «جيم» مساعدته، ربما ضد القراصنة.



**9. Would you prefer to have Silver as a friend or an enemy? Why? (WB)**

- هل تفضل أن يكون «سيلفر» صديقك أو عدوك؟ لماذا؟

- I would like to have him as an enemy. He was dishonest.

- أود أن يكون عدواً. لقد كان غير أمين.

**Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students**

◀ أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر واجابتها

**1. How did Jim know where things were on the island? (SB)**

- كيف عرف «جيم» أين كانت الأشياء في الجزيرة؟

- He remembered the map. - لقد تذكر الخريطة.

**2. Why was Jim surprised to see a fire next to the fort? (SB)**

- لماذا تفاجأ «جيم» برؤية حريق بجوار الحصن؟

- Captain Smollett did not usually waste wood.

- لم يكن الكابتن «سموليت» يهدر الحطب عادة.

**3. Why did Jim think the guards were not good? (SB)**

- لماذا ظن «جيم» أن الحراس لم يكونوا جيدين؟

- They did not see him when he walked in. - لم يروه عندما دخل.

**4. Why did Silver say that Jim had to join him? (SB)**

- لماذا قال «سيلفر» أن «جيم» يجب أن ينضم إليه؟

- Because he was like Jim as a boy, and because Jim was clever.

- لأنه كان مثل «جيم» عندما كان صبيّاً، ولأن «جيم» كان ذكياً.

**5. How did Silver take the fort? (SB)**

- كيف استولى «سيلفر» على الحصن؟

- Dr Livesy told him he could have it.

- لقد أخبره الدكتور «ليفسي» أنه يمكن أن يحصل عليه.

**6. Why did the Pirates no longer need Silver? (SB)**

- لماذا لم يعد القراصنة بحاجة إلى «سيلفر»؟

- Because he didn't have a ship any more. - لأنه لم يعد لديه سفينة.

**★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Jim looked forward to telling his friends about his latest .....  
a. measure      b. treasure      c. adventure      d. pleasure
2. Captain Smollett was always careful not to waste ..... for the fire.  
a. petrol      b. clay      c. oil      d. wood
3. Silver wanted ..... to be one of his men.  
a. Jim      b. Dr Livesy      c. Hunter      d. Ben Gun
4. .... stood up with a knife to hurt Jim.  
a. Silver      b. Morgan      c. Hands      d. Dr Livesy
5. Silver had the ..... of the treasure.  
a. map      b. mop      c. hat      d. cap

**Answers**

- |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. a | 4. c | 5. a |
|------|------|------|------|------|



# General Exercises On Chapter 10

## ★ Answer the following questions :

**A** 1. Why do you think Jim was able to walk around the island easily?

.....

2. Despite being young, Jim helped his friends a lot during their journey. Discuss.

.....

3. Jim noticed many things before getting into the fort, but he was trapped. Illustrate.

.....

**B** 1. Do you think it was Jim's mistake to be trapped in the fort? Why / Why not?

.....

2. If it hadn't been for Silver's parrot, Jim would have escaped. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

.....

3. Being trapped in the fort wasn't the only thing that disappointed Jim. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

.....

**C** 1. "So, unless you want to stay on your own, you'll have to join us now." Silver said to Jim. What can we infer from this sentence?

.....

2. "Now, you can't go back to your friends because they think you've left them." In your point of view, how did Jim feel on hearing these words?

.....

3. "And he said he did not know or care where you were." Do you think the speaker tells the truth? Why / Why not?

.....

**D** 1. What do you think of the pirates ?

(البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤)

.....

2. If you were Jim, would you join the pirates ? Why / Why not ?

(الجزيرة - الهرم ٢٠٢٤)

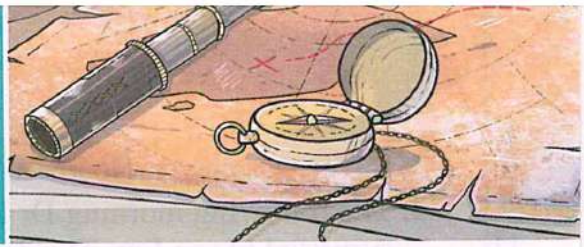
.....

3. "I'm not frightened of you" ! Do you think Jim was right to say this in front of Silver's men ?

(الدقهلية - تمى الأمديد ٢٠٢٤)

.....





## I VOCABULARY

agreement (n)	اتفاق - موافقة	patient (n - adj)	مريض - صبور
arrest (ed) (v)	يقبض علي	perhaps (adv)	ربما
be friends with	يُصادق	promise (d) (v)	يُعد - يعطي وعداً
come to an agreement	يتوصل لاتفاق	remind (ed) (v)	يُذكّر
except (for) (adv)	فيما عدا - باستثناء	right (n)	حق
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع - يتتبع	show - showed - shown (v)	يُوضّح - يُبين
forward (adv)	للأمام	sound (ed) (v)	يبدو
good (n)	الخير	stay safe	يبقي بأمان
jump (ed) (v - n)	قفزة - يقفز	trial (n)	محاكمة
let - let - let (v)	يسمح ل - يُدع	trick (ed) (n - v)	خدعة - يخدع
malaria (n)	مرض الملاريا	trust (ed) (v - n)	يثق - الثقة
negotiate (ed) (v)	يُفاوض - يتفاوض	turn (ed) (v)	يستدير - يلف
nervously (adv)	بتوتر - بعصبية	wake - woke - woken (v)	يوقظ - يستيقظ
nod (ded) (v - n)	يومئ - إيماءة		

## Words and their definitions

► <b>agreement (n)</b>	: a decision made by two or more people	اتفاق
► <b>arrest (v)</b>	: the police take someone away for doing something bad	يقبض علي
► <b>malaria (n)</b>	: a serious illness that comes from mosquitos	مرض الملاريا
► <b>negotiate (v)</b>	: discuss a situation to find a good result for everyone	يُفاوض - يتفاوض
► <b>nod (n)</b>	: a movement حركة of your head that gives someone a sign إشارة	إيماءة
► <b>promise (v)</b>	: say you will certainly do something	يُعد - يعطي وعداً

## II CHAPTER ELEVEN IN POINTS

1. The other pirates hand a paper to Silver that he is not the captain for many reasons. Silver's plans failed. He let Trelawney and his men leave. He stopped them following Trelawney, and because of the boy.
2. Silver defends himself and persuades them to remain the captain because it was the pirates who disobeyed him. They could be arrested in England and the doctor agreed to help them.



3. Silver was clever. He knew how to be friends with all pirates.
4. The following morning Dr Livesy came to check the patients and was surprised to see Jim. The doctor spoke to them all in a friendly way asking them to get better to take them to England for trial.
5. The doctor gave them medicine and asked to speak to Jim. Silver agreed although the other pirates were not happy.
6. Silver told them they needed Jim's help to find the treasure and the doctor's help as well.
7. Silver asked the doctor quietly to tell the other men that Silver helped him (the doctor) and saved the boy.
8. Jim told the doctor his story and that he had the ship in the north of the island, but he couldn't escape because Silver trusted him.
9. The doctor was happy. He said Jim saved their lives many times. The doctor told Silver it was difficult to find the treasure.
10. Silver said it was the only way to save his life and the boy's life as well. Silver asked Jim to stay close to him to look after each other.

### III TEXT OF CHAPTER ELEVEN

Jim Hawkins:

The pirates walked in through the door. One of the men was holding a piece of paper, and he nervously walked forward to give it to Silver.



Silver read it. "So, I'm not the captain now, is that it?" he said. "Can I have the torch for a minute, so I can read it better?"

"Don't try your tricks on us," said one of the pirates, called George.

"I'm still the captain until you tell me why I shouldn't be," said Silver.

"We can tell you," said George. "First, your plans haven't worked. Second, you let Trelawney and his men leave the fort, and we're sure that they have a plan. Third, you wouldn't let us follow them. And fourth, there's the boy! 1"

"Is that all?" asked Silver.

"That's enough, isn't it?"

said George.

"I'll answer each reason," said Silver. "First, who didn't do what I asked them to do? Anderson, Hands and you, George! If we are arrested when we return to England, it is because of those people! Second, we have

#### Suggested Questions

- 1 Why didn't the pirates want Silver to be their leader again?



a doctor on the island. He's important because some of us are very ill at the moment. The doctor and I came to an agreement so that he would help us. And the boy? He'll be useful if we need to negotiate. And what about reason three? Well, this is why we didn't follow them!" he continued, and showed them the treasure map.

I was very surprised and I did not understand why the doctor had given the map to him 2. The pirates, however, looked at it with wonder.

### Suggested Questions

2 Why was Jim surprised ?

"That's Flint's map!" said George. "But, how are we to take his treasure home if we don't have a ship?"

"Listen, George," said Silver. "You lost my boat, but I can find the treasure. So, who should be captain now?"

"Silver's right," said Morgan, and the other pirates agreed. Silver was still the captain.

### Suggested Questions

3 Do you think George was convinced with Silver's speech ?

The pirates now seemed happy, except for George 3. Silver made him guard the fort all night while the other men laughed and sang.

I lay down and thought about Silver. I understood that he was very clever. He knew how to be friends with all the pirates, at the same time as only thinking about himself. He would do and say anything to stay safe.

The next morning, a voice woke us all up (and I mean all of us, even George, the guard). It was Dr Livesy calling us. I was very happy to hear him, but also worried. I had left my friends and now I was with Silver's gang. What would Dr Livesy think?

"Good morning, Doctor," said Silver. "Come in! George will open the door for you. We've got a surprise for you, too!"

"Do you mean Jim?" asked Dr Livesy. He looked surprised as he came near us.

"That's right," said Silver.

The doctor did not speak for some time. Then he said, "Let me see your patients."

He walked into the fort and, with a small nod to me, walked up to the ill pirates. He talked to them as if they were any English patient, although he knew they were all dangerous men.

"I hope you took your medicine?" he said to George.

"Yes, sir, I did," he replied.

"Good, because now I'm a pirate's doctor, I want to keep you all healthy



so we can get you back to England for trial," he said.

The pirates looked at each other but they said nothing.

"Dick doesn't feel well," said Morgan.

"Let me look at you," the doctor replied.

"Yes, you have malaria 4 .

That's what happens when you sleep outside on an island like

this. I'm surprised that a clever man like Silver didn't realise."

He gave Dick some medicine, then said, "Now I'd like to talk to the boy, please."

"No!" said George.

"Be quiet!" shouted Silver. "Doctor, you've been kind to help us with our medicine, so you can talk to the boy. But first he must promise not to run away."

I agreed.

"Good. Now you can go outside, doctor, and you can talk to the boy through the window. He can stay inside," said Silver.

When the doctor went outside, the other pirates told Silver that they were not happy that the doctor could talk to me. Silver reminded them they did not know where the treasure was yet. They needed my help, and perhaps the doctor's help as well, until the time was right.

Silver took me to a window where I could talk to the doctor. When he knew the pirates could not hear, he spoke to the doctor, but he sounded different.

"Tell the others that I helped you, doctor," he said. "The boy will tell you how I saved him, too. If you help me, you will also help the boy stay safe."

"I think you're frightened!" said Dr Livesy.

"I'm not frightened," said Silver, "but I know you're a good man and you'll see the good in me. Now, I'll let you and Jim talk."

Silver walked away and sat down, where he could not hear us.

"Jim, what happened? Why did you leave us when we needed you?" the doctor asked me.

I felt very bad and started to cry. "I'm sorry, doctor! I was wrong. They were going to kill me, but Silver saved me. I must stay here now."

"No," said the doctor. "You can't stay here. One jump and you're out of the fort, and we can run."

"I can't," I said. "Silver trusts me now. But if they hurt me, I will have to tell them where the ship is. Because I got the ship! It's in the north of the island, half on a beach."

"You've got the ship!" said the doctor.

### Suggested Questions

4 What was wrong with Dick ?





I quickly told him my story.

"You've saved our lives many times on this journey," said the doctor. He then turned to Silver.

"It'll be dangerous to look for that treasure, Silver," he said. "Don't try to find it."

"But I can only save my life and the boy's life if I find it," Silver replied.

"OK, then keep the boy close to you. If you need help, shout. Goodbye, Jim," he said, and left the fort.

"We can look for the treasure now, Jim," said Silver. "You stay close to me. We'll look after each other."



## IV QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

### Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers

#### 1 Longman website questions

أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونجمان

#### 1. Do you agree that Silver should be the Captain ? Why ?

- هل توافق على أن سيلفر ينبغي أن يكون القائد ؟ ولماذا ؟

- No, Silver is a pirate, and his goals are not aligned with the crew. He is trying to deceive the crew.

- لا سيلفر من القراصنة وأهدافه ليست متوافقة مع الطاقم فهو يحاول أن يخدعهم.

#### 2. «He'll be useful if we need to negotiate," said silver. How do you think Silver could make use of Jim to negotiate ?

- «سيكون مفيداً عندما نحتاج للتفاوض» قال سيلفر، في اعتقادك كيف استطاع سيلفر أن يستغل جيم في التفاوض ؟

- Silver could use Jim as a hostage to get what he wants.

- استطاع سيلفر أن يستغل جيم كرهينة للحصول ما يريد.

#### 3. Was it surprising that Jim lived with the gang ? Why ?

- هل كان مفاجئاً أن يعيش جيم مع العصابة ؟ ولماذا ؟

- Yes, it was surprising but Jim was trying to protect his friends and help them by doing this.

- نعم كان مفاجئاً لكن جيم كان يحاول أن يحمي أصدقائه ويساعدهم بذلك.

#### 2 SB, El-Moasser & Previous Exams

أسئلة من الكتاب المدرسي وكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة مع اجاباتها المقترحة

#### 1. Why do you think Silver wanted Jim to join the pirates ?

(البديرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٤)

- لماذا في اعتقادك أن سيلفر أراد جيم أن ينضم للقراصنة ؟



- He wanted Jim to join the pirates because Jim was clever and cunning. He would help silver well in his plans.

- لقد أراد جيم أن ينضم للقراصنة لأن جيم ذكي وماكر وسيساعد سيلفر في خطته.

## 2. Do you think Silver wanted the torch to read better or for a trick ?

(الجيزة - الهرم ٢٠٢٤)

- هل تعتقد أن سيلفر أراد المصباح ليقرأ جيداً أو كان من أجل خدعة ؟

- I think he wanted the torch for a trick he wanted to get time to think.
- اعتقد أراد المصباح من أجل خدعة، أراد أن يأخذ وقته ليفكر.

## 3. In your opinion, were the Pirates right on their attempt not to keep Silver as a captain? Why/Why not?

- هل كان القراصنة على حق في محاولتهم عدم الإبقاء على «سيلفر» كقائد؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟

- Yes, they were. He cared only for himself and his interests.
- نعم. كان يهتم فقط بنفسه ومصالحه.

## 4. Why do you think George was still angry after Silver answered the Pirates' questions?

(SB)

- لماذا برأيك ظل «جورج» غاضباً بعد أن أجاب «سيلفر» على أسئلة القراصنة؟

- Because he wanted to be the captain instead of Silver. He probably thinks Silver and Jim are planning something, too.
- لأنه أراد أن يكون الكابتن بدلاً من «سيلفر». ربما يعتقد أن «سيلفر» و«جيم» يخططان لشيء ما أيضاً.

## 5. "And the boy? He'll be useful if we need to negotiate" What do you think Silver means by this?

- «والصبي؟ سيكون مفيداً إذا أردنا التفاوض. ماذا يقصد «سيلفر» بهذا في رأيك؟

- I think he meant that they might need to use Jim as an important point of pressure if they wanted anything from Dr Livesy and his group.

- أعتقد أنه كان يقصد أنهم قد يحتاجون إلى استخدام «جيم» كنقطة ضغط مهمة إذا أرادوا أي شيء من الدكتور «ليفسي» ومجموعته.

## 6. Why do you think Jim thinks that Silver would do or say anything to stay safe?

(SB)

- في اعتقادك، لماذا يعتقد «جيم» أن «سيلفر» سيفعل أو يقول أي شيء ليظل آمناً؟

- Because he has seen him do this many times.

- لأنه رآه يفعل ذلك مرات عديدة.

## 7. Do you think that Dr Livesy is right when he treats the criminals ?

- هل تعتقد أن دكتور ليفيسى محقاً في علاج المجرمين؟

- Of course. It is the duty of a doctor to look after patients regardless of anything else.

- بالطبع من واجب الطبيب رعاية المرضى بغض النظر عن أي شيء آخر.



**8. Why does Dr Livesy agree to let Silver look for the treasure? (SB)**

- لماذا يوافق الدكتور «ليفسي» على السماح لـ «سيلفر» بالبحث عن الكنز؟  
- ربما لديه خطة.
- He probably has a plan.

**9. Silver often said that he liked Jim. Do you think he really liked him or did he say this for another reason? (SB)**

- كثيراً ما قال «سيلفر» إنه يحب «جيم». هل تعتقد أنه أحبه حقاً أم أنه قال ذلك لسبب آخر؟  
- I think he liked Jim because he was clever and he remembered that he was like Jim as a boy. But he also wanted to use Jim for his own plans to get the treasure.
- أعتقد أنه أحب «جيم» لأنه كان ذكياً وتذكر أنه كان مثل «جيم» عندما كان صبياً. لكنه أراد أيضاً استخدام «جيم» في خطته الخاصة للحصول على الكنز.

**10. Dr Livesy told Silver that he did not care about Jim. Do you believe this, or did he say this for another reason? (SB)**

- أخبر الدكتور «ليفسي» «سيلفر» أنه لا يهتم بـ «جيم». هل تصدق هذا أم أنه قال هذا لسبب آخر؟  
- I think he only said this because he did not want Silver to know he was worried about Jim. This would have given Silver more power to negotiate with him.
- أعتقد أنه قال هذا فقط لأنه لم يكن يريد أن يعرف «سيلفر» أنه قلق بشأن «جيم». كان هذا من شأنه أن يمنح «سيلفر» المزيد من القوة في التفاوض معه.

**11. Why do you think that Dr Livesy came to an agreement with Silver? (SB)**

- في اعتقادك، لماذا توصل الدكتور «ليفسي» إلى اتفاق مع «سيلفر»؟  
- Silver was pleased because Dr Livesy could help the ill Pirates. Dr Livesy wanted Silver to trust him so that he could carry out his plan.
- كان «سيلفر» سعيداً لأن الدكتور «ليفسي» يمكنه مساعدة القراصنة المرضى. أراد الدكتور «ليفسي» أن يثق به «سيلفر» حتى يتمكن من تنفيذ خطته.

**Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students**

◀ أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر واجابتها

**1. What did Silver plan to do with Jim? (SB)**

- ماذا خطط «سيلفر» أن يفعل مع «جيم»؟  
- He planned to keep him safe so that they could help each other until they find the treasure.
- لقد خطط للحفاظ عليه آمناً حتى يتمكنوا من مساعدة بعضهم البعض حتى يعثروا على الكنز.

**2. How could Silver convince the Pirates to let him be the Captain again? (SB)**

- كيف تمكن «سيلفر» أن يقنع القراصنة بالسماح له بأن يصبح القبطان مرة أخرى؟  
- He showed them the map for the treasure.
- أظهر لهم خريطة الكنز.



### 3. What did Dr Livesy do when he found out that Jim lived with the gang?

(SB)

- ماذا فعل الدكتور «ليفسي» عندما اكتشف أن «جيم» يعيش مع العصابة؟  
- He spoke to Jim, then he got Silver to promise he would look after Jim.  
- تحدث إلى «جيم» ثم جعل «سيلفر» يعده بأنه سيعتني بـ «جيم».

### 4. Why did Dr Livesy look after the ill Pirates?

(SB)

- لماذا اعتنى الدكتور «ليفسي» بالقراصنة المرضى؟  
- He said he wanted them to be well so he could take them to England for trial.  
- قال إنه يريد لهم أن يكونوا بخير حتى يتمكن من أخذهم إلى إنجلترا للمحاكمة.

### 5. The Pirates were angry to see Dr Livesy talking to Jim. What reassured them?

(SB)

- كان القراصنة غاضبين لرؤية الدكتور «ليفسي» يتحدث إلى «جيم». ما الذي طمأنهم؟  
- Silver said that they might need Jim and the doctor's help to find the treasure.  
- قال «سيلفر» إنهم قد يحتاجون إلى مساعدة «جيم» والطبيب للعثور على الكنز.

### 6. Why do the pirates choose to keep Silver as their captain?

(SB)

- لماذا يختار القراصنة الإبقاء على «سيلفر» كقائد لهم؟  
- Because he has the map.  
- لأنه لديه الخريطة.

### ❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Silver wanted Jim if he needed to .....  
a. play                      b. negotiate                      c. relate                      d. escape
- Silver made ..... guard the fort all night while other pirates laughed and sang.  
a. George                      b. Morgan                      c. Dick                      d. Jim
- Dick didn't feel well because he had .....  
a. smallpox                      b. flu                      c. malaria                      d. cancer
- Jim had the Hispaniola in the ..... of the island.  
a. west                      b. north                      c. south                      d. east
- The doctor gave the injured pirates ..... and asked to speak to Jim.  
a. poison                      b. fruit                      c. food                      d. medicine

### Answers

1. b

2. a

3. c

4. b

5. d



# General Exercises On Chapter 11

**A** 1. Some of the pirates do not want Silver to be their captain any more.  
Explain. (أسيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤)

2. Jim was brave. Explain. (الإسكندرية - غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

3. Why do you think that Dr Livesy came to an agreement with Silver ?  
(الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٤)

**B** 1. Silver was a persuasive person. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

2. "Third, you wouldn't let us follow them." Do you think Silver was right not to follow the men? Why / Why not?

3. "I'm still the captain until you tell me why I shouldn't be." Do you think the speaker deserves to be the captain? Why / Why not?

**C** 1. What do you think of Silver's punishment to George who led the mutiny?

2. Although the pirates refused to keep Jim alive, Silver persuaded them.  
How do you think he did it?

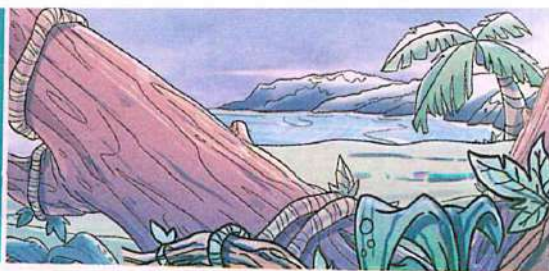
3. At first, Jim couldn't believe that Silver had Flint's real map. Why do you think Mr Trelawney gave it to him?

**D** 1. "He would do and say anything to stay safe." Who does the speaker talk about?

2. Jim was worried that Dr Livesy would think about him badly. Do you agree with Jim? Why / Why not?

3. "Let me see your patients." Why do you think Dr Livesy didn't show any interest about Jim when he came into the fort?





## I VOCABULARY

attach (ed) (v)	يربط - يوصل	hole (n)	حفرة - فتحة
before then (conj)	قبل ذلك الحين	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل
blow - blew - blown (v)	تدفع - تهب	look (ed) (v)	يبدو
bottom (n)	قاع - أسفل	point (ed) (v)	يشير - يَضُوب
cave (n)	كهف	shout (ed) (n - v)	صرخة - يصرخ
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	skeleton (n)	هيكل عظمي
comfortable (adj)	مريح - مستريح	slow (ed) (v)	يَتَطَي
crazy (adj)	مجنون	smile (d) (v - n)	يتسم - ابتسامة
destroy (ied) (v)	يحطم - يدمر	so that (conj)	لكي
dig - dug - dug (v)	يحفر	sound (ed) (v)	مثل
drink (n)	مشروب	spade (n)	جاروف
empty (ied) (v - adj.)	يُفَرِّغ - فارغ	supplies (n)	المؤن
escape (d) (v)	يهرب	terrible (adj)	سيء - فظيع
find out (phr. - v)	يكتشف	thief (n)	لص
ground (n)	الأرض	tired (adj)	مُتعب
heavy (adj)	صعب - شاق	useless (adj)	عديم الفائدة
hill (n)	تَل	worry (ied) (n - v)	القلق - يقلق

## Words and their definitions

attach (v)	: to join one thing to another	يربط - يوصل
cave (n)	: a large hole in the side of a mountain	كهف
ground (n)	: the top part of the earth	الأرض
point (v)	: to move your finger in the direction of something to show it to someone	يشير - يَضُوب
skeleton (n)	: the bones of a whole animal or person	هيكل عظمي
smile (v)	: to have a happy expression on your face using your mouth	يتسم - ابتسامة
useless (adj)	: not useful at all	عديم الفائدة

## II CHAPTER TWELVE IN POINTS

1. Silver tells the pirates that the doctor's men have the ship, but he will find the treasure first then the ship. He will leave Jim on the island in the end. They are happy. Jim suspects Silver.



2. They go to find the treasure. They attach Jim to Silver with a rope in order not to escape. They see a skeleton of a man pointing north. The Pirates looked worried.
3. They heard a voice singing. The Pirates thought it was Flint. Silver thought it was Ben Gun.
4. They were excited when they saw a big tree. George saw a big hole near the bottom of the tree. Someone had been there before them.
5. Silver gave a gun to Jim and said "Be ready for trouble". They started digging but found only a gold coin.
6. Suddenly there was the sound of guns from the trees. Two pirates were killed. The other three escaped. Dr Livesy, Gray and Ben Gun saved Silver and Jim.
7. Ben Gun had found the treasure before and put it in a cave. Ben told the doctor who took his men to the cave where Ben had supplies and the treasure.
8. The doctor had given the map then to Silver as it was useless. He brought Gray and Ben to slow the pirates to give the others time to wait for the pirates by the hole.
9. They found the Hispaniola sailing empty on the sea. Gray was helped to get into it. Trelawney was looking after captain Smollett in the cave. They moved the treasure to the boat.
10. They looked for the three pirates but left without them. It was a difficult journey with a small crew. Silver escaped after taking some money and a boat when they reached South America. The treasure helped them all back in England.

### III TEXT OF CHAPTER TWELVE

#### Jim Hawkins:

Silver went back to the pirates and said, "I've found out that the doctor's men have the ship. I don't know where it is, but when we find the treasure, we'll find the ship **1**. That will give us the advantage. We'll keep Jim with us before then. When we go home, we can leave him on the island." **2**

The pirates looked happy with this news, but it worried me. What was Silver really planning? When he found the treasure, was he going to help Dr Livesy and Mr Trelawney



#### Suggested Questions

- 1** What will give the pirates the advantage over the crew ?

#### Suggested Questions

- 2** What will the pirates do with Jim after they find the treasure ?



or these terrible pirates? I did not know.

We all left the fort. The pirates were carrying supplies, spades and their weapons. We then got into the small boats and looked at the map to see where we should go.

We took the boats down a river, then we left them and walked through some tall trees. The pirates attached me to Silver with a rope so that I could not escape **3**, and we walked up a hill.

We walked for many hours. It was very hot, but this side of the island was very beautiful, with many flowers and birds.

Then we heard a shout. Morgan was looking at something with a frightened face. It was the skeleton of a man lying on the ground.

"The skeleton is pointing north!" said Morgan.

"He is," said Silver. "I think this was one of Flint's games. He killed the man and put him there."

"Flint was a terrible man **4**," said Morgan.

The pirates looked worried and when we continued, they were much quieter. Suddenly, we heard a voice singing from the trees in front of us.

"That sounds like Flint!" said George.

"Flint's dead," said Silver. "It is someone playing a trick."

Then the voice called out, "McGraw, bring me a drink, please!"

"That was what Flint said, just before he died!" said Morgan.

Now the pirates all looked very frightened.

"Listen men," said Silver. "There's a lot of treasure near here. I don't think that was Flint. I think it was Ben Gun."

"I thought he was dead, too, but I'm not frightened of him," said George.

The pirates looked happier and continued walking, although Dick looked tired and ill.

Soon we saw a very tall tree. The tree was on our map and we knew that we were now close to the treasure. I could see that all the pirates were excited. Silver, too, looked different. His eyes looked crazy and dangerous, and I thought he would do anything to go home safely with the treasure.

The pirates all ran to the bottom of the tree. George was in front of them, but he suddenly stopped with a cry.

### Suggested Questions

- 3** Why did the pirates attach Jim to Silver with a rope ?

### Suggested Questions

- 4** What was Silver's opinion of Flint ?



“Look!” he said.

We saw what he was pointing at. Near the bottom of the tree there was a big hole in the ground. Someone had been there before us. The treasure was gone!

The pirates said nothing, but I could see that Silver was already making a plan.

“Take this, and be ready for trouble,” he said quietly, and he gave me a gun **5**.

Then the pirates all jumped into the hole and started digging with their spades. Perhaps there was treasure still there. Morgan found a gold coin and held it up for the others to see.

“One coin? You told us there was seven hundred thousand pounds here, Silver!” shouted George angrily. “You knew about this, didn’t you?”

The pirates looked very angry. They climbed out of the other side of the hole, looking dirty and hot.

“Let’s get them, men!” said George.

Suddenly, there was the sound of guns from the trees. Two of the pirates fell down and the other three started to run. We were safe!

Dr Livesy, Gray and Ben Gun came out from the trees.

“Thank you, doctor,” said Silver. “You saved us. And look, it’s Ben Gun!”

Ben Gun said hello to Silver, but I could see that he was frightened of him.

As we walked back to the boats, we heard how Ben Gun had helped us. Ben Gun had dug up the treasure and put it in a cave in the north of the island before we arrived on the Hispaniola **6**.

Ben Gun told all of this to Dr Livesy, when the doctor gave him some cheese. The doctor then thought of a plan.

He gave the map to Silver because he knew it was useless. Then he took his friends up to the cave, where Ben Gun had supplies as well as the treasure.

When he knew that Silver was taking me and the men to look for the treasure, the doctor came back with Ben Gun and Gray. To slow the pirates



### Suggested Questions

**5** What did Silver give Jim ?



### Suggested Questions

**6** How do you think Ben Gun was useful to Dr Livesy ?



down, Ben Gun sang a song to frighten them. This had given the others time to wait for the pirates by the hole.

After a few hours, we reached the coast again. Ben Gun helped Gray to destroy one of the boats so that the other pirates could not use it. We took the other boat around the island.

After three miles, I was surprised to see the Hispaniola! The wind had blown it from the beach and it was sailing empty on the sea.

We helped Gray to get onto the ship so that he could look after it, and we continued to the beach. We then climbed the hill to Ben Gun's cave, where Trelawney was looking after Captain Smollett.

"Silver," Trelawney said when he saw him.

"You are a pirate and a thief, but the doctor says that you have helped us. I must thank you."

Silver said nothing, but he smiled.

Inside the big cave, Captain Smollett was lying by a fire. Behind him, I could see lots of coins and gold. It was Flint's treasure.

The next morning, we began to take the treasure down the hill to the boat. It was heavy work, and it took us days to move all the coins and gold.

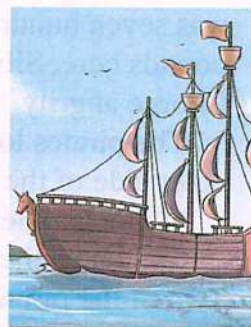
We knew there were still three pirates on the island. We looked for them all the time, but we did not see them again. We decided to leave the island without them, but we left some food and medicine.

It was a difficult journey back on the Hispaniola because the crew was so small. Captain Smollett lay on his bed and told us what to do. After a few days, we reached a town in South America, where we went to find more people for our crew. When we returned to the Hispaniola later that day, Ben Gun told us that Silver had taken a boat and some money.

He was gone, but nobody was sad about that 7.

With a bigger crew, it was easier to return to Bristol. The treasure helped us all back in England. Captain Smollett stopped working and Gray decided to buy his own ship. Ben Gun quickly spent all of his money.

I have a comfortable life now. I often think about the island and Long John Silver, but I never saw him again.



### Suggested Questions

7 What did Silver do ?



## IV QUESTIONS & THEIR SUGGESTED ANSWERS

### Part 1 Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers:

#### 1 Longman website questions

أسئلة خاصة بموقع لونغمان

#### 1. What might have happened if Jim had been left on the island ?

- ماذا كان من الممكن أن يحدث لو تم ترك جيم على الجزيرة؟

- It is possible that Jim would have been killed by the pirates.  
كان من الممكن أن يتم قتله عن طريق القراصنة.

#### 2. Do you think Jim should have tried to escape from Silver and his men ? Why ?

- هل تعتقد أنه كان ينبغي على جيم أن يهرب من سيلفر ورجاله ؟ ولماذا ؟

- It is clear that Jim would have been in danger if he had tried to escape from Silver and his men. They would have been willing to hurt Jim to get what they wanted.

- كان من الواضح أن جيم كان سيكون في خطر لو حاول الهرب من سيلفر ورجاله كانوا سيأذونه للحصول على ما يريدون.

#### 3. In your opinion, who is the best character in Treasure Island ? Why ?

- في رأيك من أفضل شخصية في القصة ؟ ولماذا ؟

- I think Jim is the best character, because of his intelligence, courage and skill.  
اعتقد جيم أفضل شخصية بسبب ذكائه وشجاعته ومهارته.

#### 4. If you were Ben Gun, would you cooperate with the pirates for some money ? Why ?

- لو كنت مكان بن جن هل كنت ستتعاون مع القراصنة مقابل بعض المال ؟ ولماذا ؟

- I wouldn't cooperate with pirates simply because they are criminals and untrustful.  
لن أتعاون مع القراصنة لأنه مجرمين ولا يمكن الثقة بهم.

#### 2 SB, El-Moasser & Previous Exams

أسئلة من الكتاب المدرسي وكتاب المعاصر والامتحانات السابقة مع اجاباتها المقترحة

#### 1. What do you think of Silver?

- ما رأيك في «سيلفر»؟ (أسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤)

- I think he was an evil pirate. However, he was an intelligent negotiator.  
أعتقد أنه كان قرصاناً شريراً، ومع ذلك فقد كان مفاوضاً ذكياً.

#### 2. If you were Jim, how would you feel while staying with the Pirates?

- لو كنت مكان «جيم»، ما هو شعورك أثناء إقامتك مع القراصنة؟

- I would be very frightened because they were all evil pirates.  
ساكون خائفاً جداً لأنهم جميعاً كانوا قراصنة أشرار.

#### 3. "We heard a shout. Morgan was looking at something with a frightened face." Do you think this thing helped the Pirates and Jim? How?

(WB)



- «سمعنا صرخاً. كان «مورغان» ينظر إلى شيء ما بوجه خائف.» هل ساعد هذا الشيء القراصنة و «جيم»؟ كيف؟

- Yes, it pointed to where the treasure was buried.

- نعم، أشار إلى المكان الذي دُفن فيه الكنز.

**4. Why do you think Morgan said, "Flint was a terrible man"?** (SB)

- في رأيك لماذا قال «مورغان»: «كان «فلينت» رجلاً فظيماً؟

- They found the skeleton of a man. It was pointing north and they thought Flint did this to the man as a game. He was not a good man. لقد عثروا على هيكل عظمي لرجل. كان يشير إلى الشمال، واعتقدوا أن «فلينت» فعل هذا بالرجل على سبيل التسلية. فهو لم يكن رجلاً طيباً.

**5. In your opinion, why did Ben Gun pretend to be Flint?** (SB)

- في رأيك لماذا تظاهر «بن غان» بأنه «فلينت»؟

- He wanted to frighten the Pirates and slow them down.

- أراد تخويف القراصنة وإبطائهم.

**6. In your opinion, why do you think Silver gave Jim a gun?** (SB)

- برأيك، لماذا قام «سيلفر» بإعطاء «جيم» مسدساً؟

- He perhaps thought the Pirates would attack them because there was no treasure.

- ربما ظن أن القراصنة سيهاجمونهم لعدم وجود كنز.

**7. Why did Dr Livesy give the map to Silver though it was the key to the treasure?** (SB)

- لماذا أعطى الدكتور «ليفسي» الخريطة لـ «سيلفر» رغم أنها مفتاح الكنز؟

- Because Dr Livesy knew that Ben Gun had the treasure, so the map was useless.

- لأن الدكتور «ليفسي» كان يعلم أن «بن غان» كان لديه الكنز، لذلك كانت الخريطة عديمة الفائدة.

**8. Were you surprised when Ben Gun told Dr Livesy where to find the treasure? Why/ Why not?** (SB)

- هل تفاجأت عندما أخبر «بن غان» الدكتور «ليفسي» بمكان العثور على الكنز؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟

- No, because the treasure was useless on the island. Ben Gun can only use it if he leaves the island with Dr Livesy and his friends.

- لا، لأن الكنز كان عديم الفائدة في الجزيرة. لا يمكن لـ «بن غان» استخدامه إلا إذا غادر الجزيرة مع الدكتور «ليفسي» وأصدقائه.

**9. Were you surprised when Silver escaped from the boat? Why?** (SB)

- هل تفاجأت عندما هرب «سيلفر» من القارب؟ لماذا؟ (البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤)

- No, because Silver always looks after himself. He knew that he would go to trial if he returned to England.

- لا، لأن «سيلفر» يعتني بنفسه دائماً. كان يعلم أنه سيحاكم إذا عاد إلى إنجلترا.

**10. What is the moral lesson of the novel "Treasure Island" ?** (شربين ٢٠٢٤)

- ما الدرس المستفاد من الرواية «جزيرة الكنز»؟

• It is important to have courage and perseverance.

- من المهم أن تتحلى بالشجاعة والمثابرة.

• It is dangerous to be greedy.

- من الخطر أن تكون طماعاً.



## Part 2 Questions & answers for Al-Azhar students

أسئلة خاصة بطلاب الأزهر واجابتها

1. "We heard a shout. Morgan was looking at something with a frightened face." What was the thing that frightened Morgan? (WB)

- «سمعنا صراخا. كان «مورغان» ينظر إلى شيء ما بوجه خائف.. ما هو الشيء الذي أخاف «مورغان»؟

- It was a skeleton. إنه هيكل عظمي.

2. "George was in front of them, but he suddenly stopped with a cry." What does it mean? What did Silver do to face it? (WB)

- «كان «جورج» أمامهم لكنه توقف فجأة وهو يصرخ.» ما الذي كان يعنيه ذلك؟ ماذا فعل «سيلفر» لمواجهته؟

- It means that someone had taken the treasure. Silver had a plan for this. He gave Jim a gun and told him to be ready for trouble.

- هذا يعني أن شخصا ما قد أخذ الكنز. كان لدى «سيلفر» خطة لذلك. أعطى «جيم» مسدساً وأخبره أن يكون مستعداً للمتاعب.

3. How did Silver look when they were near the treasure? (SB)

- كيف كان يبدو «سيلفر» عندما كانوا بالقرب من الكنز؟

- His eyes looked crazy and dangerous. بدا في عينيه الجنون والخطورة.

4. Why was the journey to South America difficult? (SB)

- لماذا كانت الرحلة إلى أمريكا الجنوبية صعبة؟

- Because they had a very small crew. لأن طاقمهم كان صغيراً جداً.

5. How did the story end for Jim? (SB)

- كيف انتهت القصة بالنسبة لـ «جيم»؟

- He had a comfortable life back in England.

- كان يتمتع بحياة مريحة في إنجلترا.

❖ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. After he finds the treasure, Silver will leave ..... on the island.

a. Gray                      b. Jim                      c. Hands                      d. Dr Livesy

2. The pirates left the fort carrying ....., spades and weapons.

a. supplies                      b. guns                      c. skeletons                      d. points

3. Morgan found a ..... pointing north.

a. man                      b. monkey                      c. cat                      d. skeleton

4. .... had dug up the treasure and put it in a cave.

a. Dr Livesy                      b. Mr Trelawney                      c. Jim                      d. Ben Gun

5. Dr Livesy gave the map to silver because he knew it was .....

a. bad                      b. dangerous                      c. useless                      d. useful

### Answers

1. b

2. a

3. d

4. d

5. c



## General Exercises On Chapter 12

### ★ Answer the following questions :

**A** 1. Why was the journey to South America difficult ? (الإسماعيلية - التل الكبير ٢٠٢٤)

2. What is the moral of Treasure Island ?

3. Who do you think the worst character in the novel ? Why ?

(الإسكندرية - وسط الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

**B** 1. Silver was an ambiguous غامض person. Do you agree with this? Why / Why not?

2. Why did Morgan shout during the journey to the treasure?

3. Do you think Silver was afraid of the skeleton? Why / Why not?

**C** 1. From the Pirates' point of view, their journey on the island looking for the treasure wasn't an easy one. To what extent do you agree with this sentence?

2. Although the journey was long, it wasn't boring. Illustrate.

3. Jim was very important for the pirates. How can you prove this?

**D** 1. Although the pirates had the map and got to the place of the treasure, they couldn't get it. Why do you think that happened?

2. "You knew about this, didn't you?" In your opinion, what did the speaker mean?

3. If it hadn't been for the doctor and his friends, Silver and Jim would have been killed. Discuss.

**E** 1. How do you think Dr Livesy and his friends got the treasure?

2. Why do you think the journey back home was a difficult one?

3. Silver proved to be a thief at the end of the novel. Do you agree? Why / Why not?



★ Answer the following questions :

A. 1. Why do you think Jim was surprised when Silver asked him to help save him ?  
(الغربية - شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤)

2. Why do you think Jim apologized to Dr Livesy ?  
(الفيوم - طامية ٢٠٢٤)

3. Why do you think the fort was very important for Captain Smollett and his men?  
(الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٤)

B. 1. Why do you think George was still angry after Silver answered the Pirates' questions?

2. To what extent was Jim successful in his adventure on the Hispaniola?

3. In what way can Hands help Jim?

C. 1. If you were one of the Pirates, would you go into the fort? Why/ Why not?

2. Why do you think Ben Gun seemed a little crazy?

3. In your opinion, why did Ben Gun pretend to be Flint?

D. 1. Doctor Livesy proved to be generous. Show how.

2. Why do you think Captain Smollett said, "I know that we can win" after the fight?

3. If you were Jim, would you sail to the Hispaniola on your own? Why? / Why not?

E. 1. What's your opinion of Hands ?  
(الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)

2. If you were Captain Smollett, would you accept the truce which the pirates asked ? Why ? Why not ?  
(الشرقية - أبو كبير ٢٠٢٤)

3. In your opinion, why did Jim ask Hands to call him "Captain" ?  
(الغربية - سمند ٢٠٢٤)



## 1 El-Moasser Exercises

تمارين كتاب المعاصر

## ★ Answer the following questions :

**A** 1. Jim was in trouble, but he could turn things upside down. Explain.

2. If you were Jim, how would you feel while staying with the Pirates?

3. Do you think Captain Smollett is a good captain? Why/Why not?

**B** 1. Why do you think that Dr Livesy came to an agreement with Silver?

2. How did Jim prove to be brave?

3. Why do you think Silver gave Jim a gun?

**C** 1. "We heard a shout. Morgan was looking at something with a frightened face." Did this thing help the Pirates and Jim? How?

2. When Jim arrived at the fort, he was sad, then he was very happy but worried. Explain.

3. Were the Pirates right on their attempt not to keep Silver as a captain? Why/Why not?

**D** 1. Why do you think Ben Gun refused to enter the fort with Jim?

2. "I was so thirsty that I did not know whether I would be happy or sad if the Pirates found me." What does Jim mean by this?

3. Do you think Captain Smollett's men won the first fight? How do you know?



- E** 1. If you were Dr Livesy, would you leave the fort on your own to find Ben Gun? Why/Why not?  
.....
2. Why did Dr Livesy give the map to Silver though it was the key to the treasure?  
.....
3. Captain Smollett proved to be a wise leader inside the fort. Show how.  
.....
- F** 1. Why do you think George was still angry after Silver answered the Pirates' questions?  
.....
2. If you were Jim, would you join the Pirates? Why/Why not?  
.....
3. Why did Jim want to take the Pirates' flag down from the ship?  
.....

**2** Collected Questions from Previous Exams

أسئلة مجمعة من الاختبارات السابقة

- A** 1. Jim proved to be brave. Show how.  
.....
2. Silver often said that he liked Jim. Do you think he really liked him or did he say this for another reason?  
.....
3. If you were Captain Smollett, would you accept the truce with the pirates? Why/Why not?  
.....

(القاهرة - مصر الجديدة ٢٠٢٤)

- B** 1. What do you think showed Jim that the Pirates took control of the Hispaniola?  
.....
2. Are you surprised that Dr Livesy agreed to let Jim stay with Silver? Why/Why not?  
.....
3. Why do you think Jim asked Hands to sail the ship to the north of the island?  
.....

(الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٣)

**C** 1. Were you surprised when Silver escaped from the boat? Why?

.....

2. Doctor Livesey proved to be generous. Show how.

.....

3. What kind of person do you think Hands was? Why?

.....

(سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٤)

**D** 1. Silver had two offers to Jim; and both were surprising. Explain.

.....

2. "I went downstairs and made a lot of noise, then took off my shoes and quietly to another part of the ship." What does this tell you about Jim?

.....

3. Why did Dr Livesey think that Silver was frightened?

.....

(المنيا ٢٠٢٣)

**E** 1. Why does Dr Livesey agree to let Silver look for the treasure?

.....

2. Why did Dr Livesey leave the fort? Do you agree that he is crazy as Gray said?

.....

3. What do you think of Silver as a negotiator?

.....

(الاسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٣)

**F** 1. If you were one of the pirates, would you go into the fort? Why/Why not?

.....

2. Why does Jim think that Silver was very clever?

.....

3. Why did Ben Gun pretend to be Flint?

.....

(الغربية - طنطا ٢٠٢٤)



# NEW Hello

## QUESTION BANK

By A Group Of Supervisors



**1<sup>st</sup>**  
**Sec.**  
2025  
SECOND TERM  
عام - أزهر

بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية  
طبقاً لنواتج التعلم

الصف الأول الثانوي  
الفصل الدراسي الثاني



# A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه في أسبوع واحد فقط

## General Revision on Units

مراجعة عامة على وحدات المنهج

DAYS

1 & 2

1. General Revision on Vocabulary (each two units) followed by Exercise for Practice.

مراجعة على المفردات اللغوية (كل وحدتين على حدة) متبوعة بتمرين للتدريب.

2. General Revision on Structures (each two units) followed by Exercise for practice.

مراجعة على القواعد اللغوية (كل وحدتين على حدة) متبوعة بتمرين للتدريب.

3. General Revision on the "Treasure Island".

مراجعة عامة على "Treasure Island".



DAY

3

- Writing skill (Related written essay models)

أهم الفقرات الإنشائية التي وردت بالمنهج

- Reading skill

مهاراة الكتابة



DAYS

4, 5, 6 & 7

1. 20 Model Exams from different governorates

عشرون اختبارًا من اختبارات المحافظات المختلفة

2. Al-Azhar Exams & An exam for Inclusive students.

اختبارات الأزهر الشريف واختبار لطلاب الدمج.





## 1 Units 7 &amp; 8

## I Vocabulary

## Unit 7

allergy (n)	الحساسية	dust(ed) (n - v)	الغبار - ينفث الغبار
at least	على الأقل	emergency services (n)	خُدَفَات الطَّوَارِئ
bacteria (n)	البكتريا	evacuate (d) (v)	يُخْلَو - يُخْلِي / يُنْجِد
bedding (n)	أغطية الفراش	first aid (n)	إسعاف أولي
blanket (n)	بطانية	grow - grew - grown (v)	ينمو - يزرع - يكبر
breathe (d) (v)	يتنفس	growth (n)	نمو
burn - burned / burnt (v)	يحرق - يحترق	hygiene (n)	النظافة (الشخصية)
burn (n)	حرق	immediately (adv)	حالاً / على الفور
cables (n)	كابلات (كهربائية)	research (ed) (n - v)	بَحْث - يجري بَحْث
CPR = Cardiopulmonary	إنعاش قلبي رئوي	respond (ed) (v)	يستجيب - يجيب
resuscitation		soil (n)	التربة الزراعية
danger (n)	الخطر	wrap (ped) (v)	يُغْلَف (يلف) - يُغْطِي
DOs and DON'Ts	الأنوامر - المحظورات		

## Unit 8

app = application (n)	تطبيق	vehicle (n)	مَرْكَبَة - وسيط / وسيلة
benefit (ed) (n - v)	فائدة - يستفيد	hybrid vehicle (n)	مركبة هجينة (تعمل بنوعين من الطاقة)
chat (ted) (v - n)	يدرّش - دردشة	hybrid (n)	هجين (من سلالتين مختلفتين)
click (ed) (v - n)	ينقر - نقرة (على الماوس)	invention (n)	اختراع
familiar (adj)	معروف - علي علم بـ	navigate (d) (v)	يحدد اتجاه - يُجِـر
feedback (n)	تغذية راجعة - نتيجة	quiz (zed) (n - v)	مسابقة أسئلة - امتحان قصير - يستجوب
find out (phr. v)	يكتشف - يعرف	translation (n)	ترجمة
get around (phr. v)	يسافر - يتجول		
go out (phr. v)	يخرج (للترفيه)		
GPS = Global Positioning System	نظام تحديد المواقع (العالمية)		

## General Exercise On Vocabulary

★ Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. A/An ..... is a type of software that does a particular job on your smartphone or computer.
- a. application      b. invention      c. app      d. navigation      e. satnav



2. .... is a system that uses radio signals from satellites to show your exact position.  
 a. CPR                      b. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation      c. ATM  
 d. GPS                      e. Global Positioning System
3. We need someone to ..... what the Japanese minister is saying.  
 a. aid                      b. evacuate                      c. interpret                      d. transport                      e. translate
4. "I am sorry, but the manager is not available right now." This means the manager may be .....  
 a. busy                      b. engaged                      c. obtainable                      d. accessible                      e. free

⊛ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

5. Secondary school students will take the final exams on their ..... tablets.  
 a. written                      b. traditional                      c. smart                      d. social
6. The teacher asked us to read the text and make .....  
 a. research                      b. surveys                      c. comments                      d. jobs
7. Modern ..... like mobiles and other devices have made life easier.  
 a. post                      b. message                      c. technology                      d. business
8. I have a ..... on the internet where I write about my opinions and activities.  
 a. media                      b. blog                      c. form                      d. survey
9. Most young people prefer ..... news websites to printed newspapers.  
 a. traditional                      b. paper                      c. offline                      d. online
10. The ..... is a network of computer systems that allows users all over the world to exchange information.  
 a. website                      b. blog                      c. internet                      d. post
11. GPS helps drivers to ..... their journey from a place to another.  
 a. invent                      b. chat                      c. click                      d. navigate
12. The 'G' in 'GPS' stands for .....  
 a. Ground                      b. Global                      c. Gear                      d. Gas
13. In a/an ..... vehicle, both petrol and electricity are used to drive the engine.  
 a. petrol                      b. electric                      c. hybrid                      d. diesel
14. Sama was very angry when she ..... that I had eaten her chocolate.  
 a. got around                      b. found out                      c. went out                      d. led to
15. "I had a ten-minute chat with my friend." In this sentence, 'chat' is a/an .....  
 a. noun                      b. verb                      c. adverb                      d. adjective
16. The ..... of solar panels helps the environment.  
 a. click                      b. chat                      c. navigation                      d. invention
17. I've been learning how to master ..... from and into English since I joined the secondary stage.  
 a. translation                      b. feedback                      c. hybridisation                      d. navigation
18. This voice is ..... to me. I'm sure I've heard it before.  
 a. extreme                      b. stressful                      c. familiar                      d. beneficial
19. After checking our essays, Mr Mohammed gives us useful .....  
 a. translation                      b. feedback                      c. hybridisation                      d. navigation
20. Google Play is full of useful .....  
 a. vehicles                      b. applications                      c. apps                      d. b & c



## II Structures

### 1 should / shouldn't + inf.

١ نستخدم لتقديم النصيحة :

- e.g. : You **should work** hard.  
- You **shouldn't get** up late.

٢ نستخدم في صيغة الاستفهام لطلب النصيحة :

- e.g. : - **Should I take** a rest after school ?  
- What **should I do** to get high marks ?

٣ نستخدم لعمل اقتراحات :

- e.g. : You **should travel** by plane. It's much faster.

٤ نستخدم لإبداء الرأي الشخصي :

- e.g. : She **should join** a sports club. It will help her keep fit.

٥ لاحظ بناء الجملة في الصيغ المختلفة :

- e.g. : Sama **should be** careful to pass the driving test. (إثبات)  
- Sama **shouldn't be** careless to pass the driving test. (نفي)  
- **Should** Sama **be** careful to pass the driving test ? (سؤال بهل)  
- Why **should** Sama **be** careful ? (سؤال به أداة استفهام)

٦ لاحظ بناء الجملة في المبني للمجهول :

Obj. + **should / shouldn't** + be + p.p.

- e.g. : You should revise your essay again. (معلوم).  
- Your essay **should be revised** again. (مجهول).

### 2 must / mustn't + inf.

١ تعبر عن قاعدة عامة أو نص القانون :

- e.g. : - Drivers **must follow** traffic rules.  
- You **mustn't smoke** in hospitals.

٢ تعبر عن ضرورة أو إلزام من داخل الشخص مع (I / We) :

- e.g. : - I **must go and buy** some bread before the bakery is closed.  
- We **mustn't go** out without telling our parents.

٣ نستخدم في الدعوة القوية أو التحذير من شيء خطير (مع الأشخاص المقربين) :

- e.g. : - You **must come and try** mum's food. I'm sure you will like it. (دعوة)  
- You **mustn't make** friends with this bad person. (تحذير)

٤ نستخدم في تقديم نصيحة قوية لشخص مقرب :

- e.g. : - You **must stop** smoking. It's destroying your health.  
- You **mustn't smoke**. It's harmful for health.

٥ لاحظ بناء الجملة في الصيغ المختلفة :

- e.g. : - You **must stop** using your mobile while driving. (إثبات)  
- You **mustn't use** your mobile while driving. (نفي)

- **Must** we **stop** using our mobile while driving ? (سؤال بهل)
- What **must** we **stop** doing while driving ? (سؤال به أداة استفهام)

٦ لاحظ صيغة المبني للمجهول :

Obj. مفعول + **must / mustn't** + **be** + **p.p.**

- e.g. : - Everyone **must follow** the traffic rules. (معلوم)  
 - The traffic rules **must be followed** (by everyone). (مجهول)

### Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

- ١ تستخدم (**should have + p.p.**) في لوم شخص على عدم فعل شئ كان ينبغي أن يفعله :  
 - I blame you for not cleaning your room.  
 = You **should have cleaned** your room.
- ٢ تستخدم (**shouldn't have + p.p.**) في لوم شخص على فعل شئ كان ينبغي ألا يفعله :  
 - I don't think it was a good idea to get up late.  
 = You **shouldn't have got up** so late.
- ٣ لاحظ الطرق المختلفة للتعبير عن الضرورة :  
 ① **have to / has to + inf.** مصدر .....  
 - تعبر (**have to**) عن الزام خارجي مثل الالتزام بالقوانين أو القواعد في مواقف وحالات محددة (أي لا يوجد اختيار للفرد) :  
 - I **have to** arrive at work at 9 sharp. My boss is very strict صارم.  
 - He **has to** pass his exams or the university will not accept him.  
 - لاحظ أن نفي (**have / has to**) هو (**don't / doesn't have to**) :  
 - **don't / doesn't + have to + inf.** ليس ضرورياً / لست مضطراً ل.  
 - You **don't have to** get up early on holidays. (**Not: you haven't to**)  
 - He **doesn't have to** leave now. (**Not: he hasn't to**)  
 - لاحظ الفرق بين (**don't / doesn't have to**) و (**mustn't**) :  
 - You **mustn't** leave now. (غير مسموح لك أن تغادر الآن)  
 - You **don't have to** leave now. (لست مضطراً أن تغادر لكن القرار لك)  
 - لاحظ أن صيغة الماضي ل (**must / has to / have to**) هي :  
 - **had to + inf.** (كان من الضروري أن / كان لابد أن)  
 - I **had to** break the door because I had lost my keys.  
 - Rodayna **didn't have to** do the shopping. (**Not: Rodayna hadn't to**)  
 - لاحظ استخدام (**need to / needs to**) للتعبير عن الضرورة :  
 ② **need to / needs to + inf.** مصدر .....  
 - I **need to** go to bed earlier.  
 - He **needs to** do something about his old house.  
 - لاحظ أن نفي (**need / needs to**) هو :  
 - **don't / doesn't need to + inf. ... = needn't + inf. ...** ليس ضرورياً / لست مضطراً ل.  
 - You **don't need to** carry all these bags.  
 - You **needn't** carry all these bags. (**Not: needn't to carry**)



- لاحظ عدم استخدام (to) بعد (needn't) كما في المثال السابق.  
- لاحظ الفرق بين (didn't have to) و (needn't have):

- didn't have to + inf. ... لم يفعل الشيء لأن ذلك لم يكن ضرورياً
- needn't have + p.p. ... فعل الشيء رغم أن ذلك لم يكن ضرورياً
- I **didn't have to buy** cheese because we have much. (لم اشترى)
- I **needn't have bought** cheese. We have much. (اشتريت)

## B Conditionals

### الجمل الشرطية

• If  $\xrightarrow{\text{present simple}}$  ,  $\xrightarrow{\text{present simple}}$  (Zero conditional)  
 زمن المضارع البسيط      زمن المضارع البسيط

e.g. : - If you **put** wood in water, it **floats**.

• If  $\xrightarrow{\text{present simple}}$  ,  $\xrightarrow{\text{will + inf.}}$  (First conditional)  
 زمن المضارع البسيط      زمن المستقبل البسيط

e.g. : - If I **remember** her address, I **will tell** you.

• If  $\xrightarrow{\text{past simple}}$  ,  $\xrightarrow{\text{would + inf.}}$  (Second conditional)  
 زمن الماضي البسيط      could / might + inf.

e.g. : If I **lost** Ahmed's CD, I **would buy** him another one.

• If  $\xrightarrow{\text{past perfect}}$  ,  $\xrightarrow{\text{would have + p.p.}}$  (Third conditional)  
 زمن الماضي التام      could / might + have + p.p.

e.g. : If I **had been** more careful, I **wouldn't have lost** my book.

- يمكن استخدام "Were" مكان "If" في الحالة الثانية :

- If she **were** a tour guide, she **would tell** him about the monuments.

**Were** she a tour guide, she **would tell** him about the monuments.

- If he **played** well, he **would win** the game.

**Were** he to play well, he **would win** the game.

- يمكن استخدام (In case of) مكان (If) في الاثبات ويأتي بعدها اسم أو (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : If Ali **worked** hard, he **wouldn't be** fired. يطرد من العمل.

**In case of** working hard, Ali **wouldn't be** fired.

- يمكن استخدام (But for / Without) مكان (If) في النفي أو بدلاً من (Unless) ويأتي بعدها اسم أو (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : - If Samia **didn't eat** vegetables, she **wouldn't be** healthy.

**Without** eating vegetables, Samia **wouldn't be** healthy.

## General Exercise On Structures

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Passengers ..... cross the crossroads in their cars when the traffic light is red.

a. ought to

b. mustn't

c. must

d. should

2. You should ..... vegetables before you cook them.

a. wash

b. be washed

c. to wash

d. washing

3. Vegetables should ..... before you cook them.  
a. wash                      b. be washed                      c. to wash                      d. washing
4. You must ..... your mother with the housework.  
a. help                      b. be helped                      c. to help                      d. helping
5. Your mother must ..... with the housework.  
a. help                      b. be helped                      c. to help                      d. helping
6. You ..... smoke in a petrol station. It is forbidden by law.  
a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. shouldn't                      d. should
7. Wood floats if it ..... in water.  
a. put                      b. puts                      c. is put                      d. will put
8. If you ..... your interview, you will get the job.  
a. passes                      b. pass                      c. passed                      d. passing
9. If you ..... difficulty understanding the instructions, call me.  
a. have                      b. has                      c. had                      d. has had
10. He will visit you if he ..... time.  
a. will have                      b. had had                      c. had                      d. has
11. If he had a camera, he ..... a lot of photographs.  
a. will take                      b. would take                      c. would have taken                      d. takes
12. Drivers ..... traffic rules.  
a. must be broken                      b. must break                      c. mustn't be broken                      d. mustn't break
13. Traffic rules .....  
a. must be broken                      b. must break                      c. mustn't be broken                      d. mustn't break
14. You ..... try playing tennis. It's a great game.  
a. shouldn't                      b. should                      c. mustn't                      d. oughtn't
15. You ..... drive at 130 kph. It is illegal.  
a. shouldn't                      b. won't                      c. don't                      d. mustn't
16. He won't join the university ..... he passes the exam.  
a. provided                      b. in case                      c. but for                      d. unless
17. If you don't believe what I say, ..... your teacher.  
a. ask                      b. could ask                      c. would ask                      d. will ask
18. You can drive a car ..... that you have a licence.  
a. providing                      b. unless                      c. in case                      d. if
19. .... training hard, you can't win the match.  
a. Without                      b. Unless                      c. In case of                      d. If
20. If this student ..... late once more, never let him in.  
a. come                      b. had come                      c. came                      d. comes



## 2 Units 9 &amp; 10

## I Vocabulary

## Unit 9

appreciate (d) (v)	يُثَمِّن / يَقْدِّر	keep in touch with	يبقي علي تواصل مع
boarding school (n)	مدرسة داخلية	lose touch with	تقطع علاقته بـ
bully (ied) (n - v)	متنمر - يتنمر	make friends	يصادق / يصاحب
cruel (adj)	قاسي	housekeeper (n)	مديرة منزل
education (n)	التعليم	orphan (ed) (n - v)	يتيم - يصبح يتيم
expert (n - adj)	خبير	schooling (n)	التعليم في المدارس
extra (adj)	إضافي - زائد	servant (n)	خادم
fail (ed) (v)	يفشل	stranger (n)	شخص غريب
governess (n)	مُدرِّسة مُقيمة	success (n)	النجاح

## Unit 10

apply (ied) (v)	يُطَبِّق - يتقدم بطلب	honest (adj)	صادق - أمين
apprenticeship (n)	التدريب المهني - فترة التدريب المهني	industry (n)	صناعة - نشاط صناعي أو عملي
attendant (n)	مُرافق - خادم - حاضِر	loyal (adj)	مُخلص
attention (n)	اهتمام - انتباه	practical (adj)	عملي - تطبيقي
caring (adj)	مُهتم - مُراعي	punctual (adj)	مُنضبط - مُلتزم
casualty		qualification (n)	مُؤهل - تأهل
department (n)	قسم الطوارئ	reassure (d) (v)	يُطمئن
communicator (n)	شخص لبق - مُحاور	reliable (adj)	موثوق به - يُعتمد عليه
compassion (n)	رأفة - شفقة - حنو	rewarding (adj)	مُجزِي
confident (adj)	واثق - مُتمكّن	skill (n)	مهارة
construction (n)	بناء - تشييد	stressful (adj)	ضاغط - مُجهِد
contract (n)	عقد - وثيقة تعاقد	succeed (ed) (v)	ينجح
degree (n)	شهادة جامعية - درجة علمية	success (n)	النجاح
eligible (adj)	مؤهل / مرغوب فيه	team player (n)	شخص يجيد العمل الجماعي -
flexible (adj)	مرن	training (n)	شخص مُتعاون
hard-working (adj)	جاد في العمل		تدريب

## General Exercise On Vocabulary

✪ Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

- Which of the following work for somebody at their home?  
a. A bully      b. A housekeeper      c. An orphan      d. A stranger      e. A servant
- Someone who has a lot of money and property can be described as .....  
a. wealthy      b. wealth      c. rich      d. poor      e. poverty
- I trust him because he is .....  
a. rewarding      b. rewarded      c. reliable      d. unreliable      e. dependable



4. Which of the following adjectives express good qualities ?

- a. caring      b. uncaring      c. punctual      d. careless      e. cruel

⊛ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

5. My father brought me a/an ..... to teach me at home.

- a. patron      b. engineer      c. governess      d. nurse

6. She has the same family name as me, but she is no .....

- a. relation      b. adult      c. bright      d. servant

7. Some people who live in the mountains have little ..... with the outside world.

- a. hooves      b. right      c. connect      d. contact

8. It is known that ..... is necessary not only for the mind, but for the body and the character as well.

- a. equipment      b. schooling      c. decade      d. importance

9. I'm from Assiut, so I am a/an ..... in Aswan.

- a. expert      b. orphan      c. governess      d. stranger

10. When I am away, I ..... my family a lot.

- a. miss      b. care      c. earn      d. fight

11. Doctors have a ..... job; they make a lot of money.

- a. rewarding      b. stressful      c. professional      d. frustrating

12. Doctors have a ..... job; but they make a lot of money.

- a. rewarding      b. stressful      c. professional      d. frustrating

13. It is not ..... to tell your friend's secrets to others.

- a. successful      b. honest      c. legal      d. aged

14. I can look for a full-time job after I get my university .....

- a. opportunity      b. availability      c. degree      d. attention

15. I need someone to guide me as I am a ..... here.

- a. stranger      b. bully      c. kindness      d. conclusion

16. "If you bully your schoolmates again, you will be sent out of this school." In this sentence, 'bully' is a/an .....

- a. noun      b. verb      c. adjective      d. adverb

17. The development of ..... is necessary for a better future.

- a. level      b. confidence      c. education      d. success

18. "My mother has to prepare extra food for all our guests." The word 'extra' here is a/an .....

- a. noun      b. verb      c. adjective      d. adverb

19. Scientists are working ..... a new medicine for cancer.

- a. as      b. for      c. with      d. on

20. .... means learning skills you need for a job.

- a. Industry      b. Teaching      c. Loyalty      d. Training



## II Structures

### 1 The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

#### Formation : التكوين

Subject ..... التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل

- في الجملة المثبتة :

- e.g. : - Ahmed **visited** his friends yesterday.  
- They **watched** a film last night.

#### Usage : الاستخدام

- ١ يعبر الماضي البسيط عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي :  
e.g. : - I **studied** French when I **was** in secondary school.

- ٢ يعبر عن عادة في الماضي :  
e.g. : - Mr Mohammed **used to play** tennis when he **was** young.  
- I **used to write** very quickly.

- ٣ وصف أحداث في سرد قصة :  
e.g. : - Ali **found** a bag. He **took** it to the police station.

- ٤ في الحالة الثانية من جملة الشرط (If) :  
e.g. : - If he **helped** us, we would win.

- ٥ يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية ويعتبر ماضي غير حقيقي يعبر عن (افتراض شيء) وليس الواقع :  
١ **I wish + subject** ماضي بسيط + فاعل  
e.g. : - I wish mum **wasn't** ill. - I wish the Egyptian team **played** well.

- ٢ **It's time + subject** ماضي بسيط + فاعل  
e.g. : - It's time he **paid** the bill. - It is time father **arrived**.

- ٣ **I'd rather + subject** ماضي بسيط + فاعل  
e.g. : - I would rather she **helped** him. - I'd rather Ali **didn't come**.

- ٦ يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع التعبيرات الآتية :

#### Key words :

yesterday – ago – last – once – in the past – once upon a time –  
How long ago – the previous .... in the ancient time / in the old days

- e.g. : - Last week, I **went** to Alexandria.  
- Two months ago, we **flew** to London.  
- يلاحظ استخدام (always, usually, often, sometimes) للتعبير عن مدى تكرار الحدث في الماضي :

- e.g. : - When I was in Alex, I **always** swam in the sea.  
٧ عند تحويل زمن الماضي البسيط إلى صيغة المبني للمجهول نستخدم :

- (was, were + p.p.)  
e.g. : - Ali **found** a bag in the garden. - A bag **was found** (by Ali) in the garden.

### 2 Past Perfect simple

الماضي التام البسيط

- ١ يتكون زمن الماضي التام البسيط من :

Subject + had + p.p. ....

- e.g. I **had studied** English before I travelled to New York.



٢ عند اللغى :

Subject فاعل + hadn't + p.p. ....

e.g. They **hadn't watched** the match before they went shopping.

٢ عند الاستفهام بـ «هل» :

Had + subject فاعل + p.p. ....?

e.g. **Had** Soha **tidied** her room before she **went** to school ?

- Yes, she had.

- No, she hadn't.

٤ عند الاستفهام بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + had + subject + p.p. ....?

e.g. What **had happened** before you **phoned** the police ?

٥ عند تحويل زمن الماضي التام لصيغة المبني للمجهول نستخدم :

Object مفعول + had been + p.p. ....

e.g. English **had been studied** before I **travelled** to New York.**Uses : الاستخدامات**

١ حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي (لتوضيح الفارق الزمني بين الحدثين) :

- When I **had sent** the email, I **turned** off the computer.

٢ حدث تم قبل وقت محدد في الماضي وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم تعبيرات مثل:

(تعبير زمني دال على الماضي + (في مثل هذا الوقت / قبل / before / بحلول (by

- **By midnight**, my children **had gone** to bed.

٢ يمكن استخدام (since / for / just / already) مع الماضي التام وذلك في سياق التعبير عن أحداث ماضية :

- We left our old flat last year. We **had lived** there **since** I was born.

٤ يمكن استخدام الماضي التام مع روابط السبب و النتيجة والتناقض للتعبير عن الحدث الأول :

- He **looked** very tired because he **had worked** hard for a week.**Important Notes****ملاحظات هامة**١ جملة ماضى تام + Once / فى اللحظة التى / The moment / عندما / When / بمجرد أن / After / As soon as  
جملة ماضى بسيط +- After she **had arrived** home, she **phoned** me.

٢ جملة ماضى بسيط + (inf. + ing) / On + noun / After

- After/ On **arriving** home, she **phoned** me.

٣ جملة ماضى بسيط + ... + Having + p.p.

- **Having arrived** home, she **phoned** me.

٤ جملة ماضى تام + جملة ماضى بسيط + Before / By the time / When

- Before she **phoned** me, she **had arrived** home.

٥ جملة ماضى تام + (inf. + ing) / Before + noun

- Before **phoning** me, she **had arrived** home.

٦ جملة ماضى تام + حتى / till / until + جملة ماضى بسيط غالباً ما تكون منفية

- She **didn't phone** me until she **had arrived** home.



١ لاحظ استخدام الماضى التام مع الظروف التالية بمعنى (لم يكد ..... حتى) :

- Subj. + had + no sooner + p.p. ....+ than + جملة ماضى بسيط

= Subj. + had + hardly / scarcely + p.p. ....+ when + جملة ماضى بسيط

- She **had no sooner** arrived home **than** she **phoned** me.

= She **had hardly** arrived home **when** she **phoned** me.

تتقدم (had) على الفاعل عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ (No sooner, Hardly, Scarcely) :

- No sooner + had + subj. + p.p. ....+ than + جملة ماضى بسيط

= Hardly / Scarcely + had + subj. + p.p. ....+ when + جملة ماضى بسيط

- No sooner **had she** arrived home **than** she **phoned** me.

= **Hardly had she** arrived home **when** she **phoned** me.

٢ لاحظ :

It was only when } ماضى بسيط + that + ماضى تام +  
It wasn't until }

- It was only when I **had finished** my work **that** you **called** me.

- It wasn't until I **had finished** my work **that** you **called** me.

## الكلام الغير مباشر Reported Speech

### 1 Reported statements

الجملة الخبرية في الكلام غير المباشر

١ يتم تحويل الجملة الخبرية إلى الكلام غير المباشر كالتالي :

١ نبدأ بالممتدِّ (speaker).

٢ نستخدم فعل إبلاغ مناسب للجملة الخبرية مثل :

— قال شاكيًا said – reported – answered – replied – complained  
etc. .... أبدى ملاحظة explained – promised – remarked

لاحظ ضرورة استخدام المفعول (المُخاطَب) بعد أفعال الإبلاغ التالية :

(مُخاطَب) + ذَكَر reminded – أَعَدَّ assured – تَلَّأ told

٢ نستخدم (that) للربط، ويمكن حذفها.

٣ نحذف علامات التنصيص (".....") كما نحذف الفاصلة السفلى (,).

### الزمنة Tenses

٤ يتحول الزمن إلى الزمن الأبعد في الكلام الغير مباشر كالتالي :

مباشر Direct	غير مباشر Reported
- "Nada <b>writes</b> a letter", he said.	- He said " <b>that</b> " Nada wrote a letter.
- "Nada <b>is writing</b> a letter", he said.	- He said " <b>that</b> " Nada was writing a letter.

٥ لا تتغير الأزمنة في الحالات التالية :

أ. إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة علمية ثابتة :

e.g. - He said, "Lions **eat** meat".

- He said (that) lions **eat** meat.



ب. إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة ويدل على ذلك تعبيرات مثل :

said a moment ago – said a minute ago – said a short time ago – said just now / ....etc.

e.g. - Omar said a **moment ago**, "I'll **buy** some clothes **tomorrow**."

- Omar said a moment ago that he **will buy** some clothes **tomorrow**.

ج. إذا كان فعل القول في المضارع أو المستقبل :

e.g. - Amany **says**, "I **don't like** fish."

- Amany **says** she **doesn't like** fish.

د. لا تتحول الأزمنة في الحالتين الشرطيتين الثانية و الثالثة :

e.g. - "If I **had** enough money, I **would buy** a newer car", said Leila.

= Leila said that if she **had** enough money, she **would buy** a newer car.

٦ تتحول ظروف الزمان والمكان عند التحويل لصيغة غير المباشر.

e.g. - He said, "I **bought** a car yesterday".

- He said (that) he **had bought** a car the day before.

٧ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب.

e.g. - He said, "My mother **has called** me".

- He said (that) his mother **had called** him.

## 2 Reported «Yes / No» Questions

السؤال بـ «هل» في الكلام غير المباشر

١ يبدأ السؤال بـ (هل) بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الأفعال الناقصة التالية :

Do / Does / Did - Have / Has / Had - Am / Is / Are / Was / Were /  
- Can / Could - Will / Would - May / Might - Shall / Should - Must

٢ يتم تحويل السؤال بـ (هل) إلى الكلام الغير مباشر كالتالي :

.... + فاعل / مفعول + if / whether + (مخاطب) + asked + المتحدث Speaker

- Speaker + wondered / استفسر / inquired / تسأل + if / whether + فاعل / مفعول + .....  
+ if / whether + فاعل / مفعول + .....  
+ if / whether + فاعل / مفعول + .....  
+ if / whether + فاعل / مفعول + .....

١ نحذف علامات التنصيص (".....") ونحذف علامه الاستفهام ونضع نقطه مكانها.

٢ تتحول أفعال الإبلاغ كالتالي :

say to / says to + مخاطب → ask / asks + مخاطب  
said to + مخاطب → asked + مخاطب

٣ تتحول الأزمنة إلى الأبعد مثل الجملة الخبرية.

٤ تتحول ظروف الزمان و المكان مثل الجملة الخبرية.

e.g. - "Will you **buy** this T-shirt?" Ashraf said.

= Ashraf wondered if I **would buy** that T-shirt.



### 3 Reported Wh-Questions

الأسئلة في الكلام غير المباشر

١ في الكلام المباشر، يبدأ السؤال بأحد أدوات الاستفهام التالية يليه الفعل المساعد :

what – when – where – why – who – whose – which – how ...

e.g. - “Why has she arrived home late ?” said Ali.

= Ali said, “Why has she arrived home late ?”

٢ تتكون جملة السؤال بأداة استفهام في الكلام غير المباشر من :

نص الكلام غير المباشر + أداة استفهام + فعل إبلاغ + مُبَلِّغ  
she had arrived home late. why asked Ali

٣ تستخدم أفعال الإبلاغ بنفس الطريقة التي تم شرحها في (Yes / No questions) :

e.g. - Sama asked Abdo when he had got up.

- Sama wondered / wanted to know when Abdo had got up.

٤ يستخدم الفاعل وليس الفعل المساعد بعد (أداة الاستفهام) في الكلام غير المباشر :

e.g. - I wondered where she had gone. (Not : where had she).

### General Exercise On Structures

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Did you ..... a secretary for your office ?  
a. find                      b. found                      c. was found                      d. had found
- ..... a secretary been found for your office ?  
a. Did                      b. Had                      c. Was                      d. Have
- My uncle didn't remember the promise he ..... made.  
a. has                      b. had                      c. had been                      d. was
- My uncle didn't remember the promise that ..... made by him.  
a. has                      b. had                      c. had been                      d. has been
- I ..... into a good family from the south of Egypt.  
a. bore                      b. was born                      c. had been born                      d. have been born
- I didn't answer any question ..... I had read it carefully.  
a. because                      b. until                      c. so                      d. once
- When Mariam was young, she used to ..... in London.  
a. lives                      b. living                      c. live                      d. lived
- ..... she was a little girl, she wanted to be an actress.  
a. Before                      b. After                      c. When                      d. On
- He had ..... left the house when it began to rain.  
a. recently                      b. no sooner                      c. hardly                      d. then
- We went to bed ..... we had finished our jobs.  
a. before                      b. till                      c. after                      d. by the time

11. The manager ..... me that I could have rest that day.  
a. explained      b. asked      c. told      d. said
12. Rokaya ..... whether I was a doctor.  
a. told      b. said      c. explained      d. wondered
13. My wife said ..... she really loved her job.  
a. that      b. if      c. to      d. not to
14. I ..... Sama what she was doing.  
a. wondered      b. asked      c. said to      d. inquired
15. I didn't ask her ..... she would come shopping with us. I forgot doing so.  
a. weather      b. that      c. what      d. if
16. I'd like to know ..... he lives.  
a. what      b. about      c. where      d. when
17. Youssef asked me ..... a driving licence.  
a. do you have      b. you had      c. did you have      d. whether I had
18. "We want you to help us, please"  
- Mustafa said that they wanted ..... to help them.  
a. we      b. they      c. us      d. our
19. Rodayna told Ahmed that ..... new dress was expensive.  
a. her      b. his      c. hers      d. my
20. Omar said that he had begun to live in that flat five years .....  
a. ago      b. then      c. before      d. after

### 3 Units 11 & 12

#### I Vocabulary

##### Unit 11

achieve (d) (v)	يُحَقِّق - يَنْجِز	Paralympian (n)	لاعب أولمبي من ذوي
achievement (n)	إنجاز		الاحتياجات الخاصة
activist (n)	ناشط	Paralympic (adj)	خاص بأولمبياد ذوي
campaign (n)	حملة		الاحتياجات الخاصة
champion (n)	بطل (رياضي)	Paralympics (n)	أولمبياد ذوي الاحتياجات
compete (d) (v)	يُنَافِس - يتسابق	= Paralympic Games	الخاصة
competition (n)	مُسَابَقَة - مُنَافَسَة	polio (n)	مرض شلل الأطفال
disability (n)	إعاقَة - عَجْز	powerlifting (n)	رياضة القوة البدنية
disabled (adj)	مُعاق	ramp (n)	مُنْخَدَر - مَطْلَع للكراسي
equal opportunities	فُرْص متكافئة		المتحركة
high and low (adv)	في كل مكان	request (ed) (n - v)	يَقْدِم طلب - طَلَب
highs and lows (n)	افراح واحزان - النجاح والفشل	sign off (n)	يُسْجَل خروج (من موقع
Kung Fu (n)	رياضة الكونغ فو		إلكتروني) - خاتمة - خروج
madam (n)	سيدة - سِدِي	sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع
medal (n)	ميدالية	wheelchair (n)	كرسي متحرك
muscle (n)	عضلة		



## Unit 12

disappear (ed) (v)	يختفي	plot (n)	خُبْكة (رواية / مسرحية ...)
engaged (adj)	خاطب - مخطوبة	solve (d) (v)	يحل
guilty (adj)	مُذنب	theme (n)	الموضوع / الفكرة الرئيسية
mystery (n)	لغز - سر غامض	village (n)	قرية
pace (n)	وتيرة الأحداث	villager (n)	شخص قروي
page-turner (n)	كتاب شيق / مثير	weaver (n)	نَساج / حائك

## General Exercise On Vocabulary

⊛ Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

- Stop making ..... .  
a. achievements    b. goals    c. noise    d. a difference    e. complaints
- The word 'amazing' is synonymous with ..... .  
a. ordinary    b. breathtaking    c. usual    d. awesome    e. normal
- When something is distant, it is ..... .  
a. close    b. nearby    c. distance    d. far away    e. a long distance away
- Those who attack ships are called ..... .  
a. captains    b. criminals    c. crews    d. pirates    e. sailors

⊛ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

- The moon has ..... behind the dark cloud.  
a. solved    b. disappeared    c. recommended    d. proved
- In modern life, the ..... of change is very fast.  
a. pace    b. warehouse    c. community    d. souvenir
- The ..... of this film is boring, but the music is fantastic.  
a. director    b. actor    c. plot    d. name
- You won't be able to put such a ..... down until you have finished it.  
a. page-turner    b. pacemaker    c. weaver    d. villager
- This story has a good ..... . It is the value of cooperation and teamwork.  
a. shape    b. solution    c. village    d. theme
- She was ..... to a young man called Hossam.  
a. abandoned    b. engaged    c. reliable    d. confident
- Living in a ..... is better for people who prefer simple life.  
a. whole    b. monster    c. village    d. mystery
- Jim Hawkins is the main ..... in Treasure Island.  
a. monster    b. page turner    c. weaver    d. character
- People who cannot see are ..... .  
a. disabled    b. medical    c. physical    d. Olympic
- Like ordinary people, people with ..... can play sports and win medals.  
a. achievements    b. ramps    c. disabilities    d. campuses

15. It is the dream of all athletes to ..... in the Olympics.  
 a. receive                      b. compete                      c. windsurf                      d. lift
16. Is ..... an Olympic sport?  
 a. campaign                      b. diversity                      c. Paralympics                      d. powerlifting
17. Environmental ..... groups try hard to reduce pollution.  
 a. activist                      b. Paralympian                      c. celebrity                      d. colleague
18. You need to be hard-working and organized to ..... your goals in life.  
 a. interview                      b. request                      c. achieve                      d. retire
19. All people in society are ..... in rights and duties. الحقوق والواجبات  
 a. medal                      b. equal                      c. medical                      d. physical
20. A/An ..... is another name for the closing of an email.  
 a. request                      b. opening                      c. access                      d. sign-off

## II Structures

### 1 who / which / whom / that

الذى / التى / الذين / اللاتى

١. تشير (who / that) إلى فاعل عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فعل ولا يمكن حذفهما :  
 e.g. - I met my pen friend who / that lives in London.  
 - Teachers are people who / that work at schools.
٢. تشير (who / whom / that) إلى مفعول عاقل في حالة المبني للمعلوم ويأتي بعدهم فاعل ويمكن حذفهم :  
 e.g. - The man who / whom / that you met with me yesterday is my uncle.  
 = The man you met with me yesterday is my uncle.
٣. تشير (which / that) إلى فاعل غير عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فعل ولا يمكن حذفهما :  
 e.g. - The dog which / that chased me belongs to my neighbours.
٤. تشير (which / that) إلى مفعول غير عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فاعل ويمكن حذفهما :  
 e.g. - The car which / that I bought has a problem with the engine.  
 - The car I bought has a problem with the engine.
٥. لا تستخدم (that) في الجمل الاعتراضية - أي بعد الفاصلة التحتية (,) :  
 e.g. - Ismail Yassen, who is still a famous actor, died in the 1970s. (Not: that is....)  
 - Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is very hot. (Not: that is....)
٦. بالنسبة لحروف الجر مع (who / whom / that / which) :  
 ا. لا تأتي حروف الجر قبل كل من (who / that) بل تأتي بعدهما في نهاية الجملة الموصولة :  
 e.g. - This is my friend who I play tennis with. (Not: with who....)  
 - This is the motorbike that I go to school on. (Not: on that....)  
 ب. يمكن أن تأتي حروف الجر قبل أو بعد كل من (whom / which) :  
 e.g. - This is my friend whom I play tennis with.  
 = This is my friend with whom I play tennis.  
 - This is the motorbike which I go to school on.  
 = This is the motorbike on which I go to school.



## 2 where

حيث / حيثما / المكان الذي

١ تعود على المكان ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:

- e.g. - This is the room where I sleep.  
- She went to Cairo University where she studied Arabic language.

٢ لاحظ أن:

(where = which + حرف جر مناسب للمكان) / (which / that + ... حرف جر مناسب للمكان)

- e.g. - This is the room in which I sleep.  
- This is the room which / that I sleep in.

٣ يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع المكان بدون حروف جر عندما يكون المكان مفعول لجملته الوصل :

- لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

- e.g. - This is the house where we live. (المنزل مكان نعيش فيه)  
- This is the house which we built. (المنزل مفعول، فهو الشيء الذي تم بنائه)

٤ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على المكان قبل أو بعد (where) :

- e.g. - I went to the room in which I sleep. (Not: the room in where ....)  
- I went to the room which I sleep in. (Not: the room where .... in)

## Extra Notes

## 3 when

حين / حينها / عندما / الوقت الذي

١ تُشير إلى الوقت أو الزمن ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:

- e.g. - 2012 was the year when Rodayna was born.  
- Friday is the day when we don't go to school.  
- Two o'clock is the time when I return home from school.

(when = which + حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني) / (which / that + ... حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني)

- e.g. - 2012 was the year in which Rodayna was born.  
= 2012 was the year which / that Rodayna was born in.  
- Friday is the day on which we don't go to school.  
= Friday is the day which / that we don't go to school on.  
- Two o'clock is the time at which I get up.  
= Two o'clock is the time which / that I get up at.

٢ يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع الوقت عندما يكون الوقت مفعول لجملته الوصل :

- لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

- e.g. - Winter is the season when we go to Aswan.  
= We go to Aswan in winter.  
- Winter is the season which we spend in Aswan.  
= We spend winter in Aswan.

٣ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على التعبير الزمني قبل أو بعد (when) :

- e.g. - Friday is the day on which my son was born. (Not: the day on when ....)  
- Friday is the day which my son was born on. (Not: the day when .... on)

#### 4 Whose = (Nouns + 's) / my - his - her - its - our - your - their ...

تدل على الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم (أى لا يأتى بعدها فعل) :

- e.g. - I saw **an old man whose son** was kidnapped.  
- She lives in **a house whose roof** is high.

#### 5 Present Deduction

الاستنتاج فى المضارع

١ للتعبير عن استنتاج قوى فى المضارع نستخدم :

**must** لابد / **can't** لا يمكن + **inf.** .....

- e.g. - He has a villa and three cars. He **must be** rich. He **can't be** poor.

٢ نستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن استنتاج ضعيف فى المضارع (عدم تأكد أو عدم معرفة أو عدم اعتقاد):

**may** من المحتمل / **might** من الممكن + **inf.** .....

- e.g. - I don't know where Sama is now. She **may be** at home. She **might be** out.

٣ لعمل استنتاج عن حدث مستمر فى المضارع نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

**must / can't / may / might + be + (inf. + ing)** .....

A: Why doesn't Amr answer the phone?

B: I don't know. He **might be** having a shower.

#### 6 Past Deduction

الاستنتاج فى الماضى

١ للتعبير عن استنتاج قوى فى الماضى نستخدم:

**must** لابد / **can't** لا يمكن + **have + p.p.** .....

- Abdu looked very happy after the exam. He **must have done** well.  
- He was in London last Thursday. He **can't have attended** the meeting in Cairo that day.

٢ نستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن استنتاج ضعيف فى الماضى (عدم تأكد أو عدم معرفة أو عدم اعتقاد):

**may** من المحتمل / **might** من الممكن + **have + p.p.** .....

- I have no idea why he was so sad. He **may / might have heard** some bad news.

٣ لعمل استنتاج عن حدث مستمر فى الماضى نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

**must / can't / may / might + have been + inf. + ing** .....

A: I phoned him three times this morning, but there was no answer.

B: I don't know why, but he **might have been sleeping**.

#### General Exercise On Structures

⊛ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. For me, my home is a place ..... I feel free and relaxed.

a. who                      b. where                      c. when                      d. that

2. For me, my home is a place ..... I feel free and relaxed in.

a. who                      b. where                      c. when                      d. which



3. The exports, ..... include cotton and vegetables, come from all over Egypt.  
a. that                      b. whose                      c. which                      d. where
4. Summer is the season ..... we go on holiday.  
a. where                      b. which                      c. who                      d. when
5. This is the time ..... Rodayna usually arrives home.  
a. whose                      b. who                      c. when                      d. which
6. The girl ..... has been injured in the accident is now in hospital.  
a. whom                      b. when                      c. who                      d. where
7. The machine ..... broke down has now been repaired.  
a. who                      b. which                      c. whom                      d. where
8. The people, ..... were arrested, have now been released.  
a. that                      b. whose                      c. who                      d. whom
9. The bus ..... goes to the city centre runs every half hour.  
a. which                      b. on which                      c. where                      d. when
10. She works for a company ..... produces mobile phones.  
a. who                      b. that                      c. where                      d. when
11. Hana is in a very difficult situation. It ..... easy for her.  
a. might have been                      b. might be                      c. can't have been                      d. can't be
12. Hana was in a very difficult situation. It ..... easy for her.  
a. might have been                      b. might be                      c. can't have been                      d. can't be
13. You've been travelling all day. You ..... be very tired.  
a. can't                      b. may                      c. might                      d. must
14. You've been travelling all day. You ..... be relaxed.  
a. can't                      b. may                      c. might                      d. must
15. He ..... be French, but he is probably Italian.  
a. must                      b. might                      c. can't                      d. will
16. The criminal must have ..... by the police.  
a. arrested                      b. be arrested                      c. been arrested                      d. being arrested
17. Mona has a fever. She ..... ill.  
a. may be                      b. can't be                      c. should be                      d. must be
18. They are all wearing coats, so it ..... cold when they took the photograph.  
a. must be                      b. can be                      c. must have been                      d. can't have been
19. He looks very sad. He ..... the race.  
a. must have won                      b. can't have won  
c. might win                      d. must win
20. You look sleepy. You ..... had enough sleep last night.  
a. might have                      b. must have                      c. can't have                      d. may have



## 1 Incidents الأحداث

- 1 What type/kind/sort of novel is "Treasure Island"?  
- It is an adventure novel. ١ ما هو نوع رواية "جزيرة الكنز"؟  
- إنها رواية مغامرة.
- 2 What is the setting of "Treasure Island"?  
- The story happens in the 18th century. It starts in Bristol, moves to the Hispaniola and then to Treasure Island.  
- القصة تحدث في القرن الثامن عشر. يبدأ الأمر في "بريستول"، وينتقل إلى "هيسبانيولا" ثم إلى جزيرة الكنز. ٢ ما المكان والزمان الذي تدور فيه أحداث رواية "جزيرة الكنز"؟  
- المكان والزمان الذي تدور فيه أحداث رواية "جزيرة الكنز"؟  
- القصة تحدث في القرن الثامن عشر. يبدأ الأمر في "بريستول"، وينتقل إلى "هيسبانيولا" ثم إلى جزيرة الكنز.
- 3 Give possible reasons why Flint built the fort.  
- Perhaps he wanted to protect himself from the pirates and bad weather.  
- ربما أراد حماية نفسه من القراصنة ومن سوء الأحوال الجوية. ٣ أعط الأسباب المحتملة وراء قيام "فلينت" ببناء الحصن.  
- Perhaps he wanted to protect himself from the pirates and bad weather.  
- ربما أراد حماية نفسه من القراصنة ومن سوء الأحوال الجوية.
- 4 How did Jim know that the pirates had taken the ship?  
- The ship was flying the pirates' flag.  
- كانت السفينة ترفع علم القراصنة. ٤ كيف عرف "جيم" أن القراصنة استولوا على السفينة؟  
- The ship was flying the pirates' flag.  
- كانت السفينة ترفع علم القراصنة.
- 5 Why do you think Captain Smollett kept everyone in the fort busy?  
- To make them forget their worries and to do necessary jobs.  
- ليجعلهم ينسون همومهم ويقومون بالأعمال الضرورية. ٥ برأيك، لماذا أبقى الكابتن "سموليت" الجميع في الحصن مشغولين؟  
- To make them forget their worries and to do necessary jobs.  
- ليجعلهم ينسون همومهم ويقومون بالأعمال الضرورية.
- 6 What advantages did Captain Smollett and his men have over the pirates?  
- They had the map and they were safer in the fort.  
- كانت لديهم الخريطة وكانوا أكثر أماناً في الحصن. ٦ ما هي المزايا التي يتمتع بها الكابتن "سموليت" ورجاله على القراصنة؟  
- كانت لديهم الخريطة وكانوا أكثر أماناً في الحصن.
- 7 What advantages did the pirates have over Captain Smollett and his men?  
- They had the ship and they were more in number.  
- كانت لديهم السفينة وكانوا أكثر عدداً. ٧ ما هي المزايا التي يتمتع بها القراصنة على الكابتن "سموليت" ورجاله؟  
- كانت لديهم السفينة وكانوا أكثر عدداً.
- 8 If you were Captain Smollett, would you accept the truce? Why/Why not?  
- No, I wouldn't. It was a trick.  
- لا، لن أفعل. لقد كانت خدعة. ٨ لو كنت الكابتن "سموليت" هل تقبل الهدنة؟ لماذا/لماذا لا؟  
- لا، لن أفعل. لقد كانت خدعة.
- 9 Why do you think the pirates wanted to attack the fort from the north?  
- Perhaps it was the weakest side.  
- ربما كان الجانب الأضعف. ٩ برأيك، لماذا أراد القراصنة مهاجمة الحصن من الشمال؟  
- Perhaps it was the weakest side.  
- ربما كان الجانب الأضعف.
- 10 Gray thought that Dr Livesy was crazy. Give a logical reason.  
- Because he left the fort and went out into the trees alone.  
- اعتقد "جراي" أن الدكتور "ليشسي" كان مجنوناً. اذكر سبب منطقي لذلك. ١٠ Gray thought that Dr Livesy was crazy. Give a logical reason.  
- Because he left the fort and went out into the trees alone.  
- اعتقد "جراي" أن الدكتور "ليشسي" كان مجنوناً. اذكر سبب منطقي لذلك.
- 11 Luck helped Jim after cutting the rope to the anchor of the Hispaniola. Show how.  
- Despite the high wave, he did not drown in his small boat.  
- رغم ارتفاع الموج لم يغرق في قارب الصغير. ١١ لقد ساعد الحظ "جيم" بعد أن قطع حبل مرساة "هيسبانيولا". وضح كيف.  
- Despite the high wave, he did not drown in his small boat.  
- رغم ارتفاع الموج لم يغرق في قارب الصغير.
- 12 "Well, I've decided to take the ship, so you must now call me Captain." What do these words reflect about Jim?  
- These words show that Jim was brave.  
- حسناً، لقد قررت أن أخذ السفينة، لذا يجب عليك الآن أن تدعوني بالقبطان. ما الذي تعكسه هذه الكلمات عن "جيم"؟ ١٢ "Well, I've decided to take the ship, so you must now call me Captain." What do these words reflect about Jim?  
- These words show that Jim was brave.  
- حسناً، لقد قررت أن أخذ السفينة، لذا يجب عليك الآن أن تدعوني بالقبطان. ما الذي تعكسه هذه الكلمات عن "جيم"؟  
- هذه الكلمات تظهر أن "جيم" كان شجاعاً.



## 2 Characters الشخصيات

- 13 Guess why Flint wasn't frightened of anyone, except Silver.  
 ١٣ ذمن لماذا لم يكن "فلينت" يخاف من أحد سوى "سيلفر".  
 - Because Silver was cunning and evil. - لأن "سيلفر" كان مأكراً وشريراً.
- 14 "Ben Gun was a little crazy." Give a possible reason for that.  
 ١٤ "كان "بن جن" مجنوناً بعض الشيء." أذكر سبب محتمل لذلك.  
 - Because he was alone on the island for three years. - لأنه بقي بمفرده في الجزيرة لمدة ثلاث سنوات.
- 15 Ben Gun found the treasure worthless on the island. Explain.  
 ١٥ وجد "بن جن" أن الكنز عديم القيمة في الجزيرة. وضح ذلك.  
 - The treasure didn't help him buy good food or go back to his home. - الكنز لم يساعده على شراء طعام جيد أو العودة إلى موطنه.
- 16 Jim proved to be brave in different situations. Explain.  
 ١٦ أثبت "جيم" أنه شجاع في مواقف مختلفة. وضح ذلك.  
 - He went to the ship alone twice and took it away from the pirates. - لقد ذهب إلى السفينة بمفرده مرتين وأخذها من القراصنة.
- 17 Who is the hero of "Treasure Island"?  
 ١٧ من هو بطل جزيرة الكنز?  
 - Jim Hawkins. - "جيم" هو كينز.
- 18 Who do you think is the best character in the novel? Why?  
 ١٨ من برأيك أفضل شخصية في الرواية؟ لماذا؟  
 - I think Jim was the best character because he was intelligent and brave. - أعتقد أن "جيم" كان أفضل شخصية لأنه كان ذكياً وشجاعاً.
- 19 Who do you think is the worst character in the novel? Why?  
 ١٩ من برأيك أسوأ شخصية في الرواية؟ لماذا؟  
 - I think Silver was the worst character because he was cunning and evil. He used to kill in cold blood. - أعتقد أن "سيلفر" كان أسوأ شخصية لأنه كان مأكراً وشريراً. كان معتاداً على القتل بدم بارد.
- 20 What do you think of Captain Smollett?  
 ٢٠ ما رأيك في الكابتن "سموليت"؟  
 - I think he was a wise man who could judge people well. - أعتقد أنه كان رجلاً حكيماً يستطيع أن يحكم على الناس بشكل جيد.

## 3 Morals الدروس المُستفادة

- 21 Did Dr Livesy and his men have the right to take the treasure? Why?  
 ٢١ هل كان للدكتور "ليشسي" ورجاله الحق في أخذ الكنز؟ لماذا؟  
 - No. The treasure was stolen and put there by the pirates. It belongs only to its original owners. - لا، لقد سرق القراصنة الكنز ووضعوه هناك. إنه يخص أصحابه الأصليين فقط.
- 22 What is the moral of "Treasure Island"?  
 ٢٢ ما هو المغزى من رواية "جزيرة الكنز"؟  
 What lesson do we learn from "Treasure Island"?  
 ما الدرس الذي تعلمناه من رواية "جزيرة الكنز"؟  
 - Good and honest people win the prize, while wicked and treacherous people are punished for their evil deeds. - الأخيار والصادقون يفوزون، بينما الأشرار والخائنون يُعاقبون على أفعالهم الشريرة.



**1 How to keep hygiene at home**

Keeping good hygiene at home is crucial for maintaining a healthy and clean-living environment. Firstly, it is essential to practice regular cleaning habits. This includes frequently washing dishes, wiping down kitchen countertops, and cleaning the bathroom. By doing so, you can eliminate potential bacteria and germs that may cause illnesses. Additionally, regularly disposing of garbage and maintaining a clutter-free space helps prevent the accumulation of dust and dirt, making the home more pleasant and hygienic. Furthermore, personal hygiene plays a vital role in keeping the home clean. As a high school student, it is essential to develop habits such as washing hands thoroughly with soap and water for at least 20 seconds, especially after using the restroom or before handling food. It is equally important to shower daily, using soap and shampoo to clean the body and hair. Wearing clean clothes and regularly laundering them helps eliminate body odors and prevent the spread of germs. Lastly, maintaining a balanced diet, drinking plenty of water, and getting enough sleep supports overall health, consequently impacting one's individual hygiene and indirectly benefiting the cleanliness of the home.

**2 Health and safety**

Health and safety play crucial roles in our everyday lives, ensuring that we stay protected and well. It refers to the measures we take to prevent accidents, injuries, and illnesses and to promote overall well-being. One aspect of health and safety is maintaining a clean environment, such as by washing our hands regularly to prevent the spread of germs. This simple action can help keep

us and those around us safe from illnesses like colds and the flu. Another key aspect of health and safety is practicing proper precautions, such as wearing seatbelts while driving, which can greatly reduce the risk of serious injuries in case of an accident. By understanding and following health and safety guidelines, we can lead healthier and safer lives. Additionally, workplace safety is an important aspect of health and safety. It is crucial for both employers and employees to prioritize safety to prevent workplace accidents and injuries. This can include providing proper training and equipment, maintaining a clean and organized work environment, and creating an atmosphere where employees feel comfortable reporting safety concerns. By doing so, businesses can avoid unnecessary costs and downtime caused by accidents while also ensuring the well-being of their employees. Overall, health and safety play critical roles in various aspects of our lives, promoting not only our physical well-being but also our mental and emotional well-being. It is important for individuals, communities, and organizations to prioritize and take active measures to maintain a safe and healthy environment for everyone.

**3 Public cleanliness**

Public cleanliness is an important aspect of our daily lives that contributes to the overall well-being of society. It refers to the maintenance of a clean and hygienic environment in public spaces such as streets, parks, and public facilities. Keeping our surroundings clean not only promotes good health but also fosters a sense of pride and community among citizens. When public areas are kept clean, it reduces the chances of diseases spreading and ensures a safer and more enjoyable experience for everyone. To



maintain public cleanliness, individuals need to take responsibility for their actions and be mindful of their surroundings. Littering, for example, should be strictly avoided, and trash should be disposed of in designated bins. Additionally, it is essential to practice good personal hygiene, like washing hands after using public restrooms or coughing or sneezing into a tissue or elbow. Regular cleaning and maintenance of public spaces by local authorities are also crucial to ensuring a clean environment. Awareness campaigns and educational programs can help instill a sense of responsibility and encourage individuals to actively participate in keeping public areas clean. By working together, we can create a cleaner and healthier community for everyone to enjoy.

#### 4 The pros and cons of having technology in the house

Having technology in the house has its pros and cons. On the one hand, it allows us to connect with the world and access a vast amount of information. For instance, with the internet at our fingertips, we can research and learn about any subject we are interested in. Additionally, technology provides us with convenience and entertainment. We can accomplish tasks more efficiently with the help of devices like smartphones, laptops, and smart home systems. Moreover, we can use technology for leisure activities such as watching movies, playing games, or streaming music. With so many benefits, having technology in the house can enhance our lives in various ways. On the other hand, there are also drawbacks to having technology in the house. One major concern is the potential negative impact on physical and mental health. Spending hours on screens can lead to sedentary behavior and less physical activity, which in turn can contribute to obesity and other health issues. Moreover, excessive screen time can negatively affect sleep patterns and lead to

sleep deprivation, which is detrimental to our overall well-being. Furthermore, technology can be addictive, leading to a lack of focus and reduced productivity. It is easy to get caught up in the constant notifications and distractions, making it difficult to concentrate on important tasks. Thus, while technology brings many advantages, it is crucial to maintain a balance and use it responsibly to avoid these potential disadvantages.

#### 5 The internet

The internet is an incredible invention that has revolutionized the way we communicate, learn, and access information. It is a global network of computers that allows us to connect with people from all over the world and exchange ideas and thoughts. With the internet, we can easily communicate with our friends and family through social media platforms and instant messaging apps. It also provides us with endless learning opportunities, as we can research any topic imaginable and find articles, videos, and online classes to expand our knowledge. Moreover, the internet allows us to stay updated with the latest news and developments in different fields, giving us the ability to form our own opinions and engage in intelligent discussions. Overall, the internet has become an indispensable tool for our generation, empowering us to be informed, connected, and intellectually curious individuals. However, while the internet offers numerous benefits, it also presents challenges. One major concern is the issue of online security and privacy. High school students should be wary of the potential risks associated with sharing personal information online and should regularly review privacy settings on their social media accounts. Additionally, it is crucial to develop critical thinking skills when consuming information on the internet, as not all sources are reliable or accurate. High school students need to be discerning and question the validity of the sources they encounter to ensure that they are accessing



credible information. Finally, it is important to find a healthy balance between time spent on the internet and engaging in real-life activities, such as pursuing hobbies, exercising, and spending quality time with friends and family. By being aware of these challenges and actively seeking to address them, high school students can make the most of the internet while minimizing its potential pitfalls.

## 6 Technology and learning foreign languages

Technology has revolutionized the way we learn foreign languages, making the process more accessible and engaging for high school students. One of the benefits of technology in language learning is the abundance of online resources available. Websites and apps such as Duolingo, Babbel, and Rosetta Stone offer interactive lessons that cater to different levels of proficiency. These platforms utilize features like gamification, personalized feedback, and audio exercises to enhance language skills. By incorporating technology into language learning, high school students can conveniently access these resources anywhere and at any time, allowing them to practice and improve their language skills at their own pace. Moreover, technology has also made communication with native speakers easier and more efficient. Social media platforms, instant messaging apps, and online language exchanges provide opportunities for high school students to connect with people from different countries who speak the language they are learning. Students can engage in real-time conversations, exchange ideas, and receive instant feedback on their pronunciation and grammar. These interactions not only improve language proficiency but also foster cultural awareness and global understanding. Technology has truly transformed the way we learn foreign languages, providing high school students with a richer, more immersive language learning experience.

## 7 Education and technology

Education and technology have become inseparable in today's digital age. Technology has revolutionized the way students learn and the way teachers teach. With the advent of computers, tablets, and smartphones, access to information and educational resources has never been easier. Students can now quickly conduct research, complete assignments, and collaborate with their peers all from the comfort of their own home. Furthermore, online learning platforms and educational apps provide interactive and engaging content, making learning more fun and effective. Technology has indeed made education more accessible, efficient, and enjoyable for high school students. However, it is important to acknowledge the potential downsides of relying too heavily on technology in education. While technology can enhance learning, it can also be a source of distraction. With the constant allure of social media and entertainment websites, it becomes increasingly challenging for students to stay focused on their studies. Additionally, the overreliance on technology can hinder the development of critical thinking and problem-solving skills. Simply memorizing facts and information without deeply understanding the underlying concepts may become prevalent. Therefore, while incorporating technology into education is beneficial, maintaining a balance between technology and traditional teaching methods is crucial to ensure a well-rounded education for high school students.

## 8 An invention that has made a difference in your life

One invention that has made a significant difference in my life is the smartphone. Ever since I got my first smartphone, I have been able to connect with my friends and family in a much easier and efficient way. The smartphone allows me to stay constantly connected through social media apps, instant



messaging, and video calls. This has made it easier for me to keep in touch with loved ones who are far away, and has also helped me maintain strong relationships with my friends. Additionally, the smartphone has become an essential tool for my day-to-day activities as it provides me with useful apps such as maps, notes, and reminders. Being able to carry out countless tasks with just one device has truly simplified my life and made it more convenient. Moreover, the smartphone has become a valuable source of information for me. With just a few taps, I can access a vast amount of knowledge on any subject through search engines and educational apps. This has greatly aided me in my studies both inside and outside the classroom. Whether it's researching for a project, looking up unfamiliar concepts, or even finding tutorials and educational videos, my smartphone has become a reliable tool that assists me in gaining knowledge. Furthermore, it has also helped me stay organized with its calendar and reminder features, allowing me to manage my school work and extracurricular activities more effectively. Overall, the smartphone has truly revolutionized the way I communicate, learn, and organize my life, making it an incredible invention that has had a profound impact on my daily routine as a high school student.

## 9 Boarding schools and their influence on children

Boarding schools have a profound influence on children, shaping their character, fostering independence, and providing ample opportunities for growth and development. One significant aspect of boarding schools is their focus on rigorous academics. By immersing students in a structured learning environment, these institutions promote intellectual growth and a thirst for knowledge. Students are constantly challenged through challenging coursework and are encouraged to engage in critical thinking and problem-solving. Additionally,

boarding schools often boast highly qualified and dedicated teachers who provide personalized attention, aiding students in their academic pursuits. This emphasis on education equips children with valuable skills that will benefit them throughout their lives. Moreover, boarding schools encourage independence and self-reliance among children. Away from the comforts and convenience of home, students learn to adapt and become responsible for their daily routines and decisions. They are required to manage their time efficiently, balance academics with extracurricular activities, and navigate the intricacies of communal living. These experiences foster resilience, maturity, and the ability to cope with challenges. Furthermore, boarding schools often promote a diverse and inclusive environment, where students from different backgrounds come together, forging lifelong friendships and learn to appreciate cultural differences. This exposure to a variety of perspectives and ideas broadens students' horizons and prepares them for a diverse and interconnected world. In conclusion, boarding schools have a profound influence on children's intellectual, emotional, and social development. The focus on rigorous academics cultivates a love for learning and critical thinking skills. Simultaneously, the emphasis on independence and communal living fosters maturity, resilience, and the ability to navigate diverse environments. Undoubtedly, boarding schools provide a unique and enriching educational experience that can shape and inspire students for a lifetime.



## 2. Reading Comprehension

**1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

I like reading stories. The most important thing in reading stories is that they have morals. Do you believe that a wealthy man can die because of hunger ? Let's start our story to know what happened. This story is about a very rich man. That man had a lot of wealth and a huge palace. He used to leave his family in their usual house to spend a few days every month alone in his palace to plan for his coming business and count his increasing money. He used to keep his money in an **enormous** room in the palace.

Once he closed the room without realizing that he had left the key out. After so many hours, he began to feel hungry and wanted to go out to eat something but he found out his terrible mistake. The room had no handle to be opened from inside. He tried very hard to open the metal door but in vain.

Days and nights passed while he was starving. Finally, he became sure that he would die. He wanted to leave a message but he didn't have a pen. So, he injured his finger and used his blood to write the moral of that awful situation on the wall of the room. "The richest man in America died of starvation".

- The main idea of the passage is .....  
 a. One mustn't be hungry  
 b. To be rich is the best thing  
 c. All rich people die of starvation  
 d. Money can't help in all situations
- The door of the room was made of .....  
 a. iron  
 b. wood  
 c. gravel  
 d. brick
- The rich man injured his finger to .....  
 a. open the door  
 b. die  
 c. count money  
 d. write a message
- A palace is .....  
 a. a prison  
 b. a mountain  
 c. a large house  
 d. a charity
- The rich man spent a few days every month by himself to.....  
 a. open the metal door  
 b. leave a message  
 c. plan for his coming business  
 d. write the moral of a situation
- The underlined word "**enormous**" means .....  
 a. tiny  
 b. strong  
 c. massive  
 d. elegant
- The rich man couldn't open the door as .....  
 a. he was hungry  
 b. he was full  
 c. the room had no handle from inside  
 d. the key didn't work

**2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Long ago, people used to live in groups in caves or in jungles. They wandered from place to place hunting animals and looking for food like nuts, wild fruits and berries. Then later people began to settle along or near rivers because they were sources of water, food, trade and transport. They used the river water for drinking, cooking and washing. Their animals also drank from these rivers. The rivers were full of fish.

Rivers also made good farmland for these early river settlers. During the yearly flood, rivers carried along with them river mud which was very fertile. This fertile soil was left behind after each flood. Thus, river banks or valleys were suitable places for farming. The people started to **cultivate** their own crops.



Besides the fertile soil, rivers were also used as a form of highways. Men began to use rafts and boats as a form of water transport to carry their extra food. They sailed to another part of the river to trade with the other settlers. So they became farmers as well as traders. When they began to travel up and down the rivers, they learned about the customs and beliefs of the other settlers.

As trade and transportation grew, the population also grew. These river settlements grew into cities, and these cities became centres of great civilisations like those found in early Egypt, India and China. These civilisations had powerful governments with many laws and government workers.

1. All the statements are true EXCEPT ".....".
  - a. As trade and transportation grew, the population of river settlements also grew
  - b. As the river settlements grew, they became cities and centres of civilisation
  - c. Egypt, India and China were at one time centres of great civilisation
  - d. Egypt, India and China were the only important and powerful countries in the world to have rivers
2. The underlined word "**cultivate**" can best be replaced with .....
  - a. grow
  - b. obtain
  - c. look for
  - d. buy
3. The BEST title for this passage would be ".....".
  - a. The river water
  - b. The river cities
  - c. Rivers and the beginning of civilization
  - d. Rivers and the customs and beliefs of the settlers
4. Rafts and boats helped the people living near the rivers to be .....
  - a. farmers and traders
  - b. farmers
  - c. nomads
  - d. sailors
5. The people of long ago used the river water for .....
  - a. drinking
  - b. cooking
  - c. washing
  - d. all of these
6. The early settlers used the river banks for farming because the soil was .....
  - a. fertile
  - b. soft
  - c. sandy
  - d. muddy
7. Rafts and boats helped people to .....
  - a. learn about exporting goods to other countries
  - b. learn about the customs and beliefs of the other settlers
  - c. learn about transportation
  - d. learn about seas and rivers around the world

### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A barber was in his shop, busily cutting a man's hair, when a young stranger came in. He had a small boy with him. They sat down and waited until the barber had finished. Then the young man asked the barber to shave his head first then cut the small boy's hair because he wanted to have a cup of tea while he was cutting the boy's hair. After the barber had shaved the man's head, he got up and said that he would go down the road to have his tea. "All right, but I won't take long" the barber warned him. The man went out and the barber began to cut the boy's hair. He soon finished and then the boy sat down and waited. At the end of half an hour, the barber said. "It is a pity that your father's taking such a long time. Where is he likely to be now ? "I can't **guess**" answered the boy. "And that man isn't my father. I've never seen him before in my life. I was playing in the street when he came and asked me whether I'd like to have my hair cut without having to pay anything".

1. The small boy was .....
  - a. the man's son
  - b. the man's relative
  - c. a stranger to the man
  - d. the man's friend



2. According to the passage, the stranger asked the barber to ..... at first.
  - a. cut the small boy's hair
  - b. shave his head
  - c. make him tea
  - d. give him money
3. While the barber was cutting the boy's hair, .....
  - a. the young man escaped
  - b. the young man was waiting for his son
  - c. the young man was having breakfast
  - d. the young man was reading a newspaper
4. .... gave the barber money.
  - a. The young man
  - b. Neither the boy nor the man
  - c. The little boy
  - d. The little boy's father
5. The boy was ..... when the young man came.
  - a. reading
  - b. playing
  - c. studying
  - d. swimming
6. The boy ..... where the young man was.
  - a. knew
  - b. didn't know
  - c. guessed
  - d. noticed
7. The underlined word "guess" means .....
  - a. need
  - b. learn
  - c. think
  - d. earn

**4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Animals enjoy sports, just like people. Nobody would try to stop animals running in a field, for example, Horse racing is just the same really. Some horses like to run fast. Nobody can seriously argue that horse racing is cruel to animals.

I don't think that you can say that the circus treats animals cruelly. The animals get used to it, anyway. It is good entertainment for us, and the animals work hard for their living. At least nobody kills them or eats them !

More and more people think that hunting is wrong. Man doesn't have to kill wild animals anymore, and we should all get used to the fact that killing for fun is pointless.

The most important point is that zoos are cruel to animals, and are worse than prisons because animals can never get used to being locked up in cages. And everybody goes and stares at them. We treat people in prison better than that.

1. .... people see that hunting is wrong.
  - a. A few
  - b. Only a few
  - c. The minority
  - d. The majority of
2. When animals are locked in cages, they are deprived of .....
  - a. starvation
  - b. freedom
  - c. prison
  - d. leisure
3. No one ..... or eats animals in the circus.
  - a. trains
  - b. loves
  - c. kills
  - d. feeds
4. Locking up animals in cages is .....
  - a. entertainment
  - b. cruel
  - c. sensible
  - d. suitable
5. Animals in cages are treated ..... prisoners.
  - a. as well as
  - b. a little better than
  - c. worse than
  - d. kinder than
6. According to the passage, animals and people have something in common. It is .....
  - a. they get pleasure from sport
  - b. they are cruel
  - c. they loathe sport
  - d. they are slow
7. We need to know that killing for fun is .....
  - a. meaningless
  - b. meaningful
  - c. effective
  - d. useful



1

## Cairo Governorate

El-Sahel Educational Directorate

## 1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Which of the following adjectives express good qualities?

- a. Caring      b. Uncaring      c. Punctual      d. Careless      e. Cruel

2. "Consequences" gives the meaning of .....

- a. reasons      b. causes      c. roots      d. effects      e. results

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... are very small living things that cause diseases.

- a. Bacterium      b. Cells      c. Bacteria      d. Tissues

2. A/An ..... is a person whose job involves helping the public.

- a. attend      b. attendant      c. extending      d. intend

3. You've an important test at school next week. You should ..... revising now.

- a. start      b. starting      c. started      d. to start

4. What would you do if your friend ..... an accident?

- a. had had      b. has      c. had      d. would have

5. The boys could help the injured man because they had learnt about .....

- a. danger      b. emergency services      c. hygiene      d. first aid

6. Dina informed us that her baby ..... then.

- a. had cried      b. had been crying      c. cried      d. was crying

7. I'm sure the police will solve the ..... and arrest the criminal.

- a. emergency      b. mystery      c. myth      d. allergy

8. Is that the flat ..... was advertised in the paper last week?

- a. where      b. when      c. what      d. which

9. A ..... type of book is very exciting.

- a. page-turning      b. page-turn      c. page-turner      d. page-turns

10. Nothing is kept in the fridge. He ..... have eaten all the food.

- a. can't      b. must      c. might      d. may

11. Can you tell me which piece of disco music ..... the most ?

- a. do you like      b. did you like      c. you liked      d. you like

12. Mum asked me to ..... tea in the shopping list.

- a. include      b. enclose      c. improve      d. contain



### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Televisions show sounds and pictures. They get data from cables, discs or air signals. They turn data into sounds and images. People watch news and shows on them. You probably call them TVs.

John Baird made the first TV in 1925. It had one colour. It could only show 30 lines. This was just enough room for a face. It didn't work well, but it was a start.

The first TV station was set up in 1928. It was in New York. Few people had TVs. The broadcasts were not meant to be watched. They showed a Felix the Cat doll for two hours a day. The doll spun around on a record player. They were experimenting. It took many years to get it right.

By the end of the 1930s, TVs were working well. America got its first TV set at the 1939 World's Fair. This was one of the biggest events ever. There were 200 small, black and white TVs set up around the fair. The U.S. President gave a speech over the TVs. The TVs were only five inches big but the people loved it.

They wanted TVs. But World War II was going on during this time. Factories were busy making guns and bombs. When the war was over, TVs spread across the country.

- From where do TVs get data?
  - From cables only
  - From discs only
  - From air signals only
  - All the above
- Which of the following was NOT true about the first TV?
  - It showed one colour
  - It showed 30 lines
  - It did not have sound
  - It did not work well
- What is the main idea of the first paragraph?
  - The advantages of TV
  - Experimenting TV
  - The benefits of the TV
  - How TV works
- Who made the first TV?
  - Oliver Twist
  - John Baird
  - US President
  - Graham Bell
- The underlined word "busy" is an antonym for .....
  - free
  - occupied
  - engaged
  - working
- The above passage can be part of .....
  - a poem
  - a novel
  - a poster
  - an article
- As used in the last sentence of the passage, the underlined phrase was over is synonym for .....
  - started
  - finished
  - continued
  - lasted

### 4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Deserts are one of our chief sources of wealth. If we give them due care, we can increase our national income and solve many of our problems.

- الصحارى هي واحدة من مصادرها الرئيسية للثروة، إذا أعطينا لها العناية الواجبة، يمكننا تقليل دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من مشاكلنا.
- الصحارى هي واحدة من مصادرها الثانوية للثروة، إذا أعطينا لها العناية الواجبة، يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من مشاكلنا.
- الصحارى هي واحدة من مصادرها الرئيسية للثروة، إذا أعطينا لها العناية الواجبة، يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من مشاكلنا.
- الصحارى هي واحدة من مصادرها الرئيسية للثروة، إذا أعطينا لها العناية الواجبة، يمكننا زيادة دخلنا العالمى وحل العديد من مشاكلنا.



**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

بدون الدافع في الحياة، من الصعب إحراز الهدف وتحقيق السعادة. يجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لنفسك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.

- Without motivation in life, it's hard to strive for success and achieve happiness. You should try to achieve more success for yourself first before trying to release other people.
- Without motivation in life, it's hard to strive for success and achieve happiness. You should try to achieve more success for yourself first before trying to please other people.
- Without motivation in life, it's hard to strive for success and achieve sadness. You should try to achieve more success for yourself first before trying to please other people.
- Without motivation in life, it's hard to strive for success and achieve happiness. You should try to achieve less success for yourself first before trying to please other people.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. Jim was brave. Explain.

2. How do you think Jim felt while staying with the pirates?

3. Why do you think Silver wanted Jim to join the pirates?

**6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

*"A school trip that you enjoyed"*

**2****Giza Governorate****El Badrasheen Educational Directorate****1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

- It's the duty of ..... department to do first-aid to victims of accidents.  
a. emergent      b. emergency      c. casualty      d. allergy      e. legal
- Most bloggers ask their fans not to scroll up until they ..... a comment to support the blog.  
a. leave      b. make      c. replace      d. find      e. remind

**2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- Adele loved Jane Eyre, her ....., because Jane was a tolerant and lovely teacher from whom she learnt a lot.  
a. housekeeper      b. governess      c. maid      d. craftswoman
- Nowadays, a lot of people use ..... vehicles as they use both petrol and electricity to run the engine.  
a. hybrid      b. solar-powered      c. electric      d. driverless



3. In the era of technology, even teenagers can find a/an ..... job for things they can do perfectly.  
a. qualified                      b. rewarding                      c. certificate                      d. opportunity
4. Sometimes your businesses may witness ..... However, you must go on to achieve success.  
a. high and low                      b. low and high                      c. lows and highs                      d. highs and lows
5. With determination and strong will, we can ..... and get over even disability.  
a. increase                      b. raise                      c. compete                      d. shape
6. It shows how much ..... you are when you can control the time you spend on your phone.  
a. independent                      b. imaginative                      c. hygienic                      d. allergic
7. He just said that his employer ..... him for a difficult task.  
a. has chosen                      b. had chosen                      c. chose                      d. was choosing
8. I'll help you to fix your computer if you ..... me what's wrong with it.  
a. would tell                      b. will tell                      c. tell                      d. told
9. After we had had a long debate, he finally ..... on my point of view.  
a. was agreed                      b. was agreeing                      c. agreed                      d. had agreed
10. .... seeing the accident on the road, I called the emergency to ask for help.  
a. As soon as                      b. As long as                      c. On                      d. Before
11. Ali bought a present for his mother yesterday ..... made her happy with him.  
a. which                      b. who                      c. where                      d. when
12. The police can't yet solve the mystery, they guess that the thief ..... gloves while opening the safe.  
a. can't have used                      b. might have use                      c. should have used                      d. will have used

### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Online Education allows students to attend classes without going to a school building. The online community means students can share their opinions and discuss what they are learning with other students and their teachers. Courses use advanced video technology so that students can speak, make notes on the screen and write on a shared whiteboard with other students.

There are a variety of reasons for choosing an online education. Some students live in remote areas, and it is difficult to travel long distances every day. Others have been the victims of bullying at school. The **flexibility** of this way of learning means that **it** also appeals to students who have special needs, and students who are unable to go to a traditional school.

An advantage of online education is that students study at their own pace and place and they can choose the best time of day to study. All you need is a computer with a high-speed connection to the internet and an ability to learn.

1. Online education is .....  
a. a way of traditional learning                      b. a modern school building  
c. a group of students who work together                      d. a way of learning using technology



2. Which of these students might prefer to learn online?
  - a. a disabled student
  - b. a student who bullies others
  - c. a travelling student
  - d. a student with no internet connection
3. Which of these are important if you want to learn online?
  - a. working quickly
  - b. being able to fix a computer
  - c. having a fast internet connection
  - d. going to school every day
4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
  - a. online learning
  - b. traditional learning
  - c. home schooling
  - d. school planning
5. Which of the following is "NOT" an advantage of online learning?
  - a. Students can choose the best time of day to study.
  - b. Students study at their own pace and place.
  - c. Students travel long distances every day.
  - d. Students can save more and effort.
6. How does the writer feel towards the idea of online learning?
  - a. It seems that he wanted readers to try it.
  - b. It seems that he wanted readers to avoid it.
  - c. It seems that he is warning readers against it.
  - d. It seems that he misleads readers concerning it.
7. Which of the following words gives the same meaning to the word "**flexibility**"?
  - a. Wisdom
  - b. Resilience
  - c. Awareness
  - d. Toughness

**4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

It's likely that you fail to start a global career unless you master English language.

- a. إنه من المحتمل أن تفشل في بداية مهنة عالمية إذا لم تتقن اللغة الإنجليزية.
- b. إنه من المحتمل أن تفشل في بدء مهنة عالمية إذا لم تتقن اللغة الإنجليزية.
- c. إنه محبب لمن أراد أن ينجح في بدء وظيفة عالمية أن يكون سيذا في اللغة الإنجليزية.
- d. إنه محبب لمن أراد أن ينجح في بدء وظيفة عالمية أن يتقن في اللغة الإنجليزية.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

كان علي أن أحصل على قرض من أجل بداية مشروعي الأول.

- a. I must get a loan to start my first project.
- b. I must have got a loan to start my first project.
- c. I had to obtain a loan to start my first project.
- d. I have to obtain a loan to start my first project.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. If you were Captain Smollett what would you do to save yourself and your group from pirates?  
.....
2. Was Jim right to help Hands and believe his promises? Justify your answer.  
.....



3. Dr. Livesey proved to be an honest doctor who respects his profession. Explain.

**6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

*"What makes a better future for young men"*

### 3 Alexandria Governorate El Montazah Educational Directorate

**1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

- Don't bother your brother while he is studying. The antonyms of the word "bother" are:  
a. neglect      b. break      c. please      d. satisfy      e. damage
- My daughter's teacher can explain the lessons ..... to the kids.  
a. easily      b. hard      c. simply      d. lazily      e. safely

**2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- You ..... buy a pen. I'll lend you one.  
a. have      b. needn't      c. don't have to      d. both b and c
- You ..... make a loud noise in the library or you will get into trouble.  
a. can      b. should      c. mustn't      d. must
- What ..... do if you get lost in a big city?  
a. you will      b. will you      c. would you      d. you would
- By the time we reached there, they ..... discussing the book; we couldn't participate.  
a. had finished      b. were finishing      c. finished      d. have finished
- Ali told Hani that the sun ..... in the morning.  
a. is rising      b. rise      c. rose      d. rises
- I like the author ..... plays are shown everywhere.  
a. who      b. whose      c. who's      d. which
- An ambulance ..... took the injured man to the nearest hospital.  
a. immediately      b. sleepily      c. messily      d. dirtily
- This voice is ..... to me. I'm sure I've heard it before.  
a. extreme      b. qualified      c. familiar      d. beneficial
- He enjoys ..... with his online friends in his free time.  
a. cycling      b. printing      c. benefiting      d. chatting
- Really, I ..... my family. I look forward to going back home.  
a. fail      b. miss      c. apply      d. employ
- A good leader has the ability to work under .....  
a. degree      b. success      c. industry      d. stress
- The Paralympic Games tournament is held for ..... athletes.  
a. normal      b. disabled      c. insane      d. natural



### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Have you ever heard that a wealthy person died of hunger? I was shocked when I read a very impressive story about a very rich man. That man had huge wealth and a vast palace. He used to leave his family in their usual house to spend a few days every month alone in his palace to plan for his coming businesses and count his increasing money. He used to keep his money in an enormous room without realizing that he had left the key out. After so many hours, he began to feel hungry and wanted to go out to have something to eat, but he found out his terrible mistake. That room had no handle to be opened from inside and the large size of the palace prevented the man's cries from reaching anyone outside. He tried very hard to open the metal door, but in vain. Days and nights passed while he was starving. Finally, he became sure he would die, so he injured his finger and used his blood to write the moral of that awful situation on the wall. He wrote, "The richest man in the city died of starvation." I started to think differently about the benefits of being rich; having a family is far more important.

- The central idea of this passage can be ..... .
  - a wealthy person died of loneliness
  - a wealthy person died of an illness
  - a wealthy person died of hunger
  - a wealthy person died of fear
- How often does the rich man leave his family in their usual house ?
  - Once a year
  - Monthly
  - Weekly
  - Three times a year
- Why did the rich man use to spend a few days by himself ?
  - To make plans
  - To make decisions
  - To make sacrifices
  - To perform prayers
- The man injured himself ..... .
  - to drink his blood
  - to paint the wall
  - to become rich
  - to write a message
- Because of the end of the rich man, the writer decided that ..... .
  - having a family isn't important
  - being rich is the best aim
  - it is better to have a family
  - the family should not have left home
- The best title for the passage is "....." .
  - Richness is a blessing
  - The killer wealth
  - The killer family
  - The mad rich man
- The man couldn't be heard because ..... .
  - he was weak
  - the palace was huge
  - the palace was very small
  - he was crying

### 4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Televisions is thought to show a variety of programmes that appeal to people of different ages. Also, it helps students by presenting some useful educational programmes.

- من المعتقد أن يعرض التلفزيون مجموعة متنوعة من البرامج التي تروق للأشخاص من مختلف الأعمار وأيضاً يساعد الطلبة عن طريق تقديم بعض البرامج التعليمية المفيدة.
- يعتقد أن يعرض التلفزيون مجموعة متنوعة من البرامج التي يمتثلها الأشخاص من مختلف الأعمار وأيضاً يساعد الطلبة عن طريق تقديم بعض البرامج الرياضية المفيدة.



- c. يعتقد أن التلفاز يعرض مجموعة متنوعة من البرامج التي تروق للأشخاص من أعمار متشابهة وأيضاً يساعد الطلاب عن طريق تقديم بعض البرامج التعليمية المفيدة..
- d. من المعتقد أن يعرض التلفزيون سلسلة من البرامج التي تروق للأشخاص من مختلف الأعمار وأيضاً يساعد الطلبة عن طريق تقديم بعض البرامج التعليمية المسلية.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

يجب علينا جميعاً أفراداً وحكومات أن نبذل أقصى ما في وسعنا لكي نتمكن من تحسين جودة منتجاتنا المحلية وبالتالي تحقيق التقدم الاقتصادي.

- a. We all, individual and government, should make our best to be able to improve the quality of our global products and thus achieve economic progress.
- b. We all, individuals and governments, should do our best to be able improve the quality of our local products and thus achieve economic progress.
- c. We all, individuals and governments, should do our better to be able to be improve the quality of our local products and thus achieve economic progress.
- d. We all, individuals and governments, should do our better to be able to prove the quality of our local produces and thus achieve economic progress.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. What would happen to the men if the pirates didn't leave the island? Why?

2. Why do you think that it was possible for Jim to take the boat to the shore?

3. Do you think there were good guards in the fort? Give a reason.

**6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**  
**"From your own point of view, what is the most useful invention? Why?"**

**4 Qalyoubia Governorate**

**Qaha Educational Directorate**

**1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

1. This project will employ many youth. The antonyms of "employ" are .....
- a. fire                      b. provide                      c. hire                      d. engage                      e. discharge
2. You should avoid smoking to be healthy. The synonyms of the word "avoid" are .....
- a. save                      b. avert                      c. maintain                      d. evade                      e. experience

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The doctor advised Hala not to go near pets as she has a/an ..... to them.
- a. addiction                      b. impact                      c. allergy                      d. link
2. Thanks to the ..... of the internet, the world has become a small village.
- a. discovery                      b. invention                      c. exploration                      d. evacuation
3. It's advisable to ..... with your old friends especially when you have time.
- a. conduct                      b. lose touch                      c. contract                      d. keep in touch
4. My cousin has a ..... in medicine from Cairo University.
- a. degree                      b. mark                      c. licence                      d. sign



5. Adel was happy because he ..... his goal and became a world famous champion.  
a. campaigned      b. lost      c. competed      d. achieved
6. The accused man was found ....., so he was sent to prison.  
a. reliable      b. guilty      c. honest      d. innocent
7. Mustafa said his brother had got a new job .....  
a. then      b. the following day      c. the previous day      d. yesterday
8. The shop, ..... sells expired products, must be fined.  
a. whose      b. which      c. where      d. that
9. Amira would have that mobile if she ..... enough money.  
a. has had      b. had      c. had had      d. had been
10. You ..... raise your voice. I can hardly hear you!  
a. needn't      b. ought      c. need to      d. mustn't
11. Samir was very angry because he ..... to the party.  
a. didn't invite      b. hadn't invited      c. wasn't inviting      d. wasn't invited
12. Mr. Mohamed was at the doctor's last night. He ..... ill.  
a. must be      b. can't be      c. must have been      d. can't have been

### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

No doubt that many different wild animals throughout the world are in danger. The reasons for this are many and varied, but we must blame pollution, pesticides, the disturbance of animals in their natural environment, and man's greed for wealth.

Industry has grown enormously, and it has become common practice for factories to get rid of their waste materials in streams and rivers, causing great loss of river life. Modern agricultural methods include using pesticides which are used to fight insects can also destroy many species of animals. An increase in population means more buildings which result in the destruction of much of the countryside that provides shelter for wild animals. To satisfy man's selfish desires, the polar bear in North America is under threat, hunted illegally to sell its precious fur.

Whales are hunted for the oil and the food they yield. There are only a few species under threat, but the problem is receiving worldwide concern, and some actions are being taken. For example, pollution in the River Thames has been greatly reduced, trading in some furs has been forbidden, and organizations like "Friends of the Earth" do valuable work in this field. We should take serious steps to conserve our environment and protect it from destruction.

1. The most suitable title for this passage is .....  
a. Modern methods of hunting      b. The wildlife is in danger  
c. Modern trade      d. Modern methods of farming
2. Pollution in the River Thames has been greatly .....  
a. doubled      b. increased      c. decreased      d. raised
3. The synonym of the underlined word "conserve" is .....  
a. save      b. damage      c. pollute      d. get over
4. According to the passage, the polar bear is hunted for its .....  
a. leather      b. oil      c. feathers      d. fur
5. According to the passage, pesticides are used to ..... insects.  
a. kill      b. improve      c. defend      d. feed



6. The underlined word “**yield**” means .....  
 a. absorb                      b. import                      c. waste                      d. produce
7. An increase in population leads to the ..... of much of the countryside.  
 a. construction                      b. ruin                      c. growth                      d. conservation

**4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Technology is considered a double edged weapon as it is a blessing if it is used for peace and the benefit of humanity and it is a curse if it is used for war and destruction.

- a. تعتبر التكنولوجيا سلاحا ذا حدين فهي نعمة إذا استخدمت في السلام و فيما ينفع البشرية و تعد نقمة إذا استخدمت في الحروب و الدمار.
- b. تعتبر التكنولوجيا سلاحا ذا حدين فهي نعمة إذا استخدمت في الخير و فيما ينفع البشرية و تعد نقمة إذا استخدمت في الحروب و الدمار.
- c. تعتبر التكنولوجيا سلاحا ذا حدين فهي نعمة إذا استخدمت في الخير و فيما ينفع البشرية و تعد نقمة إذا استخدمت في السلام و الدمار.
- d. تعتبر التكنولوجيا سلاحا ذا حدين فهي نعمة إذا استخدمت في الخير و فيما يضر البشرية و تعد نقمة إذا استخدمت في الدمار و الحروب.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

تساعد إقامة المشروعات الانتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العاطل الذي يبحث عن وظيفة لكي يحقق طموحاته في الحياة.

- a. Setting out productive projects helps to prove job opportunities for the unemployed youth who are looking at jobs to achieve their ambitions in life.
- b. Setting up productive projects helps to provide job opportunities for the unemployed youth who are looking for jobs to achieve their ambitions in life.
- c. Setting up destructive projects helps to provide job challenges for the unemployed youth who are looking for jobs to achieve their profits in life.
- d. Setting up productive products helps to provide job opportunities for the employed youth who are looking for jobs to improve their ambitions in life.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. If you were Jim, would you sail to the Hispaniola alone?

.....

2. Why do you think that Captain Smollett asked his men to watch Silver?

.....

3. Why do you think Dr. Livesey gave Silver a useless map?

.....

**6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

*“The pros and cons of social media”*

.....

.....

.....



**1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

- When we learn how to improve ourselves, we feel .....  
a. busy      b. negative      c. successful      d. positive      e. relaxing
- Salah is a good player who wants to ..... his goals.  
a. reach      b. achieve      c. suspect      d. attack      e. predict

**2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- You should put your rubbish in the ..... and remember to clean it because there is a lot of bacteria inside.  
a. pin      b. bin      c. pan      d. ban
- GPS helps you when you visit a town that you aren't ..... with.  
a. available      b. famous      c. popular      d. familiar
- To ..... is to leave your home to do something fun with other people.  
a. look after      b. find out      c. get around      d. go out
- The wealthy family hired a ..... to educate and supervise their children.  
a. governess      b. government      c. housekeeper      d. household
- After I graduated, I got a two-year ..... to work in a good company.  
a. qualification      b. challenge      c. contract      d. contact
- Hany had a ..... in engineering, so he works as an engineer.  
a. graduate      b. grade      c. degree      d. confidence
- You ..... talk when the teacher is explaining things to you.  
a. don't have to      b. must      c. mustn't      d. shouldn't
- Aswan, ..... is in the south of Egypt, is where I was born.  
a. who      b. where      c. which      d. when
- I love my job ..... it is very stressful at times.  
a. so      b. but      c. despite      d. although
- If I ..... my timetable, I would have time to have fun.  
a. had arranged      b. arranged      c. was arranging      d. arrange
- When I returned home, my mother ..... lunch. I ate it immediately.  
a. was preparing      b. has prepared      c. had prepared      d. prepared
- Science and maths ..... in schools long before the invention of the internet.  
a. have taught      b. were taught      c. had taught      d. taught

**3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Sleep is very important for our health and safety. We should get enough sleep to let our brains work properly. Research has shown that sixty percent of adults suffer from sleep deprivation. If we don't sleep well for a long time, many negative things may happen. We may get sick because the body loses its ability to fight infections. Also, a lot of accidents can be caused because drivers have difficulty concentrating as a result of sleep deprivation.



We need an average of eight hours of sleep at night. However, to get a good night's sleep, we need to set a specific bedtime and wake up time and make it a routine. Also, we shouldn't drink cola, tea or coffee during the day. We should stop eating, studying or watching TV in bed because bed is meant for sleep. Many studies have shown that a good night's sleep assists the learning process. Sleep helps you to learn information that you have come across during the day and allows the human brain to organise the day's memories. Sleep is an essential function that allows your body and mind to recharge, leaving you refreshed and alert when you wake up. Healthy sleep also helps the body remain healthy and stave off diseases. Without enough sleep, the brain cannot function properly.

1. Many studies have shown that a good time sleep ..... learning.  
a. stops                      b. prevents                      c. helps                      d. eliminates
2. Sleep is necessary for our .....  
a. health                      b. safety                      c. learning                      d. all of them
3. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?  
a. Sleeping at certain times                      b. Waking up at certain times  
c. Setting times for sleeping and waking up                      d. Buying an alarm clock
4. Good sleep helps you ..... information.  
a. note down                      b. stop                      c. remember                      d. get rid of
5. Not getting enough sleep has ..... effects on our health.  
a. positive                      b. useful                      c. derivative                      d. negative
6. A high percentage of adults suffer from .....  
a. sleep                      b. lack of sleep                      c. too much sleep                      d. sleeping well
7. You shouldn't watch TV .....  
a. at night                      b. in the evening                      c. in the morning                      d. in bed

**4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Sports and games are effective means of acquiring habits like discipline, cooperation, teamwork, and taking responsibility.

- a. الرياضة والألعاب وسائل جيدة لتطوير عادات مثل الانضباط والتعاون والعمل الجماعي وتحمل المسؤولية.
- b. الرياضة والألعاب وسائل فعالة لاكتساب عادات مثل الانضباط والتعاون والعمل الجماعي وتحمل المسؤولية.
- c. الرياضة والألعاب وسائل حيوية لاكتساب عادات مثل الانضباط والتعاون والعمل الجماعي وتحمل المسؤولية.
- d. الرياضة والألعاب وسائل فعالة لتطوير عادات مثل الانضباط والتعاون والعمل الجماعي وتحمل المسؤولية.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

من حقك التعبير عن رأيك بحرية لكنك لا يجب أن تحرم الآخرين من التعبير عن معتقداتهم المخالفة لرأيك.

- a. You have the right to express your opinion freely but you should not protect others of expressing their beliefs that are contrary to your opinion.
- b. You have the right to express your opinion freely, but you should not deprive another of expressing their beliefs that are contrary to your opinion.
- c. You have the right to express your opinion freely, but you should not deprive another of expressing their belief that are contrary to your opinion.
- d. You have the right to express your opinion freely, but you should not deprive others of expressing their beliefs that are contrary to your opinion.



**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. What do you think might have happened if Smollett hadn't had the map?  
.....
2. What do you think might have happened if the team hadn't cooperated on the island? Why?  
.....
3. Do you think Captain Smollett is a good captain? Why? Why not?  
.....

**6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :  
"How to save the Earth"**

.....

.....

.....

**6****Menofia Governorate****Shibin El-kom Educational Directorate****1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

1. We are always advised to respond politely to our parents and teachers. The word "respond" can be replaced by .....  
a. answer      b. refuse      c. participate      d. reply      e. repeat
2. Which of the following are ADJECTIVES?  
a. gene      b. hygiene      c. healthy      d. wealth      e. hygienic

**2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Criticism and advice are kinds of .....  
a. buttons      b. robots      c. philosophers      d. feedback
2. You ..... to eat a lot of sweets; this isn't healthy.  
a. shouldn't      b. ought not      c. mustn't      d. needn't
3. The government is trying to improve ..... measures on all railways.  
a. safety      b. risk      c. danger      d. threat
4. If I were a doctor, I would help the injured man. This means that I .....  
a. wasn't a doctor but I could help the injured man.  
b. am a doctor as I can help the injured man.  
c. can't help the injured man since I am not a doctor.  
d. wasn't a doctor so I couldn't help the injured man.
5. .... people can change their minds to suit new circumstances.  
a. Flexible      b. Readable      c. Independent      d. Stressful
6. Tony ..... if he had had more free time, he would have joined a club.  
a. asked      b. said      c. wondered      d. advised
7. My father is a ..... that all people like.  
a. celebration      b. famous      c. popular      d. celebrity
8. Mrs. Kholoud, ..... teaches us English, is my brother's fiancée.  
a. who's      b. who      c. that      d. whom
9. The Global Positioning System helps you to ..... your journey from one place to another.  
a. benefit      b. communicate      c. navigate      d. concentrate



10. She looks very sad. She ..... the race.  
 a. must have won      b. can't have won      c. might win      d. must win
11. To open the program, point at the icon and ..... the left mouse button.  
 a. kick      b. deck      c. sick      d. click
12. .... a secretary found for your office?  
 a. Did      b. Had      c. Was      d. Has

**3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

I have believed for a while that mobiles are harmful to our health due to the exposure of radiation. Scientists think that mobile phones should be used as little as possible. A lot of scientists believe they are harmful to your health. Mobile phones are particularly bad for children. The phone companies will tell you that they are safe but remember they are selling a product, so they are hardly going to put you off buying their product by telling you it is unsafe. In fact, research claims mobile phones could kill more people than smoking.

Wireless (Wi-Fi) can cause headaches, nausea, tiredness and memory loss in some people. We have so much technology now; there is 24 hour television, computers, phones and so on. Electrical gadgets in the bedroom can also cause sleep problems.

But if you can't do without them, at least make sure you don't have any electrical gadgets in your bedroom or at least make sure that they are turned off. Cordless phones emit a high amount of radiation so keep your technology use to a limited amount of time each day. Mobile phones can cause cancerous brain tumours if they are used for a long time over the years. Always remember that your health is very important as you might find you are unable to return to good health once you have lost it.

- Who do you think are most affected by using mobile phones?  
 a. Mobile Companies    b. Workers      c. Children      d. Adults
- What does the underlined word "them" refer to?  
 a. Mobile phone      b. Cordless phones      c. Computer      d. Electrical gadgets
- What do you think the author's opinion about the use of technology?  
 a. To use technology as much as we can.  
 b. To keep technology use to a limited amount of time.  
 c. Not to use technology at all as it is harmful.  
 d. To use technology in our institutions only.
- Which piece of advice does the author give at the end of the text?  
 a. to buy more mobiles  
 b. To leave technology as it causes many problems  
 c. To be careful about our health  
 d. To trust what companies say about their products.
- What is the best title to the passage?  
 a. The advantages of technology      b. The merits of technology  
 c. The careful use of computers      d. The disadvantages of technology
- 'Research claims mobile phones could kill more people than smoking.' This means;  
 a. Mobile phones are less harmful than smoking  
 b. Mobile phones are as harmful as smoking  
 c. Mobile phones are more harmful than smoking  
 d. Mobile phones aren't harmful at all



7. The writer wants people to ..... their use of mobile phones.

- a. divide                      b. announce                      c. remark                      d. limit

**4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Through education, we can acquire the necessary knowledge, skills and values. It also helps us to become beneficial members to our society.

- a. من خلال التعليم ، يمكننا اكتساب المعرفة و المهارات الضرورية ، كما انه يساعدنا علي ان نأتي أعضاء نافعين لمجتمعنا.  
b. من خلال التعليم ، يمكننا اكتساب المعرفة و المهارات الضرورية. كما انه يساعدنا علي ان نصبح أعضاء نافعين لمجتمعنا.  
c. من خلال التدريس يمكننا اكتساب المعرفة و المهارات اللازمة كما انه يساعد علي ان نصبح أعضاء نافعين لمجتمعنا.  
d. من خلال التعليم ، يمكننا اكتساب المعرفة و المهارات الضرورية. كما انه يساعدنا علي أن لا نصبح أعضاء نافعين لمجتمعنا.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

يعتبر التدوين الإلكتروني واحدا من أسرع الاتجاهات نمواً على شبكة الأنترنت، و المدونه تتكون من مقالات دوريه تكون في معظم الأحيان مرتبة زمنياً.

- a. Blogging is one of the faster growing trends on the internet. A blog contains periodic articles that are often chronological.  
b. Blogging is one of the faster growing trends on the internet. A blog consists of periodic articles that often are chronological.  
c. Blogging is one of the fastest growing trends on the internet. A blog contains periodic articles that often chronological.  
d. Blogging is one of the fastest growing trends on the internet. A blog consists of periodic articles that are often chronological.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. Smollett respected the law. Do you think so? Why?

.....

2. Ben Gun was clever. Do you agree? Why?

.....

3. What do you think of Hands? Why?

.....

**6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

*"Using modern technology is the way to make real progress."*

.....  
.....  
.....

**7**

**Gharbia Governorate**

**East Mahalla Educational Directorate**

**1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

1. This is a / an ..... plan. There is always possibility to change it according to the situation.

- a. flexible                      b. inflexible                      c. adaptable                      d. fixed                      e. unchangeable

2. Keeping animals and birds in zoos is cruel. The antonyms of the word "cruel" are

- a. strange                      b. merciful                      c. violent                      d. kind                      e. brave

**2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. You ..... smoke in hospitals. It's illegal.  
a. can                      b. mustn't                      c. should                      d. must
2. Fatma ..... the Faculty of Medicine in 2019.  
a. was joining                      b. joined                      c. had joined                      d. joins
3. The students of engineering colleges should have their ..... in big companies for experience.  
a. friendship                      b. apprenticeship                      c. workshop                      d. relationship
4. The mice ..... the house if he shut the door carefully.  
a. don't enter                      b. won't enter                      c. no enter                      d. wouldn't enter
5. We're running a / an ..... to collect money for the disabled children.  
a. campaign                      b. fountain                      c. mountain                      d. disability
6. .... you leave now, you will miss the bus.  
a. Unless                      b. If                      c. In case                      d. Without
7. GPS stands for Global ..... System.  
a. Positioning                      b. Positioned                      c. Positional                      d. Positions
8. We need more ..... from the consumer in order to improve the quality of our goods.  
a. app                      b. quiz                      c. feedback                      d. result
9. A lot of cakes ..... for the party yesterday.  
a. made                      b. was made                      c. were made                      d. are made
10. You should clean your kitchen floor at ..... once a week.  
a. last                      b. first                      c. past                      d. least
11. **A:** Did you hear what she said? - **B:** No, I ..... about something else.  
a. thought                      b. was thinking                      c. have thought                      d. think
12. I'm sure you will solve this problem ..... your own.  
a. by                      b. with                      c. from                      d. on

**3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Winter is cold in some places. Many plants do not grow during winter. Some plants die. Snow and ice may cover the ground. It can be hard for animals to find food during winter. Animals get through this time in many ways. Birds and butterflies can fly. Many of them do not stick around for the winter. They leave. They go to a place with nice weather. Then they come home in the spring. We call this migration. Migrating is a good way to avoid the cold. Another good way to avoid the cold is to sleep through it. Many animals hide during the winter. They save their energy. They do not eat. They live off of their fat. They do this until food returns. We call this hibernation. Snakes, frogs, and bears hibernate. Some animals store food in their homes. They do not sleep all winter. They live on what they have saved in the summer and fall. This is what squirrels and raccoons do. Other animals do not leave or hide. They must survive. Sometimes nature helps them out. Some animals grow thicker coats in the winter. Other animals change colour. The Arctic fox is brown in the summer. His coat turns white in the winter for safety. Winter may be pretty. It is nice to see snow on the trees. But it is dangerous, too.



1. What is the main idea of this text?
  - a. Animals do funny and interesting things.
  - b. Most flowers do not grow during the winter time.
  - c. Animals survive the winter in many ways.
  - d. We must help each other.
2. Which of these animals survives winter by eating stored food?
  - a. Bears
  - b. Raccoons
  - c. Frogs
  - d. Birds
3. Why does the Arctic fox's coat change white during the winter?
  - a. The white coat is prettier.
  - b. White absorbs the sun and is warmer.
  - c. The white coat helps him hide from his enemies.
  - d. His body saves energy by reducing hair colour.
4. What does it mean to migrate?
  - a. To grow a thicker coat.
  - b. To move somewhere warmer for a season.
  - c. To enter a long sleep and survive off of body fat.
  - d. To change colours.
5. Which animal does not hibernate?
  - a. Foxes
  - b. Frogs
  - c. Snakes
  - d. Bears
6. How would a thicker coat help an animal survive winter?
  - a. A thicker coat would help an animal hide better.
  - b. A thicker coat would protect an animal against attacks.
  - c. A thicker coat would help an animal stay warm.
  - d. A thicker coat would help an animal migrate.
7. Which of these animals migrate during the winter?
  - a. Foxes
  - b. Snakes
  - c. Bears
  - d. Butterflies

**4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Ambition and patience are very important personal qualities that we need to have to be able to achieve success.

- a. الطموح و الصبر صفات شخصية هامة جدا نحتاج أن نتحلى بها لنتمكن من تحقيق النجاح.
- b. الطموح و الصبر صفات عامة هامة جدا نحتاج أن نتحلى بها لنتمكن من تحقيق النجاح.
- c. الطموح و الصبر صفات شخصية هامة جدا لا نحتاج أن نتحلى بها لنتمكن من تحقيق النجاح.
- d. الطموح و الصبر صفات شخصية هامة جدا نحتاج أن نتحلى بها لنتمكن من تحقيق الثروة.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

لقد أصبحت مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي أحد أكثر الأدوات الفعالة لإحداث تغيرات اجتماعية.

- a. Social networking sites have become one of the most effect tools for bringing about social exchange.
- b. Social networking sites have become one of the most effect tools for bringing up social change.
- c. Social networking sites has become one of the most effective tools for bringing about social change.
- d. Social networking sites have become one of the most effective tools for bringing about social change.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. Which side of the fort do you think is the weakest? How do you know?

.....

2. The flag is very important to any ship. How?

.....

3. Why do you think the group left food and medicine to the pirates?

.....

**6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

*"Your goal in life"*

.....

.....

.....

**8 Dakahlia Governorate**

East Mansoura Educational Directorate

**1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

1. The stream was shallow, so we were able to walk across. The antonyms of the word "shallow" are .....

a. deep                      b. trivial                      c. profound                      d. remote                      e. slight

2. Can you tell me what happened ..... ? I want to know everything.

a. in brief                      b. in detail                      c. briefly                      d. accurately                      e. quickly

**2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The girls were ..... tricks on their colleagues during their school journey.

a. making                      b. doing                      c. playing                      d. having

2. The injured man ..... to hospital before he had an operation.

a. were taken                      b. had taken                      c. took                      d. had been taken

3. I asked my friend if he agreed with my plan for the project, and gave a small ..... of his head.

a. movement                      b. nod                      c. respond                      d. reaction

4. This is the man ..... house we rent as our new flat.

a. whose                      b. in which                      c. in whose                      d. which

5. Nadia wants to ..... in the national swimming championship next year.

a. achieve                      b. compete                      c. confront                      d. campaign

6. .... you play music loudly? I have to concentrate on my study.

a. Can                      b. Could                      c. Ought to                      d. Must

7. Ali arrived an hour late for the interview. He's not very .....

a. loyal                      b. flexible                      c. honest                      d. punctual

8. She missed the train. She ..... up early.

a. must get                      b. must have got                      c. can't get                      d. can't have got



9. We can store our large quantities of goods in the .....  
 a. workhouse      b. warehouse      c. farmhouse      d. sport house
10. .... he to study hard, he would get high marks.  
 a. If      b. Should      c. Had      d. Were
11. It is a very good thing to know how to ..... when you are mistaken.  
 a. insult      b. thank      c. apologize      d. offer
12. They want to know when ..... to Luxor to meet my friends.  
 a. I would travel      b. I will travel      c. will I travel      d. are you travelling

**3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Our famous Egyptian scientist Dr. Zewail once said, "Value your Education" when I thought of it deeply, I realized he didn't mean in particular Education available in classrooms or at universities. He wanted to tell young generations in all fields to seek advanced levels of what they do. His words were directed to craftsmen, workers and young scientists. He urged them to try hard to make their work distinguished, effective and worthy, consequently that will make them employable and a real gain for companies and factories to hire but the most important thing to detect is that hard work and perfection are the main **pillars** to success. Teachers and families have a great role to play as they have a great responsibility of shaping the character and the lives of young generations. They have to make them realize how important to value their education through hard work, they can guide and urge students to exert more effort to enrich their education or knowledge. While doing this, they deepen the value of work. Families at homes should encourage their children to enrol themselves in courses to reinforce their abilities and be eager all the time to acquire new experiences related to their field or the speciality they want to join. People who worked hard to value their education and worked on themselves paved their way to success.

1. A craftsman can be a/an .....  
 a. oculist      b. carpenter      c. dressmaker      d. b & c
2. The word ..... from the passage means "as a result".  
 a. worthy      b. in particular      c. consequently      d. distinguished
3. The underlined word "**Pillars**" refers to .....  
 a. rules      b. basis      c. sides      d. column
4. The verb **seek** from the passage means .....  
 a. pursuit      b. deal      c. use      d. ask for
5. What kind of people companies like to hire?  
 a. Someone with no education or experience.      b. Someone unwilling to learn.  
 c. Someone dull and narrow minded.      d. Someone efficient and distinguished.
6. The writer thinks that Dr. Zewail's advice is addressed to .....  
 a. students at universities only      b. craftsmen and workers only  
 c. all the society classes      d. both craftsmen and students
7. The best title of this passage is " .....".  
 a. Time management      b. Good education and success  
 c. The best usage of classes      d. How can you run a company?



**4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Increasing the national awareness of all the challenges we face is an important solution to some of our problems.

- a. إن زيادة الوعي القومي لكل التحديات التي نواجهها هو الحل الوحيد لحل مشاكلنا.  
 b. إن زيادة الوعي القومي لكل التحديات التي نواجهها هو حل مهم لبعض مشاكلنا.  
 c. إن زيادة الاهتمام القومي بكل التحديات التي نواجهها هو حل مهم لبعض مشاكلنا.  
 d. إن زيادة الوعي القومي لكل التحديات التي نواجهها هو حل مهم لكل مشاكلنا.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

العولمة لها تأثير خطير على البلاد النامية ولذلك يجب أن نستعد لمواجهة الآثار والتحديات التي لا نرغب فيها.

- a. Globalization has a dangerous effect on developed countries, so we must be ready to face any challenges we don't want.  
 b. Globalization has a dangerous effect on developing countries, so we must be ready to face the result and challenges we want to.  
 c. Globalization has a dangerous impact on development countries, so we must be ready to face the challenges we don't want.  
 d. Globalization has a dangerous effect on developing countries, so we must be ready to face the effects and the challenges we don't want.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. Why do you think Silver give Jim a gun?  
 .....  
 2. How do you think the deal between Jim and Hands was good for both of them?  
 .....  
 3. Jim had a plan to go to the Hispaniola in the night and cut the rope to the anchor. Why do you think he wanted to do this?  
 .....

**6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :  
 "How can STEM subjects change both our students' life and our society as a whole?"**

**9 Beheira Governorate Koum Hamada Educational Directorate**

**1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

1. Please, don't interpret what I said wrong. The word "interpret" can mean .....  
 a. wrap      b. explain      c. evacuate      d. remove      e. translate orally  
 2. No doubt that Egypt plays a vital role in the Middle East area. The antonyms of the word "vital" are .....  
 a. major      b. effective      c. main      d. unimportant      e. minor

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. We should change our ..... at least once every two weeks.  
 a. mind      b. bedding      c. hygiene      d. sanitation



2. The thief ..... committing the crime, so the judge sent him to prison.  
a. avoided      b. denied      c. admitted      d. said
3. Technology has made it easy to ..... touch with each other at any time.  
a. stay      b. get      c. lose      d. keep in
4. Public means of transport are ..... in England. They are never late.  
a. punctual      b. flexible      c. honest      d. loyal
5. Amany Ali is an Egyptian Paralympic ..... who won a bronze medal in Brazil.  
a. powerlift      b. powerlifting      c. powerlifter      d. powerlifts
6. Research shows that the deep cuts in ..... are often a home for bacteria.  
a. chopping boards      b. shopping boards      c. chopping broads      d. shopping abroad
7. Employees have to work certain hours every day. This sentence expresses .....  
a. a rule      b. a prohibition      c. advice      d. an invitation
8. No sooner had we delivered our exam papers ..... the teacher started to mark them.  
a. than      b. after that      c. before      d. as soon as
9. My cousin asked me whether I ..... him during the following summer holiday.  
a. visit      b. visited      c. had visited      d. would visit
10. It is said that Antara Ben-Shaddad was a man, ..... to have the sight of an eagle and the courage of a lion.  
a. who appears      b. who appeared      c. that appeared      d. whom appeared
11. The driver shouldn't have parked here. This means that he ..... here.  
a. doesn't park      b. parks      c. didn't park      d. parked
12. If I'm short of money, I ..... some from my dear friend, Ramy. It's my habit.  
a. always borrow      b. always will borrow      c. borrow      d. would borrow

### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Last month, America experienced a total solar eclipse, where the Moon was perfectly between the Earth and the Sun. The sun disappeared completely and darkness **prevailed** across the country.

People in different regions had the chance to witness this astronomical wonder. With special eclipse glasses to protect their eyes, they eagerly looked up at the sky. As the Moon moved across the Sun, the sky turned dark, and the temperature dropped. There were moments of complete darkness, and stars became visible. This created a few moments of darkness, as if it were night time during the day! Some animals were also affected by the eclipse. Birds stopped singing, and nocturnal animals became confused by the sudden darkness. Scientists and photographers were prepared to capture this special event. They used special telescopes and cameras to study and document the eclipse. By studying these images, scientists can learn more about the Sun's atmosphere and how our solar system works.

As the eclipse came to an end, daylight slowly returned, and everything went back to normal. However, the memories of this incredible event will stay with people for a long time. The eclipse reminded us of the wonders of the universe and brought people together to witness something truly extraordinary.

1. The ..... of the sun can't be seen during a total eclipse.  
a. whole      b. half      c. third      d. fourth



2. People protected themselves during the eclipse by ..... .
  - a. looking up eagerly at the sky
  - b. witnessing the astronomical wonder
  - c. wearing particular glasses
  - d. looking directly at the sun
3. During the total solar eclipse, it looked as if it were ..... .
  - a. the day during nighttime
  - b. nighttime during the day
  - c. light during darkness
  - d. darkness during the night
4. What effect did the solar eclipse have on the temperature?
  - a. It became hotter.
  - b. It remained the same.
  - c. It became colder.
  - d. It increased.
5. Scientists studied and documented the solar eclipse to know more about ..... .
  - a. the sun's atmosphere
  - b. the moon's atmosphere
  - c. the earth's atmosphere
  - d. the stars' atmosphere
6. The underlined word "**prevailed**" means ..... .
  - a. published
  - b. gathered together
  - c. spread
  - d. disappeared
7. At the end of the eclipse, ..... .
  - a. everything became abnormal
  - b. the birds stopped singing
  - c. nocturnal animals got confused
  - d. it became light again

**4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

It is difficult for the present generation to imagine what life was like in the past without the mobile phone, the internet and fast means of transport.

- a. من الصعب للجيل الحالي أن يتخيل كيف كانت الحياة في الماضي بدون الهاتف المحمول أو الإنترنت أو وسائل النقل السريعة.
- b. من السهل للجيل الحالي أن يتخيل كيف كانت الحياة في الماضي بدون الهاتف المحمول أو الإنترنت أو وسائل النقل السريعة.
- c. من الصعب للجيل الحالي أن يتخيل كيف كنا نحب الحياة في الماضي بدون الهاتف المحمول أو الإنترنت أو وسائل النقل السريعة.
- d. من الصعب للجيل الحالي أن يتخيل كيف كنا نحب الحياة في الماضي مع استخدام الهاتف المحمول أو الإنترنت أو وسائل النقل السريعة.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

لا شك أن الإنسان هو السبب الرئيسي لتلوث البيئة لأن الأنشطة الصناعية التي يقوم بها تدمر التوازن البيئي.

- a. No doubt that man is the main cause of polluting the environment because the industrial activities that he does destroys the level of the environment.
- b. No doubt that man is the main reason for polluting the environment because the industrial activities that he does destroys the balance of the environment.
- c. No doubt that man is the mean cause of polluting the environment because the industrial activities that he does destroys the balance of the environment.
- d. No doubt that man is the main cause of polluting the environment because the industrial activities that he does destroy the balance of the environment.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. Which character do you like most? Why?

.....

2. Why do you think Doctor Livesey wanted to find Ben Gun?

.....

3. After reading "Treasure Island", what do we learn from it?

.....



- 6** Write an essay of about **ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150)** words on the following topic :  
*"The importance of hard work"*
- .....
- .....
- .....

## 10 Ismailia Governorate

## Inspectorate of English

- 1** Choose the **TWO (2)** correct answers out of the **FIVE (5)** options given :

- The robbers could ..... away from the police after robbing the computer shop.  
 a. escaped      b. step      c. stopped      d. get      e. run
- The children were kind to the cat. The antonyms of the word "kind" are .....  
 a. cruel      b. dishonest      c. foolish      d. just      e. merciless

- 2** Choose the correct answer from **a , b , c or d** :

- Miss Safa works as a ..... for us. She is responsible for looking after the whole house.  
 a. governess      b. homework      c. tutor      d. housekeeper
- Something has gone ..... with the car engine. It needs a mechanic.  
 a. right      b. wrong      c. out      d. back
- Teachers should give students equal ..... to be fair.  
 a. opportunities      b. salaries      c. medicines      d. punishment
- Only a ..... can scare all those people at the same time.  
 a. monster      b. human      c. man      d. child
- A ..... is a very old story that people tell about a famous event or person.  
 a. crime      b. goal      c. legend      d. stone
- The plane ..... after I had sent the text message to my wife.  
 a. took off      b. took on      c. took out      d. took in
- Drivers ..... wear a seat belt while driving into the city.  
 a. need      b. must      c. have to      d. must have
- Can you kindly hand me the file ..... cover is white?  
 a. who's      b. whose      c. which      d. that
- It was ..... when I had seen him coming that I realised he returned home.  
 a. that      b. only      c. hardly      d. sooner
- He ..... to sit down until he had apologized.  
 a. didn't allow      b. doesn't allow      c. wasn't allowed      d. isn't allowed
- She said that she ..... two strangers enter the office two hours before.  
 a. saw      b. had seen      c. has seen      d. was seeing
- I hadn't expected .....  
 a. what he was said      b. which he said  
 c. what had said      d. what had been said

### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Plants are beautiful and useful gifts of nature. They are great friends of man. Plants give us flowers, fruits, timber, bamboo, fuels, etc. We can rest in the cool shade of a tree. We get wood from the trees to make furniture, doors, windows, etc. Plants are also a great source of materials for paper, rubber, gums, herbs, and medicinal plants. Forests bring clouds and cause rainfall. Trees prevent soil erosion. They protect us from severe weather. Plants are a part and parcel of earthly life. All life directly or indirectly owes its existence to them. Trees release oxygen which we need for our life. They also absorb carbon dioxide gas. Many living species live in trees. Trees form the natural habitat of many animals, birds, and insects. Trees help make the land fertile. We get good crops out of fertile land. They are the sources of fruits and flowers. They offer us cool shade during summer. During the rainy season, we take shelter under trees. Trees and plants are the sources of many life-saving drugs. They guard us against pollution. Thus, trees keep up the ecological balance. Trees protect us from inclement wind, too. Seeds, nuts, and fruits are food sources for humans and animals. Trees protect the biodiversity of the ecosystem. Tree resins are used in producing varnishes. Essential oils derived from trees are used in the medicinal and aroma industry. Thus, trees play an important role in our life. Felling trees disturbs the ecosystem. We should preserve plants with great care.

- Which of the following is not correct?
  - Trees help keep ecological balance.
  - Trees take in Oxygen.
  - Trees provide life-saving drugs.
  - Trees protect the biodiversity.
- The word "....." in the passage means "wood used for making things"
  - timber
  - bamboo
  - stretch
  - involve
- What is the best title for the passage?-".....".
  - The beauty of nature
  - The importance of trees
  - Pollution
  - Global warming
- According to the passage, which of the following disturbs the ecosystem?
  - Planting trees
  - Preserving trees
  - Climbing trees
  - Felling trees
- We can use trees to make .....
  - medicine
  - paper
  - rubber
  - all of these
- In the field of medicine, trees help us .....
  - make paper
  - prevent soil erosion.
  - absorb carbon dioxide
  - produce many drugs
- If there were no trees, life would be .....
  - easier
  - fascinating
  - stressful
  - impossible

### 4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

A civilized society should treat its elderly members well even if it is multicultural.

- المجتمع المتحضر ينبغي عليه أن يعامل كبار السن معاملة جيدة حتى لو كان مجتمع متعدد الثقافات.
- المجتمع المتحضر يجب أن يرعاهم في تعامله مع الأعضاء القدماء حتى لو كان متعدد الثقافات.
- يجب على المجتمع المتحضر أن يعامل كبار السن جيداً رغم تعدد الثقافات.
- المجتمع المتحضر هو الذي يجب عليه أن يتعامل مع كبار السن جيداً حتى لو كان متعدد الثقافات.



**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

إنها مسؤولية الوالدين أن يقوموا بتنبيه الشباب بالآثار المدمرة لتناول المخدرات القاتلة.

- It's the parents' responsibility to make the youth aware of the destructive effects of taking killing drugs.
- Parents are responsible for making the youth unaware of the destructive effects of eating killing drugs.
- It's the parents' irresponsibility to lighten the youth of the destructive effects of taking killing drugs.
- Parents are responsible for making their children unaware of the destructive effects of taking killing drugs.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

- Was Jim right to cut the rope on the Hispaniola? Why/ Why not?  
.....
- Why do you think the pirates react differently to the singing voice in the trees?  
.....
- What is your opinion about the character of Silver?  
.....

**6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

*"The importance of learning foreign language"*

**11**

**Suez Governorate**

**South Educational Directorate**

**1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

- One ..... of the internet is that it enables us to get the information we need quickly.  
a. disadvantage    b. merit    c. advantage    d. demerit    e. style
- It is not legal to build on agricultural land. "Legal" is an antonym for .....  
a. unlawful    b. lawful    c. desired    d. illegal    e. unavailable

**2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- Because of the high waves, the ship was badly .....  
a. sold    b. kept    c. survived    d. wrecked
- Sally never arrives late; she is really .....  
a. careless    b. avoidable    c. punctual    d. funny
- My brother had an accident. He returned home with a ..... around his arm.  
a. message    b. package    c. passage    d. bandage
- Hazem asked ..... he could leave the lesson early.  
a. to    b. that    c. whether    d. weather
- I was ..... that the meeting had been postponed for unknown reasons.  
a. told    b. said    c. ordered    d. advised



6. "Oliver Twist", ..... by Charles Dickens, was a great success.  
 a. was written      b. written      c. which written      d. writing
7. A/An ..... is a period of time working in order to learn skills needed to do a job.  
 a. scholarship      b. apprenticeship      c. attention      d. spaceship
8. I didn't see who knocked on the door, but it ..... the mailman.  
 a. must have      b. should have      c. may have been      d. should be
9. You must concentrate more to make better ..... ; you are always absent-minded.  
 a. discouragement      b. movements      c. achievements      d. amusement
10. I didn't leave the house until my friend ..... me.  
 a. had telephoned      b. was telephoning      c. will telephone      d. has telephoned
11. I usually ..... myself to a rope before I go climbing.  
 a. detach      b. separate      c. attach      d. take
12. What will you buy if you ..... to the new shopping center?  
 a. go      b. will go      c. would go      d. went

**3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

The umbrella is an old idea. It has not changed much over time. Old sculpture (art made with clay) from the Middle East, shows the king with an umbrella. The sculpture is over 1,000 years old. At that time, common people did not have umbrellas. Only royalty had them. More than 2000 years ago, fashionable women carried umbrellas in ancient Greece. In China, only royalty used umbrellas. In old Chinese books, there are **illustrations** of umbrellas. These pictures were made with paint, blood, and special drawing tools. The umbrellas in old Chinese books look a lot like today's umbrellas.

There is not much information about umbrellas in Europe in the Middle Ages. People probably used their coats to protect themselves from the rain. People in the South Pacific used umbrellas made of palm leaves to protect themselves from the sun and rain. There have been many improvements to umbrellas. Now, modern umbrellas are better than the old umbrellas. The old umbrellas were often made of oiled silk. Modern umbrellas are made of cotton or plastic. Old umbrellas had ribbing made of wood. Modern umbrellas have steel ribs. Also, the trunk of the modern umbrella extends like a telescope. It can collapse and become shorter or extend and become longer.

1. According to the text, fashionable women had umbrellas in .....  
 a. Europe in Middle Ages      b. the South Pacific  
 c. the Middle East      d. Ancient Greece
2. In ancient China, .....  
 a. only royalty had umbrellas      b. umbrellas were made of palm leaves.  
 c. umbrellas looked modern      d. Both A and C are correct.
3. In Europe in the Middle Ages, .....  
 a. people used their coats to keep dry      b. people used modern umbrellas  
 c. people used silk umbrellas      d. None of the above
4. People in the South Pacific used .....  
 a. umbrellas made of palm leaves      b. umbrellas made of plastic  
 c. collapsing umbrellas      d. telescopes



5. Old umbrellas were often made with .....  
 a. steel                      b. cotton                      c. plastic                      d. oiled silk
6. Another word for "illustrations" is .....  
 a. texts                      b. coats                      c. pictures                      d. graphs
7. The passage is mainly about .....  
 a. how to choose umbrellas                      b. some information about umbrellas  
 c. the recentness of umbrellas                      d. the importance of having umbrellas

**4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

The Ministry of Education aims to develop the educational process using modern strategies. This will create a good citizen who can face different challenges.

- a. هدف وزارة التربية والتعليم إلى تطوير العملية التعليمية باستخدام أحدث الاستراتيجيات، وسيصنع هذا مواطناً صالحاً يمكنه مواجهة العديد من التحديات.
- b. تهدف وزارة التربية والتعليم إلى تطوير العملية التعليمية باستخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة، وسيخلق هذا مواطناً صالحاً يمكنه مواجهة شتى التحديات.
- c. تهدف وزارة التربية والتعليم إلى تطوير العملية التعليمية باستخدام استراتيجيات حديثة، وسيخلق هذا مواطناً صالحاً يمكنه مواجهة العديد من التحديات.
- d. تهدف وزارة التربية والتعليم إلى تطوير العملية التعليمية مستخدمة التكنولوجيا الحديثة، وسيخلق هذا متعلماً جيداً يمكنه مواجهة عدة التحديات.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

لقد كانت مصر دائماً شامخة على مر تاريخها، وستظل كذلك أبداً الدهر بأبنائها، ولن تخضع لأحد مهما تكون الأسباب.

- a. Egypt has always been great throughout its history. It will be so forever through its citizens. It will not submit to anyone, whatever the reasons are.
- b. Egypt has been great along its history. It will be so forever through its citizenship. It will not admit to anyone, whatever are the reasons.
- c. Egypt has always been great throughout its date. It will be so forever through its citizens. It will not submit to anyone, however the reasons are.
- d. Egypt has always been great through its history. It will be such forever through its citizens. It will not submit to someone, whatever the reasons are.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. Why do you think Jim decided to stay with the pirates?  
 .....
2. How do you think the changing wind helped Jim to get onto the ship?  
 .....
3. Do you think the pirates will find the treasure using the map? Why?  
 .....

**6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

**"The pros and cons of online education"**

.....

.....

.....



**12 Damietta Governorate****El-Zarka Educational Directorate****1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

1. Car fumes and factory waste have a serious ..... on our planet.  
a. affect      b. effect      c. influence      d. affection      e. effective
2. Your room looks messy. The synonyms of "messy" are .....  
a. untidy      b. neat      c. ordered      d. disordered      e. attractive

**2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. It's illegal to use the fire alarm except in case of .....  
a. fluency      b. allergy      c. frequency      d. emergency
2. There were clouds of ..... in the distance as the truck approached.  
a. cluster      b. master      c. mystery      d. dust
3. I ..... breathe here. Please, open the windows.  
a. can't      b. must      c. shouldn't      d. mustn't
4. If you ..... what I say, ask your mother.  
a. won't believe      b. didn't believe      c. don't believe      d. hadn't believed
5. He was born into a very ..... family. They had a great deal of money.  
a. poor      b. wealth      c. worthy      d. wealthy
6. It was only ..... she had gone out that it rained heavily.  
a. when      b. till      c. after      d. before
7. What are the main skills ..... for this job?  
a. that requiring      b. requires      c. required      d. which required
8. When she finishes school, she hopes to join the ..... of Medicine.  
a. collage      b. college      c. colleague      d. colligate
9. He denied ..... at the scene of the crime.  
a. to be      b. was      c. been      d. being
10. My grandma has ..... so much in her life. She's a doctor and a professor.  
a. deceived      b. believed      c. appreciated      d. achieved
11. I wanted to know what ..... the day before.  
a. did he say      b. had he said      c. he had said      d. would he say
12. At last, astronomers have ..... the mystery of the rings encircling the planet.  
a. mended      b. solved      c. repaired      d. clued

**3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Millions of people are attacked by a secret enemy which causes more harm and greater suffering than any other disease. Its name is worry. According to doctors, worry can actually cause many organic diseases. And even when it doesn't, it can, by eating our energy in many ways, ruin our health and make our life hard and miserable.

Worry is a very dangerous enemy. The stresses and strains of life may make us worry about silly **trivial** things. Worry eats into our hearts and causes us to spend long sleepless nights. As a result, some of us get tired easily, some get depressed and others become irritable. Thus, life seems to be an endless chain of worries.



Worry affects nearly everybody in society from teenagers to elderly people. Students worry about their exams. Parents worry about their children. Young men and women worry about their future life. Needless to say, worry is the result of thinking in a wrong way. It is a fact that thinking over worries brings about more worries. We must face such things quietly, boldly and bravely. To overcome worry, we should cultivate different interests, develop contact with a larger number of persons and spend our leisure on a useful hobby. When feeling worried, retire to a quiet corner and relax.

1. The best sentence to summarise the passage is ".....".
  - a. Since life is miserable, we should ignore our problems
  - b. Worry is an organic disease and unsolvable problem
  - c. Worry eats up money and makes us poor
  - d. Since life is hard, we should face it bravely with no worry
2. To feel happy is to .....
  - a. indulge in worry
  - b. avoid organic disease
  - c. make life miserable
  - d. avoid much worry
3. What can we do to overcome worry?
  - a. Practising useful and interesting hobbies.
  - b. Sitting idle at home.
  - c. Thinking deeply about our problems.
  - d. Eating a lot of sweets.
4. Worry prevents us from .....
  - a. eating
  - b. learning
  - c. sleep
  - d. being treated
5. If we defeated worry, our life would be .....
  - a. cheerful
  - b. miserable
  - c. unhappy
  - d. gloomy
6. Thinking in a wrong way results in .....
  - a. eating bad food
  - b. fear and worry
  - c. bad bringing up
  - d. bad education
7. The synonym of the word "trivial" is .....
  - a. significant
  - b. unimportant
  - c. necessary
  - d. useful

#### 4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Take advice about your future from the wise and experienced, not from the funny company around you. Your parents are the best reference for good and sincere advice.

- a. خذ النصيحة عن مستقبلك من الحكماء وذوي الخبرة، وليس من الصلبة الهزلية من حولك، فوالديك هم أفضل إشارة للنصيحة الجيدة والصادقة.
- b. خذ النصيحة بخصوص مستقبلك من الحكمة وذوي الخبرة، وليس الشركة المرحلة المحيطة بك، إن والديك هم أفضل مرجع للنصيحة الجيدة.
- c. خذ النصيحة بخصوص مستقبلك من الحكماء والخبرة، وليس من شراكة الضحك من حولك، إن والديك هم أفضل مرجع للنصيحة الجيدة والصادقة.
- d. خذ النصيحة بخصوص مستقبلك من الحكماء وذوي الخبرة، وليس من الصلبة المرحلة من حولك، إن والديك هم أفضل مرجع للنصيحة الجيدة والصادقة.



**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

ليس كافياً أن نفخر دوماً بإنجازات أجدادنا، فلابد أن نسعى بجد لكي نحقق أحلامنا وننجح في الحياة بالإضافة إلى المساهمة في تحقيق المزيد من الرقي للمجتمع.

- It is not enough to always be proud of the achievements of our parents; we must strive hard to achieve their dreams and succeed in life in addition to contributing to the further advancement of society.
- It is not enough to always be keen on the achievements of our ancestors; we must strive hard to achieve our dreams and succeed in life in addition to contributing to the further welfare of society.
- It is not enough to always be proud of the civilisation of our ancestors; we must strive hard to achieve our dreams and ambitions in life in addition to contributing to the further advancement of society.
- It is not enough to always be proud of the achievements of our ancestors; we must strive hard to achieve our dreams and succeed in life in addition to contributing to the further advancement of society.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. Ben Gun was observant. Explain.

.....

2. To what extent was captain Smollet a success? Why?

.....

3. Despite his young age, Jim appeared to be brave. Illustrate.

.....

**6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

*"The importance of technology"*

.....  
 .....  
 .....

**13 Matrouh Governorate****Matrouh Educational Directorate****1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

1. GPS helps you to navigate your journey from one place to another. To "help" means to

.....

- a. assist      b. insist      c. persist      d. raid      e. aid

2. Some professional divers could reach the bottom of oceans. Two antonyms for "bottom" are .....

- a. base      b. ground      c. earth      d. surface      e. top

**2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. When you have a/an ..... to certain foods, so you can't eat any of them.

- a. casualty      b. allergy      c. feedback      d. emergency

2. She is unable to walk, so she uses a wheelchair to .....

- a. wrap around      b. find out      c. get around      d. run out



3. My job is very ..... ; it is all about trying to improve products or develop new ones.  
a. hybrid                      b. solar                      c. public                      d. practical
4. I've ..... a complaint to the police about the noise coming from the next house.  
a. done                      b. given                      c. kept                      d. made
5. I think it's so ..... to punish children physically or emotionally at school.  
a. cruel                      b. flexible                      c. rewarding                      d. familiar
6. Bermuda Triangle is still a/an ..... which puzzles scientists.  
a. industry                      b. qualification                      c. construction                      d. mystery
7. It's a ..... to have a good education system to benefit our country.  
a. should                      b. necessary                      c. must                      d. mustn't
8. Having ..... home, my children went to bed immediately.  
a. arrived                      b. arrive                      c. had arrived                      d. arriving
9. The children promised their mom that they ..... her late the following night.  
a. will phone                      b. would phone                      c. were phoning                      d. phoned
10. The foreigners ..... stay ended have to renew it.  
a. whom                      b. which                      c. where                      d. whose
11. My uncle lives in a remote area. He ..... such long distance to come here.  
a. must have walked                      b. can't have walked                      c. must be walking                      d. mustn't walk
12. Hamza ..... more than once not to arrive late.  
a. told                      b. had told                      c. was told                      d. was telling

### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Friendship is a valuable part of life that provides support, companionship, and a sense of belonging. Friends are there to celebrate our successes and comfort us during difficult times. Having friends can positively impact our mental and emotional well-being. They can boost our happiness and reduce stress. When we have friends, we can trust and rely on, we feel more secure and less lonely. Friendship can also improve our confidence and help us develop important social skills.

Friendship can also have a positive impact on our physical health. Studies have shown that having strong social connections can lower the risk of certain health problems, such as heart disease and depression. Spending time with friends engaging in activities we enjoy can improve our immune system and overall well-being. The laughter and joy shared with friends can be helpful for our health in various ways.

Friendship can also play a major role in our personal growth and development. Through interactions with friends, we learn about ourselves, our values, and our strengths and weaknesses. Friends can provide valuable feedback and perspectives that help us grow as individuals. **They** can offer support and encouragement as we face challenges to achieve our goals. Friendship is the compass that guides us through life's storms, reminding us that we're never truly alone.

1. According to the passage, friends provide ..... during difficult times.  
a. celebration of successes  
b. comfort and support  
c. a sense of belonging  
d. nothing at all



2. How can having friends affect our mental health?
  - a. It plays a significant role in our personal growth
  - b. It increases feelings of loneliness and stress
  - c. It improves physical health and fitness
  - d. It reduces feelings of loneliness and stress
3. How does the passage describe friendship as a compass?
  - a. It guides individuals through life's storms
  - b. It leads individuals to success
  - c. It ensures individuals never face challenges
  - d. It leaves us alone in bad weather
4. It's proved that having strong friendships can ..... the risk of heart attacks.
  - a. increase
  - b. grow
  - c. decrease
  - d. raise
5. What is the main idea of the last paragraph?
  - a. The impact of friendship on mental well-being.
  - b. The effect of friendship on physical health.
  - c. The importance of friendship to achieve success.
  - d. The influence of friendship on self-development.
6. The underlined word "They" refers to .....
  - a. individuals
  - b. friends
  - c. values
  - d. skills
7. Find a word in the passage that means "**an effect**".
  - a. support
  - b. laughter
  - c. impact
  - d. trust

**4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Most parts of the world are severely affected by pollution. As a result, global warming is caused by an increase in the amount of carbon dioxide in air.

- a. تتأثر بعض دول العالم بشدة بالتلوث. نتيجة لذلك يحدث الاحتباس الحرارى بسبب زيادة كمية ثانى أكسيد الكربون بالجو.
- b. تتأثر معظم أنحاء العالم بشدة بالتلوث. نتيجة لذلك يحدث الاحتباس الحرارى بسبب زيادة كمية ثانى أكسيد الكربون بالجو.
- c. تأثر معظم أنحاء العالم بشدة بالتلوث. نتيجة لذلك، يزداد الاحتباس الحرارى بسبب زيادة كمية ثانى أكسيد الكربون بالسماء.
- d. تتأثر معظم شعوب العالم بشدة بالتلوث. لذلك يحدث الاحتباس الحرارى نتيجة لزيادة كمية الملوثات المنبعثة بالأرض.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

إن الصحة الجيدة هي في الواقع ثروة ثمينة لأنها تتيح للفرد أن يعيش دون أن تعيقه بأي مشاكل صحية.

- a. Good health is actually a precious wealth because it lets the individual live without affecting by any health problems.
- b. Good health is actually a precious wealth because it allows the individual live without affecting by any health problems.
- c. Good health is actually a precious wealth because it allows the individual to live without being affected by any health problems.
- d. Good health is actually a precious wealth because it shows the individual how to live without being affected by any financial problems.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. Captain Smollett proved to be a wise leader inside the fort. Show how?  
.....
2. When Jim took the Hispaniola back to the island, he was both brave and kind. Explain.  
.....



3. If you were Jim, would you join the pirates? Why? Why not?

.....

**6** Write an essay of about **ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150)** words on the following topic :

*"How to behave as a good student"*

.....

.....

.....

## 14 Fayoum Governorate

## Etsa Educational Directorate

**1** Choose the **TWO (2)** correct answers out of the **FIVE (5)** options given :

1. We could see no sign of life in the abandoned village. The antonyms of "abandoned" are .....

- a. polluted      b. populated      c. uninhabited      d. inhabited      e. deserted

2. I work hard to achieve more success in life. The synonyms of "achieve" are .....

- a. carry out      b. leave      c. accomplish      d. recognise      e. neglect

**2** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I can't stop sneezing because I have a/an ..... to the perfume you are wearing.

- a. surprise      b. allergy      c. boredom      d. amazement

2. Smokers should be aware of the ..... of this bad habit.

- a. advantages      b. easiness      c. benefits      d. dangers

3. One of the disadvantages of social networking sites is ..... family and friends. We spend most of the day on these sites.

- a. applying for      b. losing touch with      c. keeping control on      d. living with

4. What is the reason ..... his sadness?

- a. from      b. with      c. for      d. in

5. To get a/an ..... job, you should improve your skills.

- a. trivial      b. easy      c. temporary      d. rewarding

6. The ..... department in a hospital provides immediate treatment for emergency cases.

- a. casualty      b. accounts      c. attendant      d. poverty

7. « She needn't have bought more bread. » This means: .....

- a. It wasn't necessary to buy more bread, so she didn't do the action.  
b. She bought more bread because it was necessary.  
c. She bought more bread although it wasn't necessary.  
d. Although it was necessary to buy more bread, she didn't do the action.

8. If this team had talented players, they ..... the match easily.

- a. would have won      b. will win      c. would win      d. win

9. Hardly ..... the book when he wrote a report about it.

- a. he reads      b. had he read      c. he read      d. he had read

10. My friend told me that he ..... to London the week before.

- a. has travelled      b. would travel      c. travelled      d. had travelled



11. Mr Ahmed, ..... teaches us English, is very friendly and helpful.  
 a. who                      b. that                      c. whom                      d. what
12. The robber ..... into the flat through the window last night; it is neither broken nor open.  
 a. can't break                      b. can't have broken  
 c. must break                      d. shouldn't have broken

**3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Everyone is individual and different. In the same way as everyone's finger-prints are unique, so is everyone's personality. We can usually see people's personality in the clothes they wear, or how they look after their things, or how they behave with other people around them. When we say that we know someone well, what we really mean is that we can make accurate guesses about what that person will do or think in certain situations. We know the different qualities of their personality. These features are called "personality **traits**".

Psychologists think that we have "central personality traits". These affect how we behave, and how we react to people and situations. Examples of central personality traits are friendliness, neatness, competitiveness, shyness and optimism. Some psychologists think that we inherit these central traits from our family and that **they** usually stay with us all our life.

Psychologists say that we also have other traits, called "secondary traits", connected with the things we prefer, such as our favourite food, music, films or colours. These can change as we get older, but very often many of them stay the same all our lives.

Personality traits may be either positive or negative. The positive traits make the person respected by others while the negative ones make them hated. Positive personality traits include being honest, taking responsibility for actions, determination, understanding, patience, courage and loyalty. Negative personality traits include lying which is a **deplorable** quality, being selfish, laziness, disloyal and talking about others behind their back.

- Which of the following statements is TRUE?
  - We inherit central traits from our friends.
  - Central traits often change when we grow up.
  - Secondary traits are liable to be altered.
  - Secondary traits stay fixed till death.
- Which of the following can determine someone's personality?
  - The way they write.
  - The way they dream.
  - The way they sleep.
  - The way they behave.
- What does the underlined word "**they**" refer to?
  - personality traits
  - qualities of people
  - central personality traits
  - secondary personality traits
- The underlined word "**traits**" means .....
  - awards
  - characteristics
  - versions
  - effects
- Many psychologists think that we get our central traits from .....
  - school
  - books
  - our family
  - our friends



6. According to the passage, everyone has unique .....

- a. hearts                      b. printers                      c. fingers                      d. personalities

7. The underlined word “**deplorable**” means .....

- a. extremely bad                      b. extremely good                      c. very special                      d. particular in type

**4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

The world of work is changing as a result of the major reliance on the internet and artificial intelligence, which has a significant impact on the job market worldwide.

- a. يتغير سوق العمل نتيجة للاعتماد الكبير على الإنترنت والذكاء الاصطناعي، والذي له تأثير كبير على سوق العمل في جميع أنحاء العالم.
- b. يتغير عالم العمل نتيجة للاعتماد الكبير على الإنترنت والذكاء الاصطناعي، والذي له تأثير كبير على سوق الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم.
- c. يتغير عالم العمل نتيجة للاعتماد الكبير على الإنترنت والمجال الاصطناعي، والذي له تأثير كبير على سوق العمل في جميع أنحاء العالم.
- d. يتغير سوق العمل نتيجة للاعتماد الكبير على الإنترنت والمجال الاصطناعي، والذي له تأثير كبير على سوق الوظائف في جميع أنحاء العالم.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

يعتبر العمل الجاد والإصرار من أهم دعائم النجاح في الحياة، لذا لابد أن تكون مثابراً وطموحاً لتتغلب على الصعاب وتحقق أحلامك.

- a. Hard work and cooperation are among the most important pillars of success in life, so you must be persistent and ambitious to overcome difficulties and achieve your dreams.
- b. Hard work and persistence are among the most important pillars of success in life, so you must be persistent and strong to overcome problems and achieve your dreams.
- c. Hard work and cooperation are among the most important pillars of success in life, so you must be persistent and ambitious to overcome problems and achieve your dreams.
- d. Hard work and persistence are among the most important pillars of success in life, so you must be persistent and ambitious to overcome difficulties and achieve your dreams.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. “I don’t trust anyone,” said Ben Gun.

- Do you agree that Ben Gun shouldn’t trust anyone on the island? Why?

2. Jim said, “I was so surprised that, without knowing how, my gun fired. Hands gave a cry and fell down into the sea. I never saw him again.”

- What, do you think, might have happened if Jim hadn’t killed Hands?

3. Dr Livesey said to Jim, “You can’t stay here. One jump and you’re out of the fort, and we can run.” - Do you think Dr Livesey and Jim would have succeeded to run away from the fort if they had tried to run? Why?

**6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

*“The useful habits of studying which make you achieve your goal”*



**15 Beni Suef Governorate****Ihnasia Educational Directorate****1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

- Don't worry! These wires are ..... and ..... . They are not dangerous.  
a. safe                      b. serious                      c. unsafe                      d. risky                      e. secure
- The word "make" collocates with ..... and .....  
a. research                      b. the shopping                      c. a survey                      d. a mistake                      e. progress

**2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- The ..... man was taken to the hospital in an ambulance after the accident.  
a. happy                      b. injured                      c. joyful                      d. traitor
- I have a good ..... of apps on my smartphone.  
a. comment                      b. virus                      c. collection                      d. printing
- It is really cruel to do ..... on animals.  
a. experiences                      b. emotions                      c. feelings                      d. experiments
- The building was about to fall down, so it had been .....  
a. navigated                      b. transported                      c. evacuated                      d. responded
- I got a/an ..... to fix the kitchen tap.  
a. mechanic                      b. carpenter                      c. plumber                      d. architect
- All buildings should have ..... for the disabled people who use wheelchairs.  
a. ramps                      b. obstacles                      c. courts                      d. traps
- If Nada ..... the test, she will go to university.  
a. passes                      b. passed                      c. had passed                      d. was passing
- I didn't know about the accident until I ..... about it in the newspaper.  
a. reads                      b. have read                      c. will read                      d. had read
- After ..... my homework, I went out with my friends.  
a. had done                      b. have done                      c. doing                      d. will do
- "The sun is a star", my teacher said. My teacher said that the sun ..... a star.  
a. was                      b. has been                      c. had been                      d. is
- The house in ..... I live is surrounded by trees.  
a. which                      b. where                      c. whose                      d. whom
- Ahmed was the first one ..... to my birthday party.  
a. who to came                      b. to coming                      c. to came                      d. to come

**3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Artificial intelligence (AI) is a new technology which aims at making machines think and learn like humans. AI is now used in many applications. It is used in smartphones, making cars, flying planes and navigating ships. AI can help us to perform tasks quickly and accurately. In the field of health care, robots help doctors to perform operations, make accurate diagnoses and decide the best treatment for patients. Thus, they can save lives and improve people's health.

In the field of industry, robots are used to carry out difficult tasks which people cannot do. They improve the quality of goods, reduce costs and increase production. Moreover,



AI is used in banks to do difficult calculations in no time. Even at homes, AI is used in modern home devices. Now, you can give voice orders to electric appliances to turn on and off. In some modern countries, it has become normal to see driverless cars in streets. Just sit in the car and read a book while the car drives itself using GPS and some sensors to reach its destination. In short, Artificial Intelligence offers great help to humanity. It has become a great factor to improve our life and boost our lives.

1. The main idea of the passage is .....
  - a. Artificial intelligence won't help man.
  - b. Artificial intelligence has no importance.
  - c. Artificial intelligence helps doctors only.
  - d. Artificial intelligence is a great help to humanity.
2. According to the passage, AI is used in the medical field to .....
  - a. make accurate diagnoses
  - b. save doctors
  - c. improve doctors' lives
  - d. perform operations inaccurately
3. According to the passage, which of the following is NOT correct?
  - a. AI is used to improve the quality of goods.
  - b. AI is used to make accurate calculations in banks.
  - c. AI is used to increase prices.
  - d. AI is used to fly planes and navigate ships.
4. The antonym of the underlined word "normal" is .....
  - a. familiar
  - b. unusual
  - c. regular
  - d. ordinary
5. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to .....
  - a. doctors
  - b. the GPS
  - c. robots
  - d. humans
6. The best title for the passage is .....
  - a. GPS
  - b. Modern Countries
  - c. Artificial Intelligence
  - d. Driverless Cars
7. AI is a great factor to boost our lives. This means: .....
  - a. It will improve it
  - b. It will damage it
  - c. It will destroy it
  - d. It will end it

**4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

ليس هناك نجاح دون صعوبات، ولا سعادة دون ألم، ولا مكسب دون خسارة. هذه هي الحياة شئت أم أبيت، ولكن لكي تفهمها لابد أن تعيشها.

- a. There is no success without hardships, no happiness without pain or winning without loss. This is life; you like or not. However, to understand it, you should live it.
- b. There is no success without hardships, no happiness without pain or winning without loss. This is life; you like or not. However, to love it, you should live it.
- c. There is success without hardships, no happiness without pain or winning without loss. This is life; you like or not. However, to understand it, you should love it.
- d. There is no success without hardships, no happiness without pain or winning without loss. This is life; you like or not. However, to live it, you should leave it.



**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

Sustainable development aims at achieving economic growth and protecting the environment at the same time. To achieve sustainable development, we should use environmentally friendly materials and recycle our used products.

- a. تهدف التنمية المستدامة إلى تحقيق نموًا اقتصاديًا وحماية الحياة في نفس الوقت، ولتحقيق التنمية المستدامة. يجب أن نصنع مواد صديقة للبيئة ونعيد تدوير منتجاتنا المستخدمة.
- b. تهدف التنمية المستدامة إلى تحقيق نموًا ماليًا وحماية بيئة في نفس الوقت، ولتحقيق التنمية المستدامة. يجب أن نستخدم مواد صديقة للبلد ونعيد تدوير منتجاتنا المستخدمة.
- c. هدفت التنمية المستدامة إلى تحقيق نموًا اقتصاديًا وحماية بيئة في نفس الوقت، ولتحقيق التنمية المستدامة يجب ألا نستخدم مواد صديقة للبيئة ونتخلص من منتجاتنا المستخدمة.
- d. تهدف التنمية المستدامة إلى تحقيق نموًا اقتصاديًا وحماية بيئة في نفس الوقت، ولتحقيق التنمية المستدامة. يجب أن نستخدم مواد صديقة للبيئة ونعيد تدوير منتجاتنا المستخدمة.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. What do you think of Silver?

2. If you were Captain Smollett, would you accept the truce with the pirates?

3. Do you think Jim risked his life when he went on Hispaniola?

**6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

*“Voluntary Work”*

**16 Minia Governorate****Bani Mazar Educational Directorate****1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

1. My room has become a very messy place since my sister's children showed up.

The synonyms of the word “messy” are ..... and .....

- a. tidy      b. needy      c. untidy      d. clean      e. chaotic

2. Our education system should provide equal opportunities for all children. The word “equal” is antonymous with ..... and .....

- a. unjust      b. equitable      c. unfair      d. fair      e. just

**2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. In the past, rich families used to pay ..... to help educate their children at home.

- a. servants      b. housewives      c. governesses      d. relatives

2. Athletes with ..... can take part in the Paralympics.

- a. abilities      b. disabilities      c. capabilities      d. varieties

3. Everyone should ..... what their parents do to help bring them up.

- a. reply      b. check      c. save      d. appreciate



4. Several families were ..... from their homes because of the 1992 earthquake. They had to live in tents.  
a. travelled      b. wrapped      c. evacuated      d. developed
5. After a long trial, the woman was found ..... of murdering her husband.  
a. active      b. bored      c. guilty      d. solved
6. The government has taken strict safety measures to reduce road .....  
a. casualties      b. railways      c. signals      d. swings
7. Emam Ashour hurt his shoulder during the match and ..... go to hospital for treatment.  
a. should      b. needs to      c. had to      d. has to
8. Before ..... for London, he had paid off his debts.  
a. left      b. leaving      c. had left      d. leave
9. If he read in bed, he ..... asleep like a baby.  
a. could fall      b. will fall      c. can fall      d. falls
10. Shakespeare, ..... works are studied at every university around the world, wrote 37 plays for the theatre.  
a. who      b. whom      c. that      d. whose
11. He asked me where ..... the night before.  
a. did I go      b. I have gone      c. had I gone      d. I had gone
12. The players are all very happy. They ..... have won the match.  
a. must      b. mustn't      c. can't      d. might

### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Teenagers today are undergoing lots of change. They are between the ages of 13 to 19. Many of them are undergoing physical and emotional changes. These changes are unavoidable.

The teenager's life is full of happiness, sadness, enjoyment and it can be interesting too. The teenager is subjected to physical growth and hormonal changes. They may be in the stage of conflict and this is a normal part of life.

Making friends is part of a teenager's life. The teenager should enjoy life by making friends and **participating** in healthy activities such as camping, kayaking, swimming and so on. Through friends, a teenager learns to joke, laugh and play to release stress and tension. By making friends, the teenager learns to sweeten his or her life.

Many teenagers like to follow up with the latest trends of dressing, hairstyle and even looking good with their physical image. Some of them go on diets to slim down in order to look attractive.

Parents tend to play a role in a teenager's life. Parents today are overly concerned over their children's well-being. **They** like to control their freedom. Therefore, we have cases of disagreement. Parents should help their children to pass this stage safely. Media has an influence over the teenager's life. Violent action movies and the internet can bring bad effects. There will be more harm than good if nothing is done.



1. The main idea of the passage is “.....”.
  - a. Parents and teenagers
  - b. Physical growth of teenagers
  - c. Teenager’s life
  - d. Making friends
2. The underlined pronoun “**They**” refers to .....
  - a. friends
  - b. parents
  - c. teenagers
  - d. trends
3. Teenagers face .....
  - a. physical changes only
  - b. emotional changes only
  - c. physical and emotional changes
  - d. none of them
4. The underlined word “**participating**” can be replaced by .....
  - a. shoring
  - b. showing
  - c. shaking
  - d. sharing
5. Through making friends, teenagers can have .....
  - a. sadness
  - b. enjoyment
  - c. stress
  - d. fear
6. Disagreement happens between parents and teenagers because parents tend to .....
  - a. help them
  - b. control them
  - c. destroy them
  - d. fail them
7. Teenagers like to keep up to date with .....
  - a. books
  - b. magazines
  - c. newspapers
  - d. dressing and hairstyle

**4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Recent studies have shown that air pollution has far-reaching deleterious effects on humans and the environment.

- a. بينت الدراسات الحديثة أن تلوث الهواء له آثار ضارة بعيدة المدى على البشر والبيئة.
- b. بينت الدراسات الحديثة أن تلوث الهواء له آثار ضارة وقوية المدى على البشرية والبيئة.
- c. بينت الدراسات الجديدة أن تلوث الهواء له علامات ضارة بعيدة المدى على البشرية والبيئة.
- d. بينت الدراسات الحديثة أن التلوث له آثار ضارة بعيدة المدى على الأفراد والبيئة.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

لقد أصبحت مواقع التواصل الإجتماعى أحد أكثر الأدوات الفعالة لإحداث تغيرات اجتماعية.

- a. Social networking sites have become one of the most effect tools for bringing about social exchange.
- b. Society networking sites have become one of the most effective tools for bringing up social change.
- c. Social networking sites has become one of the most effective tools for bringing about social change.
- d. Social networking sites have become one of the most effective tools for bringing about social change.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. How do you think Jim knew that the pirates controlled the ship?

.....

2. Jim was brave. Explain.

.....

3. Do you think the story ended happily for Jim? Why?

.....



- 6** Write an essay of about **ONE HUNDRED** and **FIFTY (150)** words on the following topic :  
**"The pros and cons of travelling abroad"**
- .....
- .....
- .....

**17****Assuit Governorate****Dairut Educational Directorate**

- 1** Choose the **TWO (2)** correct answers out of the **FIVE (5)** options given :

1. Modern technology has a lot of good things, but also has some disadvantages.

The synonyms of "disadvantages" are .....

- a. pros                      b. demerits                      c. cons                      d. merits                      e. benefits

2. We passed a stressful time last week. The antonyms of "stressful" are .....

- a. relaxing                      b. tiresome                      c. tiring                      d. exhausting                      e. easy

- 2** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. People cover themselves with a ..... or more because of the severe cold.

- a. curtain                      b. desk                      c. blanket                      d. blank

2. There are ..... for everything on my mobile, so I can't do without it.

- a. machines                      b. tools                      c. devices                      d. apps

3. Most friends spend their free time ..... together online.

- a. fixing                      b. chatting                      c. repairing                      d. cheating

4. My brother wants to employ a ..... to teach his children at home.

- a. governor                      b. servant                      c. governess                      d. guide

5. Mr Ahmed was one of the people who ..... to ask for social equality.

- a. charged                      b. completed                      c. ramped                      d. campaigned

6. .... workers were busy laying the foundation for the new bridge.

- a. Destruction                      b. Structure                      c. Construction                      d. Damage

7. If you ..... in a hurry, leave that task for me.

- a. have                      b. had been                      c. are                      d. were

8. Last winter was my first visit to Kuwait, I ..... there before.

- a. have never been                      b. had never been                      c. had been                      d. have been

9. I asked Hany when .....

- a. his birthday was                      b. his birthday is                      c. is his birthday                      d. was his birthday

10. After ..... my lunch, I went out to play with my friends.

- a. having                      b. had                      c. had had                      d. have had

11. My pen-friend ..... from America, loves Mohamed Salah very much.

- a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. who's

12. Nagwa would have that medal if she ..... well.

- a. play                      b. had played                      c. played                      d. plays



### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

William Shakespeare, often regarded as the greatest poet and playwright in the English language. He is now an inseparable part of not only British literature but of world literature as well. Shakespeare was born in 1564 in the town of Stratford-upon-Avon. Not much is known about what his youth was like. At the age of 18, he married Anne Hathaway, who was 8 years older than him. They had three children: Susanna, Hamnet, and Judith.

Shakespeare is best known for his work in plays and poetry. Some of his most famous pieces include King Lear, the Tempest, Romeo and Juliet, Hamlet, Julius Caesar, and Othello. Of course, there are many other plays that are read and loved today. Not only did Shakespeare contribute greatly to literature, he also played a significant role in shaping the English language. The words and expressions that he used in his works are still quoted by many people today. Such was his significance to England that one historian once said that he would sooner give up India than give up Shakespeare.

- Shakespeare wrote ..... .
  - plays and films
  - poems and articles
  - plays and poems
  - songs and child literature
- The best title for this passage would be ".....".
  - William Shakespeare
  - The plays of Shakespeare
  - The poems of Shakespeare
  - William and Anne Shakespeare
- According to the passage, ..... .
  - Shakespeare was 8 years younger than Anne
  - Shakespeare was 8 years older than Anne
  - Shakespeare and Anne had four children
  - much is known about Shakespeare's childhood
- A historian said he would rather give up India before giving up Shakespeare because he thought ..... .
  - he liked Shakespeare and India
  - he didn't like Shakespeare or India
  - India wasn't so important to him
  - Shakespeare was a very important person to England
- A ..... is a place where you can live.
  - playground
  - religion
  - region
  - poem
- ..... King Lear and the Tempest were written by Shakespeare.
  - Every
  - Each
  - Either
  - Both
- What does the underlined word significance in the last paragraph mean?
  - augury
  - sense
  - value
  - event

### 4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Optimism is very important in everyone's life as it makes our life interesting. You must be optimistic about your future life.

- التفاؤل هام جدا في حياة كل فرد لأنه يجعل حياتنا ممتعة ولذا يجب أن لا تكون متفانلاً بشأن حياتك المستقبلية.
- التفاؤل هام في حياة كل فرد لأنه يجعل حياتنا ممتعة ولذا يجب أن تكون متفانلاً بشأن حياتك المستقبلية.
- التفاؤل مهم جدًا في حياة كل شخص لأنه يجعل حياتنا ممتعة ولذا يجب أن تكون متفانلاً بشأن حياتك الشخصية.
- التفاؤل مهم جدًا في حياة كل فرد لأنه يجعل حياتنا ممتعة ولذا يجب أن تكون مؤملاً بشأن حياتك المستقبلية.



**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

تستخدم أجهزة الكمبيوتر لأغراض مختلفة، مثل: التصفح وإنشاء المستندات ولعب ألعاب وتحرير الصور ومقاطع الفيديو وغير ذلك.

- Computers are used for various purposes like browsing, creating documents, playing games, editing images and videos, and less.
- Computers are used for various purposes like browsing, creating documents, playing games, editing images and videos, and more.
- Computers were used for various purposes like browsing, creating documents, playing games, editing images and videos, and more.
- Computers are used for various purposes like reading, creating documents, playing games, editing images and papers, and more.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. Do you think Captain Smollett was a good captain? Why/Why not?

.....

2. Why do you think Jim decided to sail the ship to the north of the island?

.....

3. Why do you think the pirates wanted Jim to be the leader?

.....

**6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

*"Your goal in life"*

.....  
 .....  
 .....

**18 Sohag Governorate****Gerga Educational Directorate****1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

1. My friend ate a bad sandwich, so he ..... ill.

- a. had                      b. got                      c. made                      d. did                      e. became

2. The street was familiar to me. The antonyms of the word "familiar" are .....

- a. usual                      b. simple                      c. unfamiliar                      d. recognisable                      e. uncommon

**2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. There was an emergency so the school was ..... to save the students.

- a. wrapped                      b. burnt                      c. evacuated                      d. injured

2. After the accident, Lara couldn't walk and she had to use a/an .....

- a. wheelchair                      b. armchair                      c. pair of glasses                      d. muscle

3. GPS is short for Global ..... System.

- a. Press                      b. Population                      c. Positioning                      d. Philosophy

4. The six-year-old child is a/an .....; he's lost his parents in a terrible car accident.

- a. toddler                      b. adult                      c. teenager                      d. orphan

5. Ali arrived an hour late for the interview. He's not very .....

- a. punctual                      b. honest                      c. flexible                      d. loyal



6. I didn't enjoy that novel because the ..... was very complicated.  
a. plot                      b. people                      c. publisher                      d. plate
7. That ..... be my book. I have my one in my bag.  
a. mustn't                      b. must                      c. doesn't                      d. can't
8. The nurse is a hard-working person ..... caring and reliable.  
a. who's                      b. whose                      c. whom                      d. who
9. Treasure Island ..... 140 years ago.  
a. had been written                      b. wrote                      c. was written                      d. was writing
10. You ..... use your phone while you're driving. It's dangerous.  
a. mustn't                      b. don't have                      c. must                      d. should
11. I ..... go to the club until I had finished my work.  
a. don't                      b. wasn't                      c. haven't                      d. didn't
12. If Magda ..... a language course, she'd be able to speak to foreigners.  
a. does                      b. will do                      c. did                      d. would do

**3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Mona packed a small suitcase, said goodbye to her mother, and hurried out of the house to catch the bus to the station. There was no one else waiting at the bus stop, so it looked as if a bus has just left. Mona looked at her watch anxiously; she didn't have much time to spare, even if a bus came along at once. Just then a taxi came slowly down the road. Mona knew that the fare to the station was at least fifty pounds, which was more than she could afford; but she quickly made up her mind that it would be well worth the extra expense in order to be sure of catching her train. So, she stopped the taxi and got in. She told the driver that she had to catch the train which would leave at half-past two. The man nodded and said that he would take a shortcut to get her to the station in good time. All went well until, just as they were coming out of a side street into the main road that led to the station, the taxi ran into a car. There was a loud crash and Mona was thrown forward so violently that she hit her head on the front seat. Both drivers got out and began shouting at each other. Mona got out as well, to ask them to stop quarrelling, but neither of them took notice of her at all. She was wondering what to do when a bus came into sight, going in the direction of the station. The bus stop was not far off, so Mona got her suitcase out of the taxi and ran towards the bus, which had stopped to let some passengers get off. The bus conductor saw her running and waited till she got on. Mona reached the station just in time and managed to catch her train after all. If she had waited for the taxi driver to stop arguing, she would probably have missed it.

1. Mona took a taxi because .....  
a. she was afraid of missing her train                      b. it was slower than the bus  
c. it was already two o'clock                      d. she had a suitcase
2. The underlined word "shortcut" means .....  
a. an interruption                      b. a remote path                      c. a quick way                      d. a slow street
3. If Mona had waited for the taxi driver to stop arguing, she wouldn't have ..... her train.  
a. made                      b. missed                      c. lost                      d. caught



4. Mona didn't pay for the taxi driver as she ..... .  
 a. was mean b. was in a hurry and forgot  
 c. had no money d. was a thief
5. What happened to Mona when the taxi ran into the car?  
 a. she hit her head b. she felt nothing  
 c. she fainted d. she stayed in the taxi
6. Mona's train was going to leave at ..... .  
 a. 2:15 b. 3:30 c. 2:30 d. 3:15
7. The bus conductor was so kind as he ..... .  
 a. gave Mona some money b. stopped until Mona got on  
 c. took Mona to hospital d. didn't let Mona on the bus

**4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

لقد جعلت التكنولوجيا الحديثة حياة الناس أسهل من ذي قبل، ولكنها في نفس الوقت قد تكون مصدرًا للقلق لو أساء الإنسان استخدامها.

- a. Modern technology has made human life harder than before. And at the same time, it may be a source of anxiety if a person misuses it.  
 b. Modern technology has made human life easier than before. But at the same time, it may be a waste of time if a person uses it.  
 c. Modern technology has made human life easier than before. And at the same time, it may be a source of anxiety if a person misuses it.  
 d. Modern technology has made human life harder than before. And at the same time, it may be a source of anxiety if a person spends too much money on it.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

School is the place where we learn, do activities and make new friends. It plays an important role in our lives.

- a. المدرسة هي المكان الذي نتعلم فيه ، نقوم بالأنشطة ونكون صداقات جديدة. فهي تلعب قاعدة مهمة في حياتنا.  
 b. إن المدرسة هي المكان الذي نلعب فيه ونقوم بالأنشطة ونكون صداقات جديدة. فهي تؤدي دورًا مهمًا في حياتنا.  
 c. إن المدرسة هي المكان الذي نلعب فيه ونقوم بالأنشطة ونكون صداقات جديدة. فقد تلعب دورًا سلبيًا في حياتنا.  
 d. المدرسة هي المكان الذي نتعلم فيه ونقوم بالأنشطة وتكون صداقات جديدة. فهي تلعب دورًا مهمًا في حياتنا.

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. Why do you think Ben Gun refused to go inside the fort?  
 .....  
 2. Why did Captain Smollett say, "I know that we can win after the fight"?  
 .....  
 3. Why do you think that Silver made George guard the fort all night?  
 .....

**6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

**"Your favourite sport"**

.....  
 .....  
 .....



## 19 Luxor Governorate

## Luxor Educational Directorate

### 1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. I really appreciate your help. The synonyms of "appreciate" are ..... and .....  
a. scorn      b. despise      c. value      d. criticize      e. admire
2. I can't trust this person. He is dishonest. The opposites of "dishonest" are ..... and .....  
a. trustworthy      b. misleading      c. unreliable      d. dependable      e. deceitful

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... the bandage carefully around the wound.  
a. Wipe      b. Wrap      c. Widen      d. Whiten
2. Smoking ..... to lung cancer and destroys health.  
a. guides      b. passes      c. results      d. leads
3. Science fiction films show man as an obedient ..... to Artificial Intelligence.  
a. waiter      b. housekeeper      c. servant      d. governess
4. Naguib Mahfouz is one of the best ..... of tales.  
a. weavers      b. employers      c. walkers      d. highlighters
5. The new principal ..... the idea of recycling at his school.  
a. hired      b. championed      c. communicated      d. collected
6. I hate to ..... you, but could I ask you a few questions?  
a. comfort      b. encourage      c. promote      d. bother
7. If she has a headache, she always ..... an aspirin.  
a. took      b. takes      c. will take      d. would take
8. Mr Sami ..... visits to our house are rare is a nice person.  
a. who      b. whose      c. who's      d. whom
9. The match had to ..... due to the bad weather conditions.  
a. postpone      b. postponed      c. be postponed      d. been postponed
10. We shouldn't have joined them. This means that .....  
a. we joined them and we regret it  
b. it was a good idea to join them, but we didn't join them  
c. it would have been better if we had joined them  
d. we didn't join them as it was a bad idea
11. The bus broke down on the way so it was ..... 11 that they arrived home.  
a. until      b. since      c. after      d. when
12. Having ..... to the wedding party, I decided to go.  
a. invited      b. inviting      c. been invited      d. had invited

### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Some students don't even read short texts that they are assigned in class. There are many reasons for this. They may be distracted or bored, unwilling to focus or unconfident readers. Whatever the reason, it has to stop today. Reading stimulates your mind. It is like a workout for your brain. When people get old, their muscles begin to get weaker and their strength leaves them. Exercise can prevent this. The same thing happens to people's brains when they get older. Brain power and speed decline with age. Reading strengthens your brain and prevents these. Reading provides knowledge; therefore reading can make you



a powerful person. You can learn to do new things by reading, such as making video games, clothing design. Reading can teach you all this and more. If you want to become good at reading, practice it. Read everything, whether you find it interesting or not. Reading expands your vocabulary. Even a "boring" text can teach you some new words which will help you better express yourself, speak, write, and think more intelligently. Each time you read, you are exposed to new ideas and can change the way that you understand the world and give you a broader perspective on things. Reading is good for your state of mind. It has a calming effect by lowering your stress levels and helping you relax, and it's a positive escape.

1. Which of these best expresses the main idea of the passage?
  - a. Reading strengthens your mind.
  - b. Reading is exciting.
  - c. Age affects the body in many ways.
  - d. Working out keeps your body in shape.
2. Why should you read books that are boring?
  - a. You will eventually grow to love them if you read them enough.
  - b. You will get better grades in reading class.
  - c. You will make your teacher very happy.
  - d. You will learn new words.
3. There are ..... reasons given why students fail to complete reading assignments.
  - a. two
  - b. three
  - c. four
  - d. five
4. The main purpose of this passage is to .....
  - a. persuade students to do their reading work.
  - b. teach students how to become better readers.
  - c. explain why students don't do their reading work.
  - d. entertain readers with facts about the mind and body.
5. Which of the following is NOT one of the main points in the passage?
  - a. Reading broadens your perspective and makes you a better person.
  - b. Reading is a relaxing activity with positive mental side effects.
  - c. Reading helps you perform on tests and get into selective schools.
  - d. Reading keeps your mind in shape and prevents losses due to age.
6. Why do you believe that reading is good for your mind state?
  - a. It has a calming effect.
  - b. It can lower your stress levels.
  - c. It can help you relax.
  - d. All of these.
7. The underlined pronoun "this" in the passage refers to .....
  - a. getting older
  - b. muscles deterioration
  - c. muscles strength
  - d. becoming wiser

**4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

It is undeniable truth that the youth are the backbone of any nation and the base of its progress in the future.

- a. انها حقيقة يمكن انكارها ان الشباب هم العمود الفقري لأي أمة واساس تقدمها في المستقبل
- b. حقيقة يمكن انكارها ان الشباب هم العمود الفقري لأي قرية واساس تقدمها في المستقبل
- c. حقيقة لا يمكن تحقيقها ان الشباب هم العمود الفقري لأي أمة واساس تقدمها في المستقبل
- d. انها حقيقة لا يمكن انكارها ان الشباب هم العمود الفقري لأي أمة واساس تقدمها في المستقبل



**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

إن مشاهدة الأفلام التاريخية تعلمنا الكثير من الدروس ويعطينا خبرات مفيدة رغم أنها تشعرنا بالحزن.

- Watching historical films teach us a lot of lessons and give us useful experiences despite making us feel sad.
- Watching historical films teach us a lot of lessons and give us useful experiments despite making us feel sad.
- Watching historical films teach us a lot of lessons and give us useful experiences despite making us feel satisfied.
- Watching historical films learn us a lot of lessons and give us useful experiences despite making us feel sad

**5 Answer the following questions :**

1. Why do you think Jim risked his life when he left the fort at night?

2. What do you think showed that Silver was a clever leader?

3. Why do you think that Ben Gun didn't go into the fort?

**6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :**

*"A day that you will always remember"*

**20 Aswan Governorate****Edfu Educational Directorate****1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :**

1. The colour that I wanted was available in another branch. The word 'available' can be replaced by .....

- a. visible      b. obtainable      c. occupied      d. feasible      e. reliable

2. I had an argument with my friend about the match. The antonyms of the word 'argument' are .....

- a. harmony      b. debate      c. disagreement      d. fight      e. agreement

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. During fires, buildings should be ..... to save people from dangers.

- a. evacuated      b. burnt      c. wrapped      d. damaged

2. I believe that crime is one of the ..... of poverty and ignorance.

- a. inquiries      b. qualities      c. consequences      d. reasons

3. Rich families used to get a ..... to teach their children at their homes.

- a. servant      b. governess      c. housekeeper      d. principal

4. He is a new graduate. He doesn't have any ..... experience.

- a. study      b. degree      c. academic      d. practical



5. We have started a ..... to clean the main streets in our city.  
a. flight                      b. course                      c. war                      d. campaign
6. My elder brother felt ..... when he shouted at his mother.  
a. alone                      b. guilty                      c. cruelty                      d. proud
7. .... I were sociable, I wouldn't have so many friends.  
a. But for                      b. If                      c. In case of                      d. Unless
8. .... had he left home than he was hit by a car in the street.  
a. No sooner                      b. By the time                      c. Hardly                      d. After
9. Hosam has just asked me what ..... for my mother in her birthday.  
a. will I buy                      b. I will buy                      c. I would buy                      d. would I buy
10. The restaurant ..... I have my meals in is at El Gomhoreya street.  
a. where                      b. which                      c. b & d                      d. no pronoun
11. My father returned home very late. His old car ..... broken down.  
a. can't have                      b. must be                      c. might be                      d. must have
12. Naguib Mahfouz ..... the Nobel prize for literature.  
a. had awarded                      b. was awarding                      c. was awarded                      d. awarded

### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Plants have been used for treating illnesses since primitive times. Paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs show that plants were being used by the Ancient Egyptians for medical purposes. Today, some modern drugs are still based on natural herbs. Aspirin, for example, is extracted from the bark of willow tree.

Natural remedies are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The advantage of herbal medicine is that the whole of the plant can be used. The powerful substance in the plant cures the illness while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects. In this way, herbal medicines may be safer than chemical ones. Garlic is just one herb that has been used throughout the world as a cure for diseases as it is used to treat hair problems. Similarly, hena, which is known to be good for the hair, can also be used in the treatment of skin diseases.

If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop, you will be struck by the different colours and smells. There are jars full of tree barks, roots, powder, oils and spices. The customer enters the shop and explains his symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check his reference books before writing out a prescription.

1. We knew that pharaohs had much interest about plants through .....  
a. photos                      b. paintings                      c. reports                      d. films
2. What is common between garlic and hena? - They .....  
a. take care of cancer                      b. have side effects  
c. are useful for hair                      d. are chemical treatment
3. Natural remedies are attracting attention because they .....  
a. are used in Egypt                      b. have no side effects  
c. are exported from Egypt                      d. can treat few diseases







## For Al-Azhar students

اختبارات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1

### Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

منطقة المنوفية الأزهرية (القسم العلمي)

#### 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Hesham's sister has recently graduated from the Faculty of Commerce.

Hesham : Congratulations. You have obtained excellent.

Sister : (1).....

Hesham : (2)..... ?

Sister : I didn't decide. I wish I could do my post graduate studies.

Hesham : (3)..... ?

Sister : Economics and the new trends.

Hesham : As for me (4).....

Sister : Really! Telecommunications and electronic are wonderful studies.

#### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The doctor told my brother that he has a/an ..... to the woolen clothes.  
a. allergic                      b. energy                      c. allergy                      d. bacterium
- If mom set the vase on the table properly, it ..... on the ground.  
a. will fall                      b. wouldn't have fallen  
c. won't fall                      d. wouldn't fall
- The ..... lives with the children in their house to teach them.  
a. governess                      b. government                      c. governor                      d. governorate
- The teacher ..... Hani had done well in the previous exam.  
a. told                      b. asked                      c. said                      d. advised
- There must be ..... at schools for the students who use wheelchairs.  
a. lamps                      b. cliffs                      c. runways                      d. ramps
- He is a great scientist. He ..... a clever student.  
a. can't have been                      b. must have been                      c. might be                      d. must be

#### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Most of the passengers were asleep in the eight o'clock train. It was already half past nine. I was smoking while my wife was reading a letter. My daughter was eating an ice cream. Suddenly, we were all shocked to hear a loud cry from a young lady. She screamed "Help! Help! He's going to kill me. He has a gun." Many people ran towards her. We asked her where the murderer was. She looked around for a few moments, then at us and finally said "What a terrible dream!" We comforted her by saying that she was safe. One of us got her a cold drink. When she felt better we returned to our seats. An old man was sitting beside her. He kept talking to her all through the last hour of the journey. When we got off the train, I said to the man "It was kind of you to keep talking with her to help her to be quiet." He said with a smile, "Oh! No, I only wanted to prevent her from sleeping and having another dream."



**a. Answer the following questions:**

1. Why did the old man keep talking with the young lady?

.....

2. What was the writer doing when the lady screamed?

.....

3. What did the passengers do when they heard the loud cry?

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer:**

4. The lady screamed (60 - 80 - 90 - 70) minutes after the train left.

5. The lady had a terrible (ice cream - dream - gun - cry).

**4 a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Why did Silver go to the fort with a white flag?

.....

2. Who did the pirates kill inside the fort?

.....

**b. Choose the correct word in the following :**

3. Dick had ..... because he slept outside on the island.

a. money

b. malaria

c. food

d. fun

4. Jim was ..... inside the fort, as a pirate held him.

a. trapped

b. helped

c. cared

d. pleased

5. There was a ..... of a man lying on the ground of the hill.

a. hat

b. hand

c. skeleton

d. head

**5 Write a paragraph of 80 words on:**

*How good education changes our life*

.....

.....

.....

**6 a. Translate into Arabic:**

We should create a productive and cooperative society in which peace and love prevail.

**b. Translate into English:**

تبذل الحكومة أقصى جهدها لتمكين المواطن المصري من مجابهة ارتفاع تكاليف المعيشة.

**2**

**Al-Azhar Al-Sharif**

منطقة قنا الأزهرية (القسم العلمي)

**1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:**

Adel is at the pharmacy.

Pharmacist : Hello, sir. (1)..... ?

Adel : Yes, please. I have a stomach ache.

Pharmacist : (2)..... ?

Adel : No, I didn't. I'm careful about my food.

Pharmacist : Well. You can take this medicine.



**Adel** : (3)..... ?

**Pharmacist** : Don't worry. It isn't serious.

**Adel** : How much does it cost?

**Pharmacist** : Twenty pounds, but (4).....

**Adel** : Thank you for your advice. I'll go to the doctor as soon as possible.

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Mohamed took a deep ....., then he jumped into the pool.  
a. breeze                      b. breath                      c. breathless                      d. breathe
- This is the box ..... I had put my English books in.  
a. which                      b. where                      c. who                      d. whom
- By just a few ..... on the mouse you can buy what you want.  
a. clocks                      b. clauses                      c. clicks                      d. cloaks
- Ali asked me where ..... the day before.  
a. I go                      b. had I gone                      c. I had gone                      d. did I go
- Unluckily, my car ..... yesterday.  
a. didn't repair                      b. wasn't repaired                      c. repaired                      d. repairs
- A ..... is a legal agreement.  
a. contract                      b. certificate                      c. degree                      d. qualification

## 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many animals in the world today are in danger. For many of them, the biggest danger is humans. People have always killed animals for their meat or their skins. Others are killed because they eat crops or animals which belong to farmers, certain animals, such as tigers and elephants, used to live in great numbers in countries like India. People have hunted them so much that there aren't many left alive. However, there are now laws to stop this.

In south America, many different birds and animals have lost their natural homes in the forests because thousands of trees have been cut down or burnt. People then used the land for farming or for building roads and towns.

We are too late to save some animals. A few are now **extinct**. This means there are none left anywhere in the world. Others are only in zoos or special parks. Zoos such as the one in Giza, are important because they can help some animals to live. They also make us able to provide care for animals and learn more about them in zoos.

### a. Answer the following questions:

- Why are zoos important for animals?  
.....

- Why have many birds and animals lost their homes?  
.....

- Give a suitable title to the passage.  
.....

### b. Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- The underlined word "**extinct**" in the passage means .....

a. active                      b. not active                      c. existing                      d. no longer existing



5. People used animals' land for .....

- a. cutting down trees  
c. planting crops

- b. milking cows  
d. building zoos

**4 a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Why didn't Captain Smollett allow Silver to enter the fort?

2. What did Jim see on the ship?

**b. Choose the correct word in the following:**

3. The sea is very ..... here so it is safe for small children.

- a. cold                      b. dangerous                      c. shallow                      d. deep

4. The nurse put a ..... on the boy's head because he had a cut on it.

- a. bandage                      b. sheet                      c. note                      d. cloth

5. Luckily, the old man is still ..... after the accident.

- a. deed                      b. alive                      c. actual                      d. alone

**5 Write a paragraph of 80 words on:**

*"The importance of cleanliness"*

**6 a. Translate into Arabic:**

Education plays an effective role in building a citizen who is capable of facing all of today's challenges.

**b. Translate into English:**

الكثير من الخبراء يعتقدون أن العقاب طريقة سلبية لتربية الأطفال.

**3**

**Al-Azhar Al-Sharif**

منطقة الفيوم الأزهرية (القسم العلمي)

**1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:**

**Taha** : Hi, Maged. Do you want to come swimming this evening?

**Maged** : (1).....

**Taha** : But it is good for you. How about going running?

**Maged** : (2).....

**Taha** : (3)..... ?

**Maged** : Ok. I'm free in the evening.

**Taha** : Good. (4)..... ?

**Maged** : Yes, let's meet there.

**2 Choose the correct answer to complete the sentences:**

1. The doctor put a plaster on my cut to stop ..... from getting to it.

- a. bacteria                      b. soil                      c. pets                      d. birds



2. You ..... smoke in petrol stations. It is against the law.  
a. must      b. should      c. mustn't      d. can
3. Have you got a dictionary ..... on your phone?  
a. quiz      b. chat      c. hardware      d. app
4. Khaled loves his job because it is very .....  
a. stressful      b. rewarding      c. qualified      d. boring
5. Hazem asked ..... he could leave the lesson early.  
a. that      b. weather      c. whether      d. to
6. A new hospital ..... in our village last year.  
a. build      b. built      c. was building      d. was built

### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The sinking of the great passenger ship "Titanic" 112 years ago is nearly forgotten. A small number of passengers was actually saved. Those who are still alive today can be counted on the fingers of one hand. Then you will easily understand why I have been asked to write about that sad story. The Titanic, the largest ship in the world, was thought by many people at that time to be unsinkable. Yet, when it hit an iceberg in thick fog in the North Atlantic Ocean, it actually disappeared in less than twenty minutes, taking nearly fifteen hundred people to the bottom. My own life was saved by my youth.

Being only a boy of fourteen, I was one of those lucky women and children who were allowed to get away first from the sinking ship. The other passengers threw themselves into deep water and tried to mount our boat with the result that it turned over. Many people drowned, but I was strong enough to swim for three hours in the icy water before a passing ship picked me up.

#### a. Answer the following questions:

1. What was the cause of the sinking of the Titanic?

.....

2. Where did the Titanic sink?

.....

3. What did the people think about the ship before the tragedy?

.....

#### b. Choose the correct answer:

4. The sinking of the ship happened nearly in .....

a. 2000      b. 1950      c. 1912      d. 1990

5. The phrase "can be counted on the fingers of one hand" means .....

a. ten people      b. very few people      c. many people      d. five hundred men

### 4 a. Answer the following questions :

1. Why did Silver arrive at the fort with a white flag?

.....

2. How did Jim escape from the pirate?

.....



**b. Choose the correct answer :**

3. My uncle lives near a busy road and the ..... from the cars is terrible.  
 a. talk                      b. shout                      c. noise                      d. cry
4. It's very dark outside, can I use your ..... ?  
 a. paddle                      b. chain                      c. rope                      d. torch
5. You need to put a ..... in the machine to get a bar of chocolate.  
 a. money                      b. coin                      c. request                      d. trick

**5 Write a paragraph of 80 words on:***"The person you admire most"*

.....

.....

.....

**6 a. Translate into Arabic:**

Teaching is a very tiring job, but it builds up good citizens for society.

**b. Translate into English:**

يجب تطوير القرى الصغيرة وإمدادها بكل الخدمات لتنميتها

**4****Al-Azhar Al-Sharif**

منطقة المنوفية الأزهرية (القسم الأدبي)

**1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:****Ahmed :** Would you mind doing me a favour?**Essam :** (1).....**Ahmed :** I want you to lend me 100 pounds.**Essam :** What for?**Ahmed :** (2).....**Essam :** A present for your cousin! What's the occasion?**Ahmed :** (3).....**Essam :** Why didn't you ask your father?**Ahmed :** (4).....**Essam :** All right. Here you are.**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. I'm not late for school, so I ..... hurry.  
 a. don't have                      b. needn't                      c. doesn't need to                      d. don't need
2. People used to travel through deserts at night and ..... by stars.  
 a. lead                      b. notice                      c. control                      d. navigate
3. Pyramids ..... by the pharaohs thousands of years ago.  
 a. are built                      b. built                      c. were built                      d. build



4. He was in his second year in his ..... as a carpenter.  
 a. apprenticeship      b. degree      c. attend      d. conclusion
5. I left the company ..... for a long time.  
 a. which I worked      b. where I worked      c. that I worked      d. I worked
6. He was found ..... of killing his wife, so he was sent to prison.  
 a. innocent      b. nasty      c. victim      d. guilty

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Nora moved to a new town with her family, and so she had to join a new school. It was a few kilometers from her house. She always went there on the school bus that went around picking up pupils every morning. She had to be ready by half past six every day because the bus was always on time. One morning, Nora woke up late. Her mom asked her brother to drive her to school. Since Nora's brother had never been to her school, Nora guided him by asking him to turn each time they came to a place she knew. In this way, she made him drive round most of the town before they got to her school. When they arrived, her brother saw that it was really not far from their house.

"Why did you make me go such a long way round?" her brother asked. "Because I didn't know how else to get here. That's the way our bus always goes to pick up the other children on the way to school." Nora answered.

#### a. Answer the following questions:

1. How far is the school from Nora's new house?

.....

2. Why did Nora's brother drive her to school?

.....

3. Why did they take a long time to arrive at school?

.....

#### b. Choose the correct answer:

4. Nora always went to school by (car - bike - bus - taxi).

5. Nora had to be ready by (6:30 - 6:03 - 6:15 - 3:20).

### A Glimpse of Revelation

#### 4 a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does Truthfulness lead to?

.....

2. What does respect mean?

.....

#### b. Choose the correct answer :

3. Abu Huraira was gift with ..... memory.

a. formed      b. formatted      c. formidable      d. formable

4. Muslims should have a ..... for excellence.

a. passion      b. patient      c. passer      d. position

5. Lady Khadijah passed away at the age of .....

a. 56      b. 65      c. 75      d. 55



**5 Write a paragraph of 60 words on:****"Pros and cons of technology in our life"**

.....

.....

.....

**6 a. Translate into Arabic:**

The Egyptian people should unite and stand as one man to face the challenges of the age.

.....

**b. Translate into English:**

يجب أن نتحدى بالصبر والصمود في مواجهة مشاكلنا الاقتصادية الحالية.

.....

**5****Al-Azhar Al-Sharif****منطقة البحيرة الأزهرية (القسم الأدبي)****1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:**

**Amir is being interviewed for a job at a bank.**

**Interviewer :** Why do you want to work for us?

**Amir :** (1).....

**Interviewer :** Why do you think you'd be good at the job?

**Amir :** (2).....

**Interviewer :** (3)..... ?

**Amir :** Yes, I worked as an accountant for a year.

**Interviewer :** (4)..... ?

**Amir :** I passed all my school exams and I have a degree in business studies.

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- Governesses ..... to educate children at homes.  
a. employ                      b. employed                      c. was employed                      d. were employed
- Egypt should take care of individual sports such as ..... to earn more medals.  
a. hockey                      b. basketball                      c. volleyball                      d. powerlifting
- It is ..... to stop making such noise as my father is talking.  
a. necessity                      b. a must                      c. forbidden                      d. a necessary
- The house ..... I bought in 1996 isn't for sale forever.  
a. where                      b. who                      c. that                      d. whose
- He used a sharp knife to ..... the onions.  
a. kill                      b. damage                      c. chop                      d. warn
- The internet has given us ..... to all information we need.  
a. course                      b. permission                      c. access                      d. collection

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

People say that it is impossible to succeed without failure and even the most successful people make mistakes. As well as this, many people believe in the importance of learning from your mistakes.



Sometimes failure can make people work harder and do things better. As a consequence, they appreciate success more because it hasn't been easy for them. For instance, when football players lose a match, they are sad, but they learn how to improve and do better next time.

On the other hand, success can make you feel positively about what you are doing, and it can give you a reason to keep trying. In addition, many people prefer to forget their mistakes so they can have good memories about the past. That means that they were able to see their own mistakes and knew what to do.

In conclusion, although it is possible to have success without failure, from my point of view, it is better to fail sometimes in order to appreciate success more.

**a. Answer the following questions:**

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

2. Why do some people tend to forget their mistakes?

.....

3. From the passage find words which mean:

a. expressing gratitude

b. something that you remember from the past

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

4. A footballer tries to ..... his skills after every failure.

a. improve

b. encourage

c. memorise

d. socialize

5. The writer thinks that ..... is necessary to appreciate success.

a. players

b. failure

c. mistakes

d. memories

### A Glimpse of Revelation

**4 a. Answer the following questions :**

1. What is the foundation of all good?

.....

2. Why is Lady Khadijah's Rank so high?

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer:**

3. Perfection stands for the level of ..... of work.

a. quantity

b. quality

c. equality

d. query

4. .... is the opposite of polytheism.

a. Monotheism

b. Misotheism

c. Atheism

d. Agnosticism

5. Abo Hurairah was very ..... to seek knowledge.

a. tired

b. keen

c. kin

d. kind

**5 Write an email of 60 words to your friend (samy@student.com) to recommend a holiday destination. Your email address is (ahmad@student.com)**

.....  
 .....  
 .....



**6 a. Translate into Arabic:**

We shouldn't let the bad deeds of the others affect our good manners because we respect ourselves not them.

**b. Translate into English:**

يمكن للإنسان ألا أن يوفر الوقت لأنه يقوم بالكثير من الأعمال التي يؤديها الإنسان.

**6****Al-Azhar Al-Sharif****منطقة الجيزة الأزهرية (القسم الأدبي)****1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:**

A : (1)..... ?

B : My trip to London was fantastic.

A : (2)..... ?

B : I met my pen pal for the first time.

A : How long did you stay there?

B : (3)..... .

A : Did you see the Big Ben Clock?

B : (4)..... .

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Jane ..... in the Red Room because she had had a fight.

- a. locked                      b. had locked                      c. was locked                      d. locking

2. There was an emergency so the school was ..... .

- a. serviced                      b. injured                      c. navigated                      d. evacuated

3. Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is ..... I was born.

- a. where                      b. when                      c. which                      d. whose

4. You ..... come and have dinner with us.

- a. must                      b. have to                      c. should                      d. need

5. Plants need air, water, and good ..... to grow.

- a. dust                      b. soil                      c. floor                      d. ground

6. Ali loves his job because it's very ..... .

- a. boring                      b. stressful                      c. rewarding                      d. qualified

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

The sea is full of plastic. People throw rubbish into it where it stays for a long time. A plastic bottle can take up to 450 years to break down. 80% of the rubbish is plastic and it's harming sea animals which eat it, sometimes even killing them. In fact, around 100,000 sea turtles and mammals die every year because of plastic as well as 1,000,000 birds. Meanwhile, the plastic goes on increasing, with around 8 million metric tons a year ending up in our oceans.

After a while, lots of this rubbish washes up on the beach. And that is the reason "washed ashore" got started. Washed ashore is an environmental organization that makes fantastic giant sculpture out of plastic sea rubbish. It was set up in 2010 in Oregon USA by artist Angela Pozzi. In just five years, she created over 70 sea creatures using 20 tons of ocean rubbish. She does her sculptures in order to get people think seriously about pollution.



**a. Answer the following questions:**

1. How long does plastic take to break down?

.....

2. Why does Angela Pozzi make her sculptures?

.....

3. Why is the sea full of plastic?

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer:**

4. Angela started her organization nearly ..... ago.

a. 20

b. 14

c. 450

d. 70

5. Plastic bottles are ..... to the oceans.

a. useful

b. mindful

c. hard

d. harmful

**A Glimpse of Revelation****4 a. Answer the following questions :**

1. What does truthfulness lead to?

.....

2. What was Abu Hurairah gifted with?

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer:**

3. Islam commands people to show ..... to all creatures.

a. prospect

b. inspect

c. respect

d. aspect

4. Muslims ..... their sheep or cattle for the sake of Allah.

a. sacrifice

b. revive

c. drive

d. kill

5. Plagiarism ..... honesty.

a. agrees with

b. accepts

c. is the same as

d. contradicts

**5 Write a paragraph of 60 words on:**

*"A goal you would like to achieve in the future"*

.....

.....

.....

**6 a. Translate into Arabic:**

In the nineteenth century, many children from rich or important families had teachers come to their homes instead of them going to school.

**b. Translate into English:**

من الضروري احترام آراء الآخرين حتى لو كانوا مختلفين معنا في الرأي.

## Minia Governorate

## Minia Educational Directorate امتحان طلاب الدمج

### 1 Choose the TWO (2) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

1. Fortunately, he arrived on time. The synonyms of "fortunately" are .....  
 a. sadly      b. luckily      c. lucky      d. thankfully      e. unluckily
2. All of these words are antonyms of "lazy" except .....  
 a. hard-working      b. idle      c. industrious      d. active      e. inactive

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Weightlifting needs strong ..... in the arms and legs.  
 a. athletics      b. muscles      c. bones      d. clothes
2. The desert animals ..... to their surroundings.  
 a. adopt      b. object      c. arrange      d. adapt
3. He ..... better at his exams because of studying hard.  
 a. went      b. did      c. had      d. made
4. Smoking can ..... to lung cancer.  
 a. cause      b. pass      c. lead      d. result
5. One rule of personal ..... is to brush your teeth daily.  
 a. hygiene      b. identity      c. sanitation      d. sickness
6. You ..... park here. There is a no parking sign.  
 a. mustn't      b. needn't      c. should      d. don't have to
7. If I had enough money, I ..... a new iPhone.  
 a. will buy      b. bought      c. would buy      d. can buy
8. The hotel was full, so I was glad that we ..... in advance.  
 a. have booked      b. were booking      c. book      d. had booked
9. Ahmed says that he ..... to Alex every year.  
 a. is going      b. goes      c. went      d. has gone
10. I admire people ..... behaviours are good.  
 a. who      b. who's      c. whom      d. whose

### 3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Plastic is important. We use it for many things. We must put plastic in the trash bin. We mustn't throw plastic on the beaches. Plastic is poisonous when animals and birds eat it. Plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. We must use other materials like paper and glass. Paper and glass are easier to recycle. We must do our best to save our planet.

1. Plastic is ..... for animals and birds.  
 a. useful      b. harmful      c. good      d. useless
2. We must do our best to save the .....  
 a. earth      b. stars      c. sun      d. moon
3. Paper and glass are ..... to recycle than plastic.  
 a. heavier      b. harder      c. easier      d. shorter



4. Plastic stays in the environment for a ..... time.  
 a. long                      b. short                      c. small                      d. strange
5. We must use materials such as ..... instead of plastic.  
 a. paper and glass              b. plastic and glass              c. paper and plastic              d. leather
6. We mustn't throw plastic on the .....  
 a. bins                      b. planet                      c. beaches                      d. tables
7. Plastic is a/an ..... substance.  
 a. important                      b. kind                      c. rare                      d. unusual
8. The word "poisonous" is a/an .....  
 a. verb                      b. adjective                      c. adverb                      d. noun

**4 a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

Good health is central to human happiness and well-being. One can't enjoy life unless he is healthy.

- a. الصحة الجيدة هي وسط شفاء الإنسان ورفاهيته. لا يمكن أن يستمتع المرء بالحياة ما لم يتمتع بصحة جيدة.  
 b. الصحة الجيدة أمر أساسي لسعادة الإنسان ورفاهيته. فلا يمكن للمرء أن يستمتع بالحياة إلا إذا كان متمتع بالصحة.  
 c. السعادة دور هام في صحة الإنسان الجيدة وقوة البنیان. فالمرء لا يستمتع بالحياة لو لم يكن بصحة جيدة.  
 d. الصحة الجيدة هي مركز اهتمام وسعادة الإنسان. فلا يستطيع المرء تحقيق السعادة لو لم يتمتع بصحة جيدة.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

العمل الجاد مهم للنجاح، ولكن أيضًا الاسترخاء والراحة ضروريان.

- a. Hardly work is important to success, but also relaxation and rest are essential.  
 b. Hard work is important for succeed, but also relaxation and rest are essential.  
 c. Hard works is important to success, but also relaxation and rest are inessential.  
 d. Hard work is important to success, but also relaxation and rest are essential.

**5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d :**

1. Then, we will go to the zoo and have lunch there.  
 2. Finally, we are going to watch a comic film at a cinema downtown.  
 3. First, we will visit the pyramids.  
 4. Next Monday, we are going on a school trip to Cairo.
- a. Then, we will go to the zoo and have lunch there. First, we will visit the pyramids. Finally, we are going to watch a comic film at a cinema downtown. Next Monday, we are going on a school trip to Cairo.  
 b. Next Monday, we are going on a school trip to Cairo. First, we will visit the pyramids. Then, we will go to the zoo and have lunch there. Finally, we are going to watch a comic film at a cinema downtown.  
 c. Next Monday, we are going on a school trip to Cairo. Then, we will go to the zoo and have lunch there. First, we will visit the pyramids. Finally, we are going to watch a comic film at a cinema downtown.  
 d. First, we will visit the pyramids. Next Monday, we are going on a school trip to Cairo. Then, we will go to the zoo and have lunch there. Finally, we are going to watch a comic film at a cinema downtown.



# Follow your progress in vocabulary

تابع مستواك في إتقان المفردات اللغوية

## Unit 7

### Model A

#### Lessons 1 & 2

.....	الحساسية	dust	.....
.....	علي الأقل	emergency services	.....
.....	البكتريا	first aid	.....
.....	اغطية الفراش	grow - grew - grown	.....
.....	السلة	hygiene	.....

#### Lessons 3 & 4

.....	بطانية	evacuate	.....
.....	يحرق - يحترق	immediately	.....
.....	خزق	injured	.....
.....	هادئ	wrap	.....
.....	(حالة) طوارئ		

### Model B

#### Lessons 1 & 2

.....	يتنفس	research	.....
.....	إنعاش قلبيّ رئويّ	respond	.....
.....	الخطر	soil	.....
.....	بشكل مناسب	available	.....
.....	طبي	avoid	.....

#### Lessons 3 & 4

.....	جدال - خلاف	apologise	.....
.....	ضغط - يضغط	complain	.....
.....	يشم	serious	.....
.....	يضر - ي تلف	fire	.....

## Unit 8

### Model A

#### Lessons 1 & 2

.....	فائدة - يستفيد	hybrid	.....
.....	ينقر - نقرة (على الماوس)	hybrid vehicle	.....
.....	مشهور - علي علم بـ	invention	.....
.....	يكتشف - يعرف	navigate	.....
.....	يسافر - يتجول	robot	.....



## Lessons 3 &amp; 4

.....	مزايا	feedback	.....
.....	تطبيق	quiz	.....
.....	طلب التحاق	translation	.....
.....	يدرّش - درّشة		
.....	عيوب		

## Model B

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

.....	يخرج - يقابل	the internet	.....
.....	نظام تحديد المواقع الدولي	vehicle	.....
.....	يتواصل - يتصل	air conditioning	.....
.....	نتائج - توابع	smart	.....
.....	لحسن الحظ	luxurious	.....

## Lessons 3 &amp; 4

.....	تفاصيل	brainstorm	.....
.....	برنامج وثائقي	conclusion	.....
.....	مُجهّد/شاق	software	.....
.....	التقدم	online	.....

## Unit 9

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

.....	مدرسة داخلية	governess	.....
.....	بلطجي - يتنفّر	housekeeper	.....
.....	البلطجة	orphan	.....
.....	قاسي	schooling	.....
.....	التعليم	servant	.....

## Lessons 3 &amp; 4

.....	يُثَقِّن / يُقَدِّر	so-called	.....
.....	يفشل	solver	.....
.....	الفشل	success	.....
.....	مُتعلّم من المنزل		

## Unit 10

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

.....	تطبيق - طلب التحاق	qualified	.....
.....	تطبيقي - غَمَلِي	qualify	.....
.....	يُطَبِّق - يتقدم بطلب	reassurance	.....
.....	(فترة) التدريب المِهْنِي	reassure	.....
.....	مُرافق - خادم	reassuring	.....
.....	قسم الطوارئ	reward	.....

## Lessons 3 &amp; 4

.....	اهتمام - انتباه	hard-working	.....
.....	مُفْتَم - مُرَاعِي	honest	.....
.....	لَيَق - مُفَوَّه	loyal	.....
.....	رَأْفَة - رَحْمَة	punctual	.....
.....	رحيم	reliable	.....
.....	وَالِق - مُتَمَكِّن	team player	.....
.....	مَرِن		.....

## Unit 11

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

.....	يُنَجِّز - يُخَفِّق	kung fu	.....
.....	إنجاز	medal	.....
.....	ناشط	muscle	.....
.....	حملة	polio	.....
.....	يطالب بـ / يناصر - يُخَيِّد	powerlifter	.....
.....	مدافع / مؤيد	powerlifting	.....

## Lessons 3 &amp; 4

.....	قسم	sign-off	.....
.....	مَوْظَف	staff	.....
.....	فُرَص متكافئة	support	.....
.....	سيدة - سيدتي	train	.....
.....	طَلَب	training	.....
.....	مبيعات		.....

## Unit 12

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

.....	يُخْفِي	mystery	.....
.....	خاطب / مخطوبة	solve	.....
.....	مُذَيِّب	weaver	.....

## Lessons 3 &amp; 4

.....	شخصية	page-turner	.....
.....	رواية	plot	.....
.....	وتيرة الأحداث	theme	.....